

Keys to Soil Taxonomy

by the
Soil Survey Staff



Agency for International Development
United States Department of
Agriculture
Soil Conservation Service
Soil Management Support Services

SMSS Technical Monograph No. 19
Fifth Edition, 1992

Pocahontas Press, Inc.
Blacksburg, Virginia

Keys to Soil Taxonomy

by

Soil Survey Staff

**Agency for International Development
United States Department of Agriculture
Soil Conservation Service
Soil Management Support Services**



**SMSS Technical Monograph No. 19
Fifth Edition, 1992**

**Pocahontas Press, Inc.
Blacksburg, Virginia**

Keys to Soil Taxonomy, Fifth Edition, 1992

Published by Pocahontas Press, Inc., Blacksburg, Virginia,
U.S.A.

Printed and bound in the United States of America by
BookMasters, Inc., Ashland, Ohio, U.S.A.

© 1992 The *content* of this book is not copyrighted, but
Pocahontas Press reserves all rights to the particular format in
which that content appears in this book. These pages may not
be reproduced in any form or by any electronic or mechanical
means including information storage and retrieval systems
without permission in writing from the publisher.

ISBN 0-936015-39-X

LC 92-28188

First Printing 1992

Keys to Soil Taxonomy, Fifth Edition

Prepared by Pocahontas Press
P.O. Drawer F
Blacksburg, Virginia 24063-1020

for

The Soil Management Support Services

Soil Management Support Services, U.S. Agency for International Development (AID), is a program of international technical assistance in soil survey, classification, interpretation, and use and management of soils in the intertropical countries, implemented by the Soil Conservation Service (SCS) of the United States Department of Agriculture under PASA No. AG/DSB-1129-5-79.

This publication was produced under a cooperative agreement between the Soil Management Support Services (SMSS), the Crop and Soil Environmental Sciences Department of Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University, and Pocahontas Press of Blacksburg, Virginia, with some funding by the Agency for International Development.

The contents of this publication were provided by the Soil Conservation Service. Pocahontas Press prepared the camera-ready manuscript from text files provided by SCS, National Soil Survey Center, Lincoln, Nebraska.

To obtain additional copies:

In Developing Countries:

Ask your AID country mission, or write to:

SMSS Program Leader
Soil Conservation Service
U.S. Department of Agriculture
P.O. Box 2890
Washington, D.C. 20013

In the United States and developed countries:

Pocahontas Press, Inc.
P.O. Drawer F
Blacksburg, Virginia 24063-1020
Phone: 703-951-0467
FAX: 703-951-7340

The retail price of the book in the United States and developed countries is \$20.00 in U.S. funds plus shipping charges.

Citation:

Soil Survey Staff. 1992. *Keys to Soil Taxonomy*, 5th edition. SMSS technical monograph No. 19. Blacksburg, Virginia: Pocahontas Press, Inc. 556 pages.

Fifth Edition, 1992

ISBN 0-936015-39-X

LC 92-28188

All programs and services of the U.S. Department of Agriculture, Soil Conservation Service, are offered on a non-discriminatory basis without regard to race, color, national origin, religions, sex, age, mental status, or handicap.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Foreword	vi
Chapter 1: The Soil That We Classify, and Buried Soils	1
Chapter 2: Horizons and Properties Diagnostic for the Higher Categories: Mineral Soils	3
Figure 1. Andic Soil Properties.....	25
Chapter 3: Horizons and Properties Diagnostic for the Higher Categories: Organic Soils.....	43
Chapter 4: Family and Series Differentiae	49
Table 1. Key to Mineralogy Classes.....	68
Table 2. Key to Mineralogy Classes of Oxisols ..	70
Chapter 5: Identification of the Taxonomic Class of a Soil	71
Chapter 6: Alfisols	79
Chapter 7: Andisols	139
Chapter 8: Aridisols	177
Chapter 9: Entisols.....	233
Chapter 10: Histosols	271
Chapter 11: Inceptisols.....	289
Chapter 12: Mollisols.....	335
Chapter 13: Oxisols	413
Chapter 14: Spodosols.....	441
Chapter 15: Ultisols	455
Chapter 16: Vertisols	491
Designations for Horizons and Layers	515
SI Unit Conversion Table.....	527
Textural Triangle (Figure 2)	527
Index	529

FOREWORD

This publication, *Keys to Soil Taxonomy*, serves two purposes. It provides the taxonomic keys necessary for the classification of soils according to Soil Taxonomy in a form that can be used easily in the field, and it also acquaints users of Soil Taxonomy with recent changes in the classification system. This volume includes all revisions of the keys that have so far been approved, replacing the original keys in *Soil Taxonomy: A Basic System of Soil Classification for Making and Interpreting Soil Surveys* (1975), the work on which this abridged version, first published in 1983, is based. We plan to continue issuing updated editions of *Keys to Soil Taxonomy* approximately every two years. After most of the current International Soil Classification Committees (ICOMs) have completed their mandates, *Soil Taxonomy* in its entirety is to be revised and republished.

This publication incorporates all amendments approved to date and published in National Soil Taxonomy Handbook (NSTH) Issues 1-16. It includes the recommendations of the International Committee on Low Activity Clays (NSTH Issue #8), the International Committee on Oxisols (NSTH Issue #11), the International Committee on Andisols (NSTH Issue #13), the International Committee on Vertisols (NSTH Issue #16), the International Committee on Aquic Moisture Regime (NSTH Issue #16), and the International Committee on Spodosols (NSTH Issue #16). Editorial changes have been made throughout this edition of *Keys to Soil Taxonomy* to make grammatical corrections and clarify the intent of the criteria.

The keys reproduced here were extracted from a computerized copy of *Soil Taxonomy* which is maintained in complete, up-to-date form.

The authors of *Keys to Soil Taxonomy* are identified as "Soil Survey Staff." This term is meant to include all the soil classifiers in the National Cooperative Soil Survey program and in the international community who have made significant contributions to the improvement of Soil Taxonomy.

RICHARD W. ARNOLD
Director, Soil Survey Division
Soil Conservation Service
1992

Chapter 1

The Soil That We Classify, and Buried Soils

THE SOIL THAT WE CLASSIFY

Soil is the collective term used in this text for the natural bodies, made up of mineral and organic materials, that cover much of the earth's surface, contain living matter and can support vegetation out of doors, and have in places been changed by human activity. The upper limit of soil is air or shallow water. Its horizontal boundaries are where it grades to deep water or to barren areas of rock or ice. The lower boundary that separates soil from the not-soil underneath is most difficult to define. Soil consists of the horizons near the earth's surface which, in contrast to the underlying rock material, have been altered by the interactions, over time, between climate, relief, parent materials, and living organisms. In the few places where it contains thin cemented horizons that are impermeable to roots, soil is considered to be as deep as the deepest cemented horizon. More commonly, soil grades at its lower boundary to hard rock or to earthy materials virtually devoid of animals, roots, or other marks of biologic activity. Thus the lower limit of soil is normally the lower limit of biologic activity, which generally coincides with the common rooting depth of native perennial plants. If, however, either biological activity or current pedogenic processes extend to depths greater than 200 cm, the lower limit of the soil that we classify is arbitrarily set at 200 cm. For certain soil management purposes, layers deeper than the lower boundary of the soil that we classify must also be described if they affect the content and movement of water and air in the soil of the root zone.

BURIED SOILS

A soil is considered to be a buried soil if it is covered with a surface mantle of new soil material that is either 50 cm or more thick, or is 30 to 50 cm thick and has a thickness that equals at least half the total thickness of the named diagnostic horizons that are preserved in the buried soil. A surface mantle of new material less than 30 cm thick is not considered in the taxonomy, but is considered in establishing a phase if it affects the use of the soil. In areas where a surface mantle is present, the soil that we classify therefore has its upper boundary either at the soil surface or less than 50 cm below the surface, depending on the thickness of its horizons.

A surface mantle of new material, as defined here, is largely unaltered. It is usually finely stratified and overlies a horizon sequence that can be clearly identified as the solum of a buried soil in at least part of each pedon. The recognition of a surface mantle should not be based only on studies of associated soils.

Chapter 2

Horizons and Properties Diagnostic for the Higher Categories: Mineral Soils¹

MINERAL SOIL MATERIAL

Mineral soil material either:

1. Is never saturated with water for more than a few days and contains less than 20 percent (by weight) organic carbon; or
2. Is saturated with water for long periods (or artificially drained) and, excluding live roots, has an organic-carbon content (by weight) of:
 - a. Less than 18 percent if the mineral fraction contains 60 percent or more clay; or
 - b. Less than 12 percent if the mineral fraction contains no clay; or
 - c. Less than $12 + (\text{clay percentage multiplied by } 0.1)$ percent if the mineral fraction contains less than 60 percent clay.

Soil material that contains more than the above amounts of organic carbon is considered to be organic soil material.

DIAGNOSTIC SURFACE HORIZONS; THE EPIPEDON

Any horizon may be at the surface of a truncated soil. The following section, however, is concerned with seven diagnostic horizons that have formed at the soil surface. A horizon that has developed at the soil surface is called an epipedon (Gr. *epi*, over, upon; and *pedon*, soil). It is a horizon in which rock structure has been destroyed and which has either been darkened by organic matter or eluviated. Such a horizon may become covered by thin alluvial or eolian deposits without losing its identity as an epipedon. The depth to which an epipedon must be buried to be considered part of a buried soil is defined above (Chapter 1).

A recent alluvial or eolian deposit that retains fine stratification, or an Ap horizon directly underlain by such stratified material, is not included in the concept of the epipedon because time has not been sufficient for soil-forming processes to erase these transient marks of

¹ Mineral soils include all soil orders in this taxonomy except Histosols.

deposition and for diagnostic and accessory properties to develop.

An epipedon is not the same as an A horizon; it may include part or all of the illuvial B horizon if the darkening by organic matter extends from the soil surface into or through the B horizon. To avoid changes in the classification of a soil as a result of plowing, the properties of the epipedon, except for structure, should be determined after mixing the surface soil to a depth of 18 cm, or the whole soil if its depth to bedrock is less than 18 cm.

Anthropic epipedon

The anthropic epipedon conforms to all the requirements for the mollic epipedon (defined below) except either (1) the limits on acid-soluble P_2O_5 , with or without the base saturation, or (2) the duration of available moisture. Additional data on anthropic epipedons from several parts of the world may permit future improvements in this definition.

Histic epipedon (Gr. *histos*, tissue)

The histic epipedon is normally at the soil surface, although it may be buried. It consists of organic soil material (peat or muck) if the soil has not been plowed. If the soil has been plowed, the epipedon normally has a high content of organic matter that results from mixing organic soil material with some mineral material. The histic epipedon either has aquic conditions for some time in most years or has been artificially drained.

The histic epipedon can thus be defined as a layer (one or more horizons) that has aquic conditions for some time in most years (or is artificially drained), and either:

1. Consists of organic soil material which:
 - a. Is 20 to 60 cm thick and either contains 75 percent or more (by volume) sphagnum fibers or has a bulk density, moist, of less than 0.1 g/cm³; or
 - b. Is 20 to 40 cm thick and has an organic-carbon content (by weight) of:
 - (1) 18 percent or more if the mineral fraction contains 60 percent or more clay; or
 - (2) 12 percent or more if the mineral fraction contains no clay; or
 - (3) 12 + (clay percentage multiplied by 0.1) percent or more if the mineral fraction contains less than 60 percent clay; or
2. Is an Ap horizon which, when mixed to a depth of 25 cm, has an organic-carbon content (by weight) of:
 - a. 16 percent or more if the mineral fraction contains 60 percent or more clay; or

- b. 8 percent or more if the mineral fraction contains no clay; or
- c. $8 + (\text{clay percentage divided by } 7.5)$ percent or more if the mineral fraction contains less than 60 percent clay.

Most histic epipedons consist of organic soil material as defined below. Item 2 provides for histic epipedons that are Ap horizons consisting of mineral soil material.

Melanic epipedon (Gr. *melas*, *melan-*, black)

The melanic epipedon is a thick black horizon at or near the soil surface which contains high concentrations of organic carbon, usually associated with short-range-order minerals or aluminum-humus complexes. The intense black color is attributed to the accumulation of organic matter from which "Type A" humic acids are extracted. This organic matter is thought to result from large amounts of root residues supplied by a gramineous vegetation, and can be distinguished from organic matter formed under forest vegetation by the melanic index (Honna et al., 1988).²

The suite of secondary minerals is usually dominated by allophane, and the soil material has a low bulk density and a high anion adsorption capacity.

The melanic epipedon has both of the following:

1. An upper boundary at, or within 30 cm of, either the mineral soil surface or the upper boundary of an organic layer with andic soil properties (defined below), whichever is shallower; and
2. In layers with a cumulative thickness of 30 cm or more within a total thickness of 40 cm, all of the following:
 - a. Andic soil properties throughout; and
 - b. A color value, moist, and chroma (Munsell designations) of 2 or less throughout, and a melanic index of 1.70 or less throughout; and
 - c. Six percent or more organic carbon as a weighted average, and 4 percent or more organic carbon in all layers.

Mollic epipedon (L. *mollis*, soft)

The mollic epipedon consists of mineral soil material and is at the soil surface, unless it underlies either a recent deposit that is less than 50 cm thick and has fine stratification if not plowed, or a thin layer of organic soil material. If the surface layer of organic material is

² Honna, T., S. Yamamoto, and K. Matsui. 1988. A simple procedure to determine Melanic Index. See ICOMAND Circular Letter No. 10, pp. 76-77.

so thick that the soil is recognized as a Histosol (defined below), the mollic epipedon is considered to be buried.

The mollic epipedon has the following properties:

1. Soil structure is strong enough so that one half or more of the horizon is not both hard, very hard, or harder and massive when dry. Very coarse prisms, with a diameter of 30 cm or more, are included in the meaning of *massive* if there is no secondary structure within the prisms.

2. Unless the fine-earth fraction has 15 percent or more calcium carbonate equivalent, crushed and smoothed samples have a Munsell color value of 3 or less when moist and of 5 or less when dry, and a chroma of 3 or less³; normally the color value is at least 1 Munsell unit lower or the chroma at least 2 units lower (both moist and dry) than that of the 1C horizon if present. If only a 2C horizon or an R layer is present, the comparison should be made with the horizon that overlies the 2C. Some parent materials such as loess, cinders, alluvium, or carbonaceous shale can also have dark color and low chroma. Soils formed in such materials may accumulate appreciable amounts of organic matter but have no visible darkening in the epipedon. In this situation, the requirement that the mollic epipedon should have a lower color value or chroma than the 1C horizon, or than the next underlying horizon if there is no 1C, is waived if (a) the surface horizon(s) meets all other requirements for a mollic epipedon and, in addition, has at least 0.6 percent more organic carbon than the 1C or the 2C horizon, or if (b) the epipedon extends to rock (i.e., a lithic or paralithic contact, defined below).

The mollic epipedon has dark color and low chroma in 50 percent or more of its matrix. If its structure is fine granular or fine blocky, the sample when broken may show only the color of the coatings of peds. The color of the matrix in such situations can be determined only by crushing or briefly rubbing the sample. Prolonged rubbing should be avoided because it may cause darkening of a sample if soft iron-manganese concretions are present; crushing should be just sufficient to mix the coatings with the matrix. The color value when dry should be determined after the crushed sample has been smoothed to eliminate shadows.

If the fine-earth fraction has 15 to 40 percent calcium carbonate equivalent, the limit for the color value, dry, is waived. If it has 40 percent or more calcium carbonate equivalent, the limit for the color value, dry, is waived and the color value, moist, is 5 or less. These

³ The color when moist is that of a specimen moist enough so that an additional drop of water produces no change in its color. The color when dry is that of a specimen dry enough so that continued drying produces no further change

changes are necessary because finely divided lime acts as a white pigment.

3. Base saturation is 50 percent or more by the NH_4OAc method.

4. The organic-carbon content is either 0.6 percent or more throughout the thickness of the mollic epipedon, or 2.5 percent or more in layers that have a color value, moist, of 4 or 5 and a fine-earth fraction with a calcium carbonate equivalent of 40 percent or more.

Since the mollic epipedon consists of mineral soil material, the upper limit of its organic-carbon content is the same as that defined above for mineral soil material.

5. After mixing the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil, or the whole mineral soil if its depth to a lithic or paralithic contact, petrocalcic horizon, or duripan (all defined below) is less than 18 cm, the thickness of the epipedon is as follows:

a. 10 cm or more if the epipedon is directly above a lithic or paralithic contact, a petrocalcic horizon, or a duripan; or

b. 25 cm or more if either

(1) The texture of the epipedon is loamy fine sand or coarser throughout; or

(2) There are no underlying diagnostic horizons (defined below) and the organic-carbon content of the underlying materials decreases irregularly with increasing depth (as in recent alluvial deposits); or

c. 25 cm or more if the epipedon is finer than loamy fine sand and if all of the following are 75 cm or more below the mineral soil surface:

(1) The upper boundary of any pedogenic lime that is present as filaments, soft coatings, or soft nodules; and

(2) The lower boundary of any argillic, cambic, natric, oxic, or spodic horizon (defined below); and

(3) The upper boundary of any petrocalcic horizon, duripan, or fragipan; or

d. If the epipedon is loamy or clayey, 18 cm or more, and one third or more of the total thickness between the top of the epipedon and the shallowest of any features listed in (c) that are less than 75 cm below the mineral soil surface; or

e. 18 cm or more if none of the above conditions apply.

6. The epipedon has less than 250 parts per million (ppm) of P_2O_5 soluble in 1 percent citric acid, or it does not have a regular decrease in the amounts of P_2O_5 with

increasing depth below the epipedon, or there are phosphate nodules within the epipedon. This restriction is made to eliminate plow layers of very old arable soils and kitchen middens which, under use, have acquired the properties of a mollic epipedon, while including the epipedon of a soil developed in highly phosphatic parent material.

7. If the soil is not irrigated, some part of the epipedon is moist 3 months or more (cumulative) per year in 8 or more out of 10 years during times when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5°C or higher.

8. The n value (defined below) is less than 0.7. Although many soils that have a mollic epipedon are very poorly drained, a mollic epipedon does not have the same very high water content as sediments that have been continuously under water since deposition.

Ochric epipedon (Gr. *ochros*, pale)

The ochric epipedon fails to meet the definitions for any of the other 6 epipedons because it is too thin or too dry, has too high a color value or chroma, contains too little organic matter, or has too high an n value or melanic index, or is both hard and massive when dry. Most ochric epipedons have either a Munsell color value of 4 or more when moist and 6 or more when dry, or a chroma of 4 or more⁴, or include an A or Ap horizon that has both low color values and low chroma but is too thin to be recognized as a mollic or an umbric epipedon (and has less than 15 percent calcium carbonate equivalent in the fine-earth fraction). The ochric epipedon includes eluvial horizons that are at or near the soil surface, and it extends to the first underlying diagnostic illuvial horizon (defined below as an argillic, a kandic, a natric, or a spodic horizon). If the underlying horizon is a B horizon of alteration (defined below as a cambic or oxic horizon) and there is no surface horizon that is appreciably darkened by humus, the lower limit of the ochric epipedon is the lower boundary of the plow layer or an equivalent depth in a soil that has not been plowed. Actually, the same horizon in an unplowed soil may be both a part of the epipedon and a part of the cambic horizon; the ochric epipedon and the subsurface diagnostic horizons are not mutually exclusive. The ochric epipedon does not have rock structure and does not include finely stratified fresh sediments.

Plaggen epipedon (Ger. *Plaggen*, sod)

The plaggen epipedon is a man-made surface layer 50 cm or more thick that has been produced by long-continued manuring. The color of a plaggen epipedon

⁴ The color when moist is that of a specimen moist enough so that an additional drop of water produces no change in color. The color when dry is that of a specimen dry enough so that continued drying produces no further change in color.

and its organic-carbon content depend on the materials used for bedding.

A plaggen epipedon can be identified by several means. Commonly it contains artifacts, such as bits of brick and pottery, throughout its depth. There may be chunks of diverse materials, such as black sand and light gray sand, as large as the size held by a spade. The plaggen epipedon normally shows spade marks throughout its depth and also remnants of thin stratified beds of sand that were probably produced on the soil surface by beating rains and were later buried by spading.

Umbric epipedon (*L. umbra*, shade, hence dark)

Requirements for an umbric epipedon with regard to color, organic-carbon and phosphorus content, consistence, structure, n value, and thickness are the same as those for the mollic epipedon. The umbric epipedon includes those thick, dark-colored surface horizons that have a base saturation of less than 50 percent (by NH_4OAc). It should be noted that the restriction against an epipedon that is hard, very hard, or harder and massive when dry is applied only to those epipedons that become dry. If the epipedon is always moist, there is no restriction on its consistence or structure when dry. It should also be noted that some plaggen epipedons meet all these requirements but also show evidence of a gradual addition of materials during cultivation, whereas the umbric epipedon does not have the artifacts, spade marks, and raised surfaces that are characteristic of the plaggen epipedon.

DIAGNOSTIC SUBSURFACE HORIZONS

The horizons discussed in this section form below the surface of the soil, although in some areas they form directly below a layer of leaf litter. They may be exposed at the surface by truncation of the soil. Some of these horizons are generally regarded as B horizons, some are considered B horizons by many but not all pedologists, while others are generally regarded as parts of the A horizon.

Agric horizon

The agric horizon (*L. ager*, field) is an illuvial horizon which has formed under cultivation and contains significant amounts of illuvial silt, clay, and humus. After a soil has been cultivated for a long time, changes in the horizon directly below the plow layer become apparent and cannot be ignored in classifying the soil. The large pores in the plow layer and the absence of vegetation immediately after plowing permit a turbulent flow of muddy water to the base of the plow layer. Here the water can enter wormholes or fine cracks between peds, and the suspended materials are deposited as the water is withdrawn into capillary pores. The worm

channels, root channels, and surfaces of peds in the horizon underlying the plow layer become coated with a dark-colored mixture of organic matter, silt, and clay. The accumulations on the sides of wormholes become thick and can eventually fill them. If worms are scarce, the accumulations may take the form of lamellae that range in thickness from a few millimeters to about 1 cm. The lamellae and the coatings on the sides of wormholes always have a lower color value and chroma than the soil matrix.

The agric horizon can have somewhat different forms in different climates if there are differences in soil fauna. In a humid temperate climate where soils have a udic moisture regime and a mesic soil temperature regime (defined below), earthworms can become abundant. If there are earthworm holes which, including their coatings, constitute 5 percent or more (by volume) of the horizon and if the coatings are 2 mm or more thick and have a color value, moist, of 4 or less and a chroma of 2 or less, the horizon is an agric horizon. After long cultivation, the content of organic matter in the agric horizon is not likely to be high, but the carbon-nitrogen ratio is low (usually less than 8). The pH value of the agric horizon is close to neutral (6 to 6.5).

In a Mediterranean climate where soils have a xeric soil moisture regime (defined below), earthworms are less common and the illuvial materials accumulate as lamellae directly below the Ap horizon. If these lamellae are 5 mm or more thick, have a color value, moist, of 4 or less and a chroma of 2 or less, and constitute 5 percent or more (by volume) of a horizon 10 cm or more thick, this horizon is an agric horizon.

Albic horizon

The albic (*L. albus*, white) horizon is an eluvial horizon 1.0 cm or more thick which contains 85 percent or more (by volume) albic materials (defined below). It usually occurs below an A horizon but may be at the mineral soil surface. Under the albic horizon there is usually an argillic, cambic, kandic, natric, or spodic horizon or a fragipan (defined below). The albic horizon may lie between a spodic horizon and either a fragipan or an argillic horizon; or it may be between an argillic or a kandic horizon and a fragipan. It may lie between a mollic epipedon and an argillic or natric horizon, or between a cambic horizon and an argillic, kandic, or natric horizon or a fragipan. The albic horizon may separate horizons which, if together, would meet the requirements for a mollic epipedon. It may separate lamellae that together meet the requirements for an argillic horizon; these lamellae are not considered to be part of the albic horizon.

In some soils the horizon underlying the albic horizon is too sandy or too weakly developed to have the levels of accumulation required for an argillic, a kandic, a natric,

or a spodic horizon. Some soils have, directly below the albic horizon, either a lithic or paralithic contact, or another relatively impervious layer that produces a perched water table with stagnant or moving water.

Argillic horizon

An argillic horizon is an illuvial horizon which contains significant accumulations of illuviated layer-lattice silicate clays. It must have formed below an eluvial horizon but may be found at the surface of a partially truncated soil. The following characteristics are used for its identification:

1. If there is a lithologic discontinuity between the overlying eluvial horizon and the argillic horizon or if it is overlain only by a plow layer, clay films are required only in some part of the argillic horizon, either in some fine pores or, if peds are present, on some vertical and horizontal surfaces of peds. Either some part of the horizon is shown in thin section to have 1 percent or more oriented clay bodies, or the ratio of fine clay to total clay in the argillic horizon is higher than in the overlying or the underlying horizon.

2. If an eluvial horizon remains and there is no lithologic discontinuity between it and the underlying argillic horizon, the argillic horizon contains, within 30 cm of its upper boundary, higher percentages of total clay and fine clay than the eluvial horizon, as follows:

a. If any part of the overlying eluvial horizon has less than 15 percent total clay in its fine-earth fraction, the total clay content in the argillic horizon is 3 percent or more (absolute) higher than in the eluvial horizon (e.g., 13 percent versus 10 percent). The ratio of fine clay to total clay in the argillic horizon is normally one third or more higher than in the overlying eluvial or in the underlying horizon.

b. If the overlying eluvial horizon has 15 to 40 percent total clay in its fine-earth fraction, the total clay content in the argillic horizon is 20 percent or more (relative) higher than in the eluvial horizon (e.g., 24 percent versus 20 percent). The ratio of fine clay to total clay in the argillic horizon is normally one third or more higher than in the eluvial horizon.

c. If the eluvial horizon has 40 to 60 percent total clay in the fine-earth fraction, the total clay content in the argillic horizon is 8 percent or more (absolute) higher than in the eluvial horizon (e.g., 50 percent versus 42 percent).

d. If the eluvial horizon has 60 percent or more total clay in the fine-earth fraction, the fine-clay content in the argillic horizon should be 8 percent

or more (absolute) higher than that of the eluvial horizon.

3. The thickness of the argillic horizon is one tenth or more the total thickness of all overlying horizons (in a soil that is not truncated and has no lithologic discontinuity between the eluvial horizon and the underlying argillic horizon), and one of the following:

- a. 7.5 cm or more if the horizon is loamy or clayey; or
- b. 15 cm or more if the horizon is sand or loamy sand; or
- c. If the horizon is composed entirely of lamellae, 15 cm or more combined thickness of lamellae that are 1 cm or more thick.

4. In structureless soils, the argillic horizon has oriented clay lining some pores and bridging the sand grains.

5. If peds are present, the argillic horizon has one of the following:

- a. Either clay films on some vertical and horizontal surfaces of peds and in the fine pores, or oriented clay in 1 percent or more of the cross section; or
- b. A broken or irregular upper boundary and some clay films in the lowest part of the horizon; or
- c. If the eluvial horizon has 40 percent or more clay, and if the argillic horizon is clayey and the clay is kaolinitic, some clay films on peds and in pores within the lower part of the argillic horizon if it has blocky or prismatic structure; or
- d. No clay films if the argillic horizon is clayey with 2:1 lattice clays, and if either the overlying horizon has uncoated grains of sand or silt and the argillic horizon shows evidence of pressure caused by swelling (e.g., occasional slickensides or wavy horizon boundaries), or if the ratio of fine clay to total clay in the argillic horizon is one third or more higher than in the overlying or underlying horizon, or if the fine-clay content in the argillic horizon is 8 percent or more (absolute) higher than in the eluvial horizon.

Calcic horizon

The calcic horizon is a horizon in which calcium carbonate, or calcium and magnesium carbonate, has accumulated. It may occur within the C horizon or within various other horizons such as a mollic epipedon, an argillic or a natric horizon, or a duripan.

The calcic horizon is 15 cm or more thick and meets one of the following requirements:

1. It contains 15 percent or more CaCO_3 equivalent, and its CaCO_3 equivalent is 5 percent or more (absolute) higher than that of the C horizon; or
2. It contains 15 percent or more CaCO_3 equivalent, including 5 percent or more (by volume) identifiable secondary carbonates as pendants on pebbles, as concretions, or as soft powdery lime (see below), if it rests on limestone, marl, or other very highly calcareous materials with a CaCO_3 equivalent of 40 percent or more, the carbonate content need not decrease with increasing depth below the calcic horizon; or
3. It may contain a CaCO_3 equivalent of less than 15 percent if it has less than 18 percent clay in the fine-earth fraction, a particle size that is sandy, sandy-skeletal, coarse-loamy, or loamy-skeletal, and a content of soft powdery secondary CaCO_3 that is 5 percent or more (absolute) higher than that of an underlying horizon.

Air-dry fragments of a calcic horizon will slake in water, except for disconnected carbonate concretions and pendants under rocks. If a horizon enriched with secondary carbonates is indurated or cemented to such a degree that its dry fragments do not slake in water, it is considered a petrocalcic horizon (defined below).

Cambic horizon

The cambic horizon is an altered horizon that does not have the dark color, organic-matter content, and structure of a histic, a mollic, or an umbric epipedon, and has all of the following:

1. A texture of very fine sand, loamy very fine sand, or finer; and
2. Soil structure, or absence of rock structure, in one half or more of its volume; and
3. Evidence of alteration in the form of either:
 - a. Aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage), and both of the following:
 - (1) Within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, either on faces of peds, or in the matrix if peds are absent, 50 percent or more chroma as follows:
 - (a) Two or less, and redox concentrations; or
 - (b) Zero, and a color value, moist, of 3 or less; or
 - (c) One or less, and a color value, moist, of 4 or more; and
 - (2) One or more of the following properties:
 - (a) A regular decrease in the amount of organic carbon with increasing

depth, and an organic-carbon content of less than 0.2 percent either at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, or directly above a sandy-skeletal substratum at a depth of less than 125 cm; or

(b) Cracks that open and close in most years and are 1 cm or more wide at a depth of 50 cm below the mineral soil surface; or

(c) Permafrost at some depth; or

(d) A histic epipedon consisting of mineral soil materials, or a mollic or an umbric epipedon; or

b. Either no aquic conditions (or artificial drainage), or colors different from those defined in 3.a, or both, and one or more of the following:

(1) A higher chroma, redder hue, or higher clay content than in the underlying horizon; or

(2) Evidence of removal of carbonates; particularly, less carbonate than in the underlying k horizon (if all coarse fragments in the k horizon are completely coated with lime, some in the cambic horizon are partly free of coatings; if coarse fragments in the k horizon are coated only on the underside, those in the cambic horizon are free of coatings); or

(3) If carbonates are absent in the parent material and in the dust that falls on the soil, the requirement of evidence of alteration is satisfied by the presence of soil structure and absence of rock structure; and

4. Properties that do not meet the requirements for an argillic, a kandic, an oxic, or a spodic horizon; and

5. No cementation or induration and no brittle consistence when moist; and

6. A lower boundary at a depth of 25 cm or more from the mineral soil surface, unless the soil temperature regime is cryic or pergelic.

Duripan

The duripan (*L. durus*, hard; meaning hardpan) is a silica-cemented subsurface horizon in which:

1. Cementation in one or more subhorizons is strong enough so that dry fragments from these subhorizons do not slake in water, even during prolonged wetting; and

2. Coatings of silica, insoluble in 1N HCl even during prolonged soaking but soluble in hot concentrated KOH

or in alternating acid and alkali, are present in some pores and on some structural faces; or some durinodes are present; and

3. If soaked in acid, cementation is destroyed in less than half of any laminar capping that may be present or in any other continuous or imbricated subhorizon; cementation in such layers is, however, completely destroyed by hot concentrated KOH, either by a single treatment or by alternating with acid; and
4. If fractured, the average lateral distance between fracture points is 10 cm or more.

Fragipan

A fragipan (*L. fragilis*, brittle; meaning brittle pan) is a loamy or, uncommonly, a sandy subsurface horizon which may underlie an albic, argillic, cambic, or spodic horizon. It has a very low organic-matter content, a higher bulk density than the overlying horizons, and hard or very hard consistence when dry (is seemingly cemented). When moist, a fragipan has moderate or weak brittleness (i.e., tendency for a ped or clod to rupture suddenly rather than undergo slow deformation when pressure is applied). A dry fragment slakes or fractures when placed in water. A fragipan typically has redoximorphic features, is slowly or very slowly permeable to water, and has few or many bleached, roughly vertical planes which are faces of coarse or very coarse polyhedrons or prisms.

There is no known laboratory procedure for identifying a sample from a fragipan, and because no single unique property of fragipans exists, a combination of clues must be used for field identification of such a pan, as follows:

1. A fragipan lies below, although not necessarily directly below, an eluvial horizon, unless the soil has been truncated. In a truncated soil the fragipan can be traced up slope to where an eluvial horizon has been preserved.
2. If there is an argillic or a cambic horizon above the fragipan, an E' horizon commonly intervenes between the fragipan and the overlying horizon. This E' horizon is marked by uncoated grains of sand and silt and seems associated with water which either stands above the pan or moves laterally along its surface.
3. If the fragipan is not saturated for long periods of time, some or all pedons normally have bleached vertical streaks 10 cm or more apart which form a roughly polygonal pattern on a horizontal plane and which are bounded by strong brown or reddish brown streaks where iron and manganese have accumulated. This polygonal color pattern may be absent if the pan is saturated for long periods or if its texture is sandy.
4. If the moisture content of the fragipan is near the wilting point, the matrix between its streaks is very

firm; if it is near field capacity, the matrix is brittle. This brittle matrix constitutes 60 percent or more (by volume) of one or more subhorizons of the fragipan.

5. The brittleness in parts of the fragipan is well enough expressed so that there are virtually no fine feeder roots in this brittle matrix, which has mean horizontal dimensions of 10 cm or more. The surrounding bleached vertical streaks may contain few to many fine feeder roots and some tap roots of trees.

6. The fine-earth fraction of a fragipan has a texture finer than fine sand and generally contains less than 35 percent clay (in most soils considerably less); it is generally loamy (silt loam, loam, or sandy loam).

7. A fist-sized, air-dried fragment of a fragipan slakes or fractures when placed in water.

Glossic horizon

The glossic (Gr. *glossa*, tongue) horizon is 5 cm or more thick and consists of:

1. An eluvial part, i.e., albic materials (defined below), which constitute 15 to 85 percent (by volume) of the glossic horizon; and
2. An illuvial part, i.e., remnants of an argillic, a kandic, or a natric horizon (defined below).

The glossic horizon develops as a result of the degradation of an argillic, a kandic, or a natric horizon, from which clay and free iron oxides are removed. This process of eluviation gradually progresses from the exteriors of peds to their interiors. In early stages of the development, the peds of the remnant argillic, kandic, or natric horizon still form structural units that extend throughout the glossic horizon, constituting close to 85 percent of its volume. In later stages, some of these structural units no longer extend throughout the horizon, and in the most advanced stages of the degradation process remnant peds constitute little more than 15 percent (by volume) of the glossic horizon and are completely surrounded by albic materials. The boundary between the illuvial and eluvial parts of the glossic horizon may be either abrupt or clear, and either irregular or broken.

A glossic horizon usually occurs between an overlying albic horizon and an underlying argillic, kandic, or natric horizon or fragipan. It can lie between an argillic, cambic, or kandic horizon and a fragipan. In the early stages of the degradation process described above, a glossic horizon can be within an argillic, kandic, or natric horizon, or within a fragipan if the fragipan shows evidence of the degradation of an argillic horizon. An albic horizon may be below, or between subhorizons of, the glossic horizon.

Argillic horizons consisting of lamellae and intervening albic materials are not within the concept of the glossic horizon.

Gypsic horizon

The gypsic horizon is a horizon of enrichment with secondary sulfates that is 15 cm or more thick and has the following properties:

1. It is noncemented (an air-dried fragment slakes in water); and
2. Its gypsum content is 5 percent or more (absolute) higher than that of an underlying 1C horizon; and
3. The product of its thickness in centimeters multiplied by its gypsum percentage is 150 or more.

Thus, a horizon 30 cm thick that has 5 percent gypsum qualifies as a gypsic horizon if gypsum is absent in an underlying 1C horizon. A layer 30 cm thick that has 6 percent gypsum qualifies if the gypsum content of the underlying horizon is no more than 1 percent. The gypsum percentage can be calculated by multiplying the milliequivalents of gypsum per 100 g soil by the milliequivalent weight of $\text{CaSO}_4 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$, which is 0.086.

Kandic horizon⁵

The kandic horizon:

1. Is a vertically continuous subsurface horizon that underlies a coarser-textured surface horizon. The minimum thickness of the surface horizon is 18 cm after mixing, or 5 cm if the textural transition to the kandic horizon is abrupt and there is no lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact (defined below) within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.
2. Has its upper boundary:
 - a. At the point where the clay percentage in the fine-earth fraction, increasing with depth within a vertical distance of 15 cm or less, is either
 - (1) 4 percent or more (absolute) higher than in the surface horizon if that horizon has less than 20 percent total clay in the fine-earth fraction; or
 - (2) 20 percent or more (relative) higher than in the surface horizon if that horizon has 20 to 40 percent total clay in the fine-earth fraction; or
 - (3) 8 percent or more (absolute) higher than in the surface horizon if that horizon has

⁵ The kandic horizon and the *kandi* and *kanhapli* great groups of soils represent the work of the International Committee on the Classification of Low Activity Clays (ICOMLAC), chaired by Dr. Frank R. Moormann.

more than 40 percent total clay in the fine-earth fraction; and

b. At a depth

(1) Between 100 cm and 200 cm from the mineral soil surface, if the particle-size class throughout the upper 100 cm is sandy; or

(2) Less than 125 cm from the mineral soil surface, if the clay content in the fine-earth fraction of the surface horizon is less than 20 percent and the particle-size class (of part or all of the upper 100 cm) is finer than sandy; or

(3) Less than 100 cm from the mineral soil surface, if the clay content in the fine-earth fraction of the surface horizon is 20 percent or more.

3. Has a thickness of either:

a. 30 cm or more; or

b. 15 cm or more if there is a lithic, paralithic, or petroferic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, with the kandic horizon constituting 60 percent or more of the vertical distance between a depth of 18 cm and the contact.

4. Has a texture of loamy very fine sand or finer.

5. Has a CEC of 16 cmol(+) or less per kg clay⁶ (by 1N NH₄OAc pH 7) and an ECEC of 12 cmol(+) or less per kg clay (sum of bases extracted with 1N NH₄OAc pH 7, plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al) in 50 percent or more of its thickness between the point where the clay increase requirements are met and either a depth of 100 cm below that point, or a lithic, paralithic, or petroferic contact if shallower.

6. Has a regular decrease in organic-carbon content with increasing depth, no fine stratification, and no overlying layers more than 30 cm thick that have fine stratification and/or organic carbon contents which decrease irregularly with increasing depth.

Natric horizon

The natric horizon (NL. *natrium*, sodium; implying presence of sodium) is a special kind of argillic horizon. It has, in addition to the properties of the argillic horizon:

⁶ The percentage of clay is either measured by the pipette method, or estimated to be 2.5 times (percent water retained at 1500 kPa tension minus percent organic carbon), whichever value is higher, but no more than 100.

1. Either

- a. Columns, or less commonly, prisms in some (usually the upper) part, which may break to blocks; or
- b. Rarely, blocky structure, and tongues of an eluvial horizon which contain uncoated silt or sand grains and extend more than 2.5 cm into the horizon; and

2. Either

- a. An exchangeable sodium percentage (ESP) of 15 percent or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio, SAR, of 13 or more) in one or more subhorizons within 40 cm of its upper boundary; or
- b. More exchangeable magnesium plus sodium than calcium plus exchange acidity (at pH 8.2) in one or more subhorizons within 40 cm of its upper boundary, if the ESP is 15 or more (or the SAR is 13 or more) in one or more horizons within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Oxic horizon

The oxic horizon is a mineral subsurface horizon of sandy loam or a finer particle size with low cation exchange capacity and low weatherable-mineral content. Its upper boundary is either 18 cm below the mineral soil surface or at the lower boundary of an Ap horizon, whichever is deeper, or at a greater depth where mineralogical and charge characteristics meet the requirements for the oxic horizon. Any increase in clay content at the upper boundary must be diffuse. The lower boundary of the oxic horizon is also defined by its mineralogical and charge requirements and may, in addition, be defined by the presence of saprolite with rock structure.

The oxic horizon does not have andic soil properties (defined below), and has all the following characteristics:

1. A thickness of 30 cm or more; and
2. A particle size of sandy loam or finer in the fine-earth fraction; and
3. Less than 10 percent weatherable minerals in the 50-to-200-micron fraction; and
4. Rock structure in less than 5 percent of its volume, or sesquioxide coatings on lithorelicts containing weatherable minerals; and
5. A diffuse upper particle-size boundary, i.e., within a vertical distance of 15 cm, a clay increase with depth of:
 - a. Less than 4 percent (absolute) in its fine-earth fraction if that of the surface horizon contains less than 20 percent clay; or

- b. Less than 20 percent (relative) in its fine-earth fraction if that of the surface horizon contains 20 to 40 percent clay; or
- c. Less than 8 percent (absolute) in its fine-earth fraction if that of the surface horizon contains 40 percent or more clay); and

6. A CEC of 16 cmol(+) or less per kg clay⁷ (by 1N NH₄OAc pH 7) and an ECEC of 12 cmol(+) or less per kg clay (sum of bases extracted with 1N NH₄OAc pH 7, plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al).

Petrocalcic horizon

The petrocalcic horizon is indurated or cemented throughout each pedon by calcium carbonate or, less commonly, by calcium and magnesium carbonate, with or without accessory silica, to such a degree that dry fragments do not slake in water. If soaked in acid, cementation of the petrocalcic horizon is destroyed in half or more of its lateral extent in each pedon. The horizon is massive or platy, very hard, extremely hard, or harder (cannot be penetrated by spade or auger) when dry, and very firm, extremely firm, or firmer when moist. Its noncapillary pores are filled, and it is a barrier to roots. Its hydraulic conductivity is moderately low to very low. A laminar capping commonly is present but is not required.

The petrocalcic horizon is typically 10 cm or more thick. A minimum thickness of 2.5 cm is required if it is laminar and rests on bedrock, and if the product of its thickness in centimeters multiplied by its percentage of CaCO₃ equivalent is 200 or more.

Petrogypsic horizon

The petrogypsic horizon is a horizon 10 cm or more thick which is so strongly cemented with gypsum that dry fragments do not slake in water and roots cannot enter. Its gypsum content commonly is far greater than the minimum requirements for a gypsic horizon, usually 60 percent or more. Petrogypsic horizons are restricted to arid climates and to parent materials that are rich in gypsum. They are rare in the United States but are common in parts of Africa and Asia.

Placic horizon

The placic horizon (Gr. *plax*, *plak*-, flat stone; meaning a thin cemented pan) is a thin, black to dark reddish pan that is cemented either by iron, or iron and manganese, or an iron-organic-matter complex. It is generally between 2 and 10 mm thick, but may be as thin as 1 mm or, in spots, up to 40 mm thick. It is often associated

⁷ The percentage of clay is either measured by the pipette method, or estimated to be 3 times (percent water retained at 1500 kPa tension minus percent organic carbon), whichever value is higher, but no more than 100.

with stratification in parent materials. The placic horizon is in the solum, commonly within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, and roughly parallel with it. It has a pronounced wavy or even convolute form. Normally it occurs as a single pan rather than as multiple sheets (one underlying another), but it may be bifurcated. It is a barrier to water and roots.

If cemented by iron, the pan is strong brown to dark reddish brown; if cemented by iron and manganese or by iron-organic-matter complexes, it is black or reddish black. A single pan may contain two or more layers that are cemented by different agents; commonly iron-organic-matter complexes are found in the upper part of the pan.

Unless its thickness is minimal, identification of a placic horizon is seldom difficult because the hard, brittle pan differs so much from the material in which it occurs and is so close to the mineral soil surface.

Analyses of placic horizons show that they contain between 1 and more than 10 percent organic carbon. The presence of organic carbon and the shape and position of the placic horizon distinguish it from the ironstone sheets that may form where water hangs, or moves laterally, at a lithologic discontinuity.

Salic horizon

A salic horizon is a horizon 15 cm or more thick containing a secondary enrichment of salts which, in cold water, are more soluble than gypsum. It has a salt content of 2 percent or more (by weight) throughout, and the product of its thickness (in centimeters) multiplied by its salt percentage (by weight) is 60 or more. Thus, a horizon 20 cm thick must contain 3 percent salt to qualify as a salic horizon, while a horizon 30 cm thick requires 2 percent.

Sombric horizon

The sombric horizon (Sp *sombra* shade, hence dark) is a subsurface horizon of mineral soils which has formed under free drainage. It contains illuvial humus that is neither associated with aluminum, as is the humus in the spodic horizon, nor dispersed by sodium, as is common in the natric horizon. Consequently the sombric horizon does not have the high cation-exchange capacity in its clay that characterizes a spodic horizon, and it does not have the high base saturation of a natric horizon. It does not underlie an albic horizon.

Sombric horizons are thought to be restricted to the cool, moist soils of high plateaus and mountains in tropical or subtropical regions. Because of strong leaching, their base saturation is low (less than 50 percent by NH_4OAc).

The sombric horizon has a lower color value or chroma, or both, than the overlying horizon and commonly

contains more organic matter. It may have formed in an argillic, a cambic, or an oxic horizon. If peds are present, the dark colors are most pronounced on surfaces of peds.

In the field, a sombric horizon is easily mistaken for a buried A horizon. It can be distinguished from some buried epipedons by lateral tracing. In thin sections, the organic matter of a sombric horizon appears more concentrated on peds and in pores rather than uniformly dispersed through the matrix.

Spodic horizon

The spodic horizon is an illuvial layer that is 2.5 cm or more thick, is not part of an Ap horizon, and contains 85 percent or more spodic materials (defined below).

Spodic materials contain illuvial active amorphous materials composed of organic matter and aluminum, with or without iron. The term "active" is used here to describe materials that have a high pH-dependent charge, a large surface area, and high water retention. In uncultivated soils the spodic horizon normally lies below an albic horizon; less commonly, it is either under an ochric epipedon that does not meet the color requirements of an albic horizon, or in or under an umbric epipedon. In some soils the spodic horizon is at the surface of the mineral soil directly below a thin O horizon. In cultivated soils it generally occurs directly below the Ap horizon.

Sulfuric horizon

The sulfuric (*L. sulfur*) horizon is 15 cm or more thick and is composed of either mineral or organic soil material that has a pH value of 3.5 or less (1:1 by weight in water, or in a minimum of water to permit measurement) and shows evidence that the low pH value is caused by sulfuric acid. The evidence is one or more of the following:

1. Jarosite concentrations, or
2. Directly underlying sulfidic materials (defined below), or
3. 0.05 percent or more water-soluble sulfate.

A sulfuric horizon forms as a result of drainage, most commonly artificial, and oxidation of sulfide-rich mineral or organic soil materials. Such a horizon is highly toxic to most plants. It may also form in places where sulfidic materials have been exposed as a result of surface mining, road construction, dredging, or other earth-moving operations.

OTHER DIAGNOSTIC SOIL CHARACTERISTICS

Abrupt textural change

An abrupt textural change is a specific kind of change that may occur between an ochric epipedon or albic horizon and an argillic horizon. It is characterized by a considerable increase in clay content within a very short vertical distance in the zone of contact. If the clay content of the fine-earth fraction of the ochric epipedon or albic horizon is less than 20 percent, it doubles within a vertical distance of 7.5 cm or less. If the clay content of the fine-earth fraction of the ochric epipedon or albic horizon is 20 percent or more, there is an increase of 20 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 7.5 cm or less (e.g., an increase from 22 to 42 percent), and the clay content in some part of the argillic horizon is two times or more the amount contained in the overlying horizon.

Normally there is no transitional horizon between an ochric epipedon or albic horizon and an argillic horizon, or it is too thin to be sampled. Some soils, however, have a glossic horizon or interfingering of albic materials (defined below) in parts of the argillic horizon. The upper boundary of such a horizon is irregular or even discontinuous. Sampling this mixture as a single horizon might create the impression of a relatively thick transitional horizon, whereas the thickness of the actual transition at the contact may be no more than 1 mm.

Albic materials

Albic (*L. albus*, white) materials are soil materials with a color that is largely determined by the color of primary sand and silt particles, rather than by the color of their coatings. The definition implies that clay and/or free iron oxides have been removed from the materials, or the oxides have been segregated to such an extent that the color of the materials is largely determined by the color of the primary particles.

Albic materials have one of the following colors:

1. A chroma of 2 or less, and either:
 - a. A color value, moist, of 3 or more, and a color value, dry, of 6 or more; or
 - b. A color value, moist, of 4 or more, and a color value, dry, of 5 or more; or
2. A chroma of 3 or less, and
 - a. A color value, moist, of 6 or more; or
 - b. A color value, dry, of 7 or more; or

- c. A chroma that is controlled by the color of uncoated grains of silt or sand, a hue of 5YR or redder, and color values listed in 1.a or 1.b above.

Relatively unaltered layers of light-colored sand, volcanic ash, or other materials deposited by wind or water are not considered albic materials, although they may have the same color and apparent morphology. These deposits are parent materials which have not had clay and/or free iron removed and do not overlie an illuvial horizon or other soil horizon except a buried soil. Light-colored krotovina or filled root channels should only be considered albic materials if they have no fine stratifications or lamellae, if any sealing along krotovina walls has been destroyed, and if these intrusions have, after deposition, been leached of free iron oxides and/or clay.

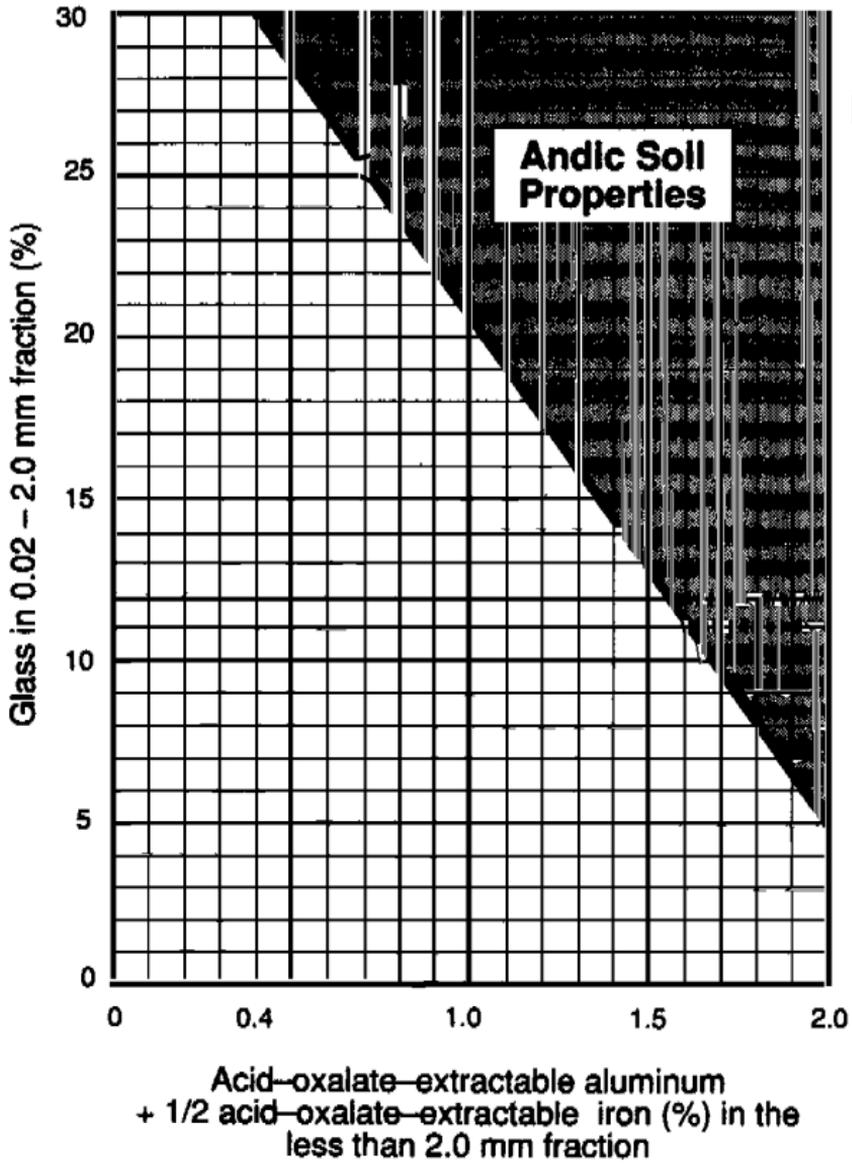
Andic soil properties

To be recognized as having andic soil properties, soil materials must contain less than 25 percent (by weight) organic carbon and meet one or both of the following requirements:

1. In the fine-earth fraction, all of the following:
 - a. Aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 2.0 percent or more, and
 - b. A bulk density, measured at 33 kPa water retention, of 0.90 g/cm³ or less, and
 - c. A phosphate retention⁸ of 85 percent or more; or
2. In the fine-earth fraction, a phosphate retention of 25 percent or more, 30 percent or more particles of 0.02 to 2.0 mm, and one of the following:
 - a. Aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more and, in the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 30 percent or more volcanic glass; or
 - b. Aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 2.0 or more and, in the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; or
 - c. Aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling between 0.40 and 2.0 and, in the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, enough volcanic glass so that the glass percentage, when plotted against the value obtained by adding aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages in the fine-earth fraction, falls within the shaded area of Figure 1.

⁸ Blakemore, L.C., P.L. Searle, and B.K. Daly. 1987. Methods for chemical analysis of soils. NZ Soil Bureau Scientific Report 80. pp 44-45.

Figure 1



Z-M

Figure 1 — Soils that plot in the shaded area have Andic soil properties if the less than 2.0 mm fraction has phosphate retention of more than 25 percent and the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction is at least 30 percent of the less than 2.0 mm fraction.

Aquic conditions⁹

Soils with aquic (*L. aqua*, water) conditions are those which currently experience continuous or periodic saturation and reduction. The presence of these conditions is indicated by *redoximorphic features* (defined below) and can be verified, except in artificially drained soils,¹⁰ by measuring saturation and reduction.

⁹ The term *aquic conditions* was introduced, and other changes were made throughout Soil Taxonomy, in 1992 as a result of recommendations submitted to SCS by the International Committee on Aquic Moisture Regime (ICOMAR), which was established in 1982 and chaired initially by Frank Moorman, then by Johan Bouma (since 1985).

¹⁰ Artificial drainage is defined here as removal of free water from soils (by surface mounding, ditches, or subsurface tiles) to the extent that watertable levels are changed significantly in connection with specific types of land use. In the keys, artificially drained soils are included with soils that have aquic conditions.

Elements of aquic conditions:

1. **Saturation** is characterized by zero or positive pressure in the soil-water and can generally be determined by observing free water in an unlined auger hole. However, problems may arise in clayey soils with peds, where an unlined auger hole may fill with water flowing along faces of peds while the soil matrix is and remains unsaturated (bypass flow). Such free water may incorrectly suggest the presence of a water table, while the actual water table occurs at greater depth. Use of well-sealed piezometers or tensiometers is therefore recommended for measuring saturation. Problems may, however, still occur if water runs into piezometer slits near the bottom of the piezometer hole or if tensiometers with slowly reacting manometers are used. The first problem can be overcome by using piezometers with smaller slits, and the second by using transducer tensiometry, which reacts faster than manometers. Soils are considered wet if they have pressure heads greater than -1 kPa. Only macropores such as cracks between peds or channels are then filled with air, while the soil matrix is usually still saturated. Obviously, exact measurements of the wet state can only be obtained with tensiometers. For operational purposes, the use of piezometers is recommended as a standard method.

The duration of saturation required for creating aquic conditions is variable, depending on the soil environment, and is not specified.

Three types of saturation are defined:

- a. **Endosaturation.**—The soil is saturated with water in all layers from the upper boundary of saturation to a depth of 200 cm or more from the mineral soil surface.
- b. **Episaturation.**—The soil is saturated with water in one or more layers within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface and also has one or more unsaturated layers, with an upper boundary above 200 cm depth, below the saturated layer. The zone of saturation, i.e., the water table, is perched on top of a relatively impermeable layer.
- c. **Anthic saturation.**—This variant of episaturation is associated with controlled flooding (for such crops as wetland rice and cranberries), which causes reduction processes in the saturated, puddled surface soil and oxidation of reduced and mobilized iron and manganese in the unsaturated subsoil.

2. The degree of **reduction** in a soil can be characterized by the direct measurement of redox potentials. Direct measurements should take into account chemical equilibria as expressed by stability diagrams in standard soil textbooks. Reduction and oxidation processes are also a function of soil pH. Accurate measurements of

the degree of reduction existing in a soil are difficult to obtain. In the context of Soil Taxonomy, however, only a degree of reduction that results in reduced Fe is considered, because it produces the visible redoximorphic features that are identified in the keys. A simple field test is available to determine if reduced iron ions are present. A freshly broken surface of a field-wet soil sample is treated with α, α' -dipyridyl¹¹ in neutral, 1-normal ammonium-acetate solution. The appearance of a strong red color on the freshly broken surface indicates the presence of reduced iron ions. Use of α, α' -dipyridyl in a 10-percent acetic-acid solution is not recommended because the acid is likely to change soil conditions, for example by dissolving CaCO_3 .

The duration of reduction required for creating aquatic conditions is not specified.

3. Redoximorphic features associated with wetness result from the reduction and oxidation of iron and manganese compounds in the soil after saturation with water and desaturation, respectively. The reduced iron and manganese ions are mobile and may be transported by water as it moves through the soil. Certain redox patterns occur as a function of the patterns in which the ion-carrying water moves through the soil, and of the location of aerated zones in the soil. Redox patterns are also affected by the fact that manganese is reduced more rapidly than iron, while iron oxidizes more rapidly upon aeration. Characteristic color patterns are created by these processes. The reduced iron and manganese ions may be removed from a soil if vertical or lateral fluxes of water occur, in which case there is no iron or manganese precipitation in that soil. Wherever the iron and manganese is oxidized and precipitated, it forms either soft masses or hard concretions or nodules. Movement of iron and manganese as a result of redox processes in a soil may result in redoximorphic features that are defined as follows:

a. Redox concentrations.—These are zones of apparent accumulation of Fe-Mn oxides, including:

(1) Nodules and concretions, i.e., firm, irregularly shaped bodies with diffuse

¹¹ A positive reaction to the α, α' -dipyridyl field test for ferrous iron (Childs, 1981*) may be used to confirm the existence of reducing conditions and is especially useful in situations where, despite saturation, normal morphological indicators of such conditions are either absent or obscured (as by the dark colors characteristic of melanic great groups). A negative reaction, however, does not imply that reducing conditions are always absent; this may only mean that the level of free iron in the soil is below the sensitivity limit of the test or that the soil is in an oxidized phase at the time of testing.

* Childs, C.W. 1981. Field test for ferrous iron and ferric-organic complexes (on exchange sites or in water-soluble forms) in soils. *Australian Journal of Soil Research* 19: 175-180.

boundaries if formed *in situ*, or with sharp boundaries after pedoturbation;

(2) Masses, i.e., soft bodies of variable shapes within the matrix; and

(3) Pore linings, i.e., zones of accumulation along pores which may be either coatings on pore surfaces or impregnations from the matrix adjacent to the pores.

b. Redox depletions.—These are zones of low chroma (2 or less) where either Fe-Mn oxides alone or both Fe-Mn oxides and clay have been stripped out, including:

(1) Iron depletions, i.e., zones which contain low amounts of Fe and Mn oxides but have a clay content similar to that of the adjacent matrix (often referred to as albanes or neoalbanes); and

(2) Clay depletions, i.e., zones which contain low amounts of Fe, Mn, and clay (often referred to as silt coatings or skeletans).

c. Reduced matrix.—This is a soil matrix which has a low chroma *in situ*, but undergoes a change in hue or chroma within 30 minutes after the soil material has been exposed to air.

d. In soils that have no visible redoximorphic features, a positive reaction to an α, α' -dipyridyl solution satisfies the requirement for redoximorphic features.

Field experience indicates that it is not possible to define a specific set of redoximorphic features that is uniquely characteristic of all the taxa in one particular category. Therefore color patterns that are unique to specific taxa are referenced in the keys.

Anthraquic conditions represent a special kind of aquic conditions which occur in soils that are cultivated and irrigated. Soils with anthraquic conditions must meet the requirements for aquic conditions and in addition have both of the following:

a. A tilled surface layer and a directly underlying slowly permeable layer which have, for three months or more per year in most years, both

(1) Saturation and reduction; and

(2) A chroma of two or less in the matrix; and

b. A subsurface horizon with one or more of the following:

(1) Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less in macropores; or

- (2) Redox concentrations of iron; or
- (3) Two times or more the amount of iron (by dithionite citrate) contained in the tilled surface layer.

Coefficient of linear extensibility (COLE)

The coefficient of linear extensibility (COLE) is the ratio of the difference between moist length and dry length of a clod, to its dry length. It is $(L_m - L_d)/L_d$, where L_m is the length at 33 kPa tension and L_d is the length when dry. COLE can be calculated from the differences in bulk density of the clod when moist and when dry. An estimate of COLE can be calculated in the field by measuring the distance between two pins in a clod of undisturbed soil at field capacity and again after the clod has dried. COLE does not apply if the shrinkage is irreversible.

Durinodes

Durinodes (*L. durus*, hard; *nodus*, knot) are weakly cemented to indurated nodules. The cement is SiO_2 , presumably opal and microcrystalline forms of silica. It breaks down in hot concentrated KOH after treatment with HCl to remove carbonates, but does not break down with concentrated HCl alone. Dry durinodes do not slake appreciably in water, but prolonged soaking can result in spalling of very thin platelets and in some slaking. Durinodes are firm or very firm; they are brittle when wet, both before and after treatment with acid; and they are disconnected and have a diameter of 1 cm or more. Most durinodes are roughly concentric when viewed in cross section, and concentric stringers of opal may be visible under a hand lens.

Interfingering of albic materials

The term *interfingering of albic materials* means albic materials that penetrate 5 cm or more into an underlying argillic or natric horizon along vertical and, to a lesser degree, horizontal faces of peds. There need not be a continuous overlying albic horizon. The albic materials constitute less than 15 percent of the layer which they penetrate, but they form continuous skeletans (ped coatings of clean silt or sand defined by Brewer, 1964) 1 mm or more thick on the vertical ped faces, which means a total width of 2 mm or more between abutting peds. Because quartz is such a common constituent of silt and sand, these skeletans are usually light gray when moist and nearly white when dry, but their color is determined in large part by the color of the sand or silt fraction.

Interfingering of albic materials is recognized if albic materials:

1. Penetrate 5 cm or more into an underlying argillic or natric horizon; and

2. Are 2 mm or more thick between vertical faces of abutting peds; and
3. Constitute less than 15 percent (by volume) of the layer which they penetrate.

Linear extensibility (LE)

The linear extensibility (LE) of a soil layer is the product of the thickness, in centimeters, multiplied by the COLE of the layer in question. The LE of a soil is the sum of these products for all soil horizons.

Lithic contact

A lithic contact is the boundary between soil and a coherent underlying material. Except in ruptic-lithic subgroups the underlying material must be virtually continuous within the limits of a pedon. Cracks that can be penetrated by roots are few, and their horizontal spacing is 10 cm or more. The underlying material must be sufficiently coherent when moist to make hand-digging with a spade impractical, although the material may be chipped or scraped with a spade. If it consists of a single mineral, it must have a hardness by Mohs scale of 3 or more; otherwise, chunks of gravel size that can be broken out must not disperse during 15 hours of shaking in water or in a sodium hexametaphosphate solution. The underlying material considered here does not include diagnostic soil horizons such as a duripan or a petrocalcic horizon.

A lithic contact is diagnostic at the subgroup level if it is within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface of Oxisols and within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface of all other mineral soils.

***n* value**

The *n* value (Pons and Zonneveld, 1965) characterizes the relation between the percentage of water in a soil under field conditions and its percentages of inorganic clay and humus. The *n* value is helpful in predicting whether a soil can be grazed by livestock or can support other loads, and in predicting what degree of subsidence would occur after drainage. For mineral soil materials that are not thixotropic, the *n* value can be calculated by the formula:

$$n = (A - 0.2R)/(L + 3H)$$

A is the percentage of water in the soil in field condition, calculated on a dry-soil basis; *R* is the percentage of silt plus sand; *L* is the percentage of clay; and *H* is the percentage of organic matter (percent organic carbon multiplied by 1.724).

Few data are available in the United States for calculations of the *n* value, but the critical *n* value of 0.7 can be approximated closely in the field by a simple test of squeezing a soil sample in the hand. If the soil flows

between the fingers with difficulty, the n value is between 0.7 and 1.0; if the soil flows easily between the fingers, the n value is 1 or more.

Paralithic contact

A paralithic (lithiclike) contact is a boundary between soil and a continuous, coherent underlying material. It differs from a lithic contact in that the underlying material, if a single mineral, has a hardness by Mohs scale of less than 3. If the underlying material does not consist of a single mineral, chunks of gravel size that can be broken out disperse more or less completely during 15 hours of shaking in water or in a sodium hexametaphosphate solution and, when moist, the material can be dug with difficulty with a spade. Normally the material underlying a paralithic contact is a partly consolidated sedimentary rock such as sandstone, siltstone, marl, or shale, and its bulk density or consolidation is such that roots cannot enter. There may be cracks in the rock, but their horizontal spacing is 10 cm or more.

Permafrost

Permafrost is a layer in which the temperature is perennially at or below 0°C, whether its consistence is very hard or loose. Dry permafrost has loose consistence.

Petroferric contact

A petroferric (Gr. *petra*, rock, and L. *ferrum*, iron; implying ironstone) contact is a boundary between soil and a continuous layer of indurated material in which iron is an important cement and organic matter is either absent or present only in traces. The indurated layer must be continuous within the limits of each pedon, but may be fractured if the average lateral distance between fractures is 10 cm or more. The fact that this ironstone layer contains little or no organic matter distinguishes it from a placic horizon and from an indurated spodic horizon (ortstein, see below), both of which contain organic matter.

Several features can aid in making the distinction between a lithic and a petroferric contact. First, a petroferric contact is roughly horizontal. Second, the material directly below a petroferric contact contains a high amount of iron (normally 30 percent or more Fe_2O_3). Third, the ironstone sheets below a petroferric contact are thin; their thickness ranges from a few centimeters to very few meters. Sandstone, on the other hand, may be thin or very thick, may be level-bedded or tilted, and may contain only a small percentage of Fe_2O_3 . In the tropics, the ironstone is generally more or less vesicular.

Plinthite

Plinthite (Gr. *plinthos*, brick) is an iron-rich, humus-poor mixture of clay with quartz and other diluents. It commonly occurs as dark red redox concentrations which usually form platy, polygonal, or reticulate patterns. Plinthite changes irreversibly to an ironstone hardpan or to irregular aggregates on exposure to repeated wetting and drying, especially if it is also exposed to heat from the sun. The lower boundary of a zone in which plinthite occurs is usually diffuse or gradual, but it may be abrupt at a lithologic discontinuity.

Generally, plinthite forms in a horizon that is saturated with water for some time during the year. Initially, iron is normally segregated in the form of soft, more or less clayey, red or dark red redox concentrations. These redox concentrations, however, are not considered plinthite unless there has been enough segregation of iron to permit their irreversible hardening on exposure to repeated wetting and drying. Plinthite in the soil is usually firm or very firm when the soil moisture content is near field capacity, and hard when the moisture content is below the wilting point. Plinthite does not harden irreversibly as a result of a single cycle of drying and rewetting; after a single drying, it will remoisten and can then be dispersed in large part by shaking in water with a dispersing agent.

In a moist soil, plinthite is soft enough so that it can be cut with a spade. After irreversible hardening, it is no longer considered plinthite but is called ironstone. Indurated ironstone materials can be broken or shattered with a spade but cannot be dispersed by shaking in water with a dispersing agent.

Sequum and bisequum

The sequence of an eluvial horizon and the underlying B horizon, if one is present, is called a sequum. For example, an albic horizon and a spodic horizon directly below it, or a mollic epipedon and an underlying cambic horizon, or an argillic horizon and a *k* horizon directly below it, constitute a sequum. If two sequa are present in vertical sequence in a single soil, that sequence is called a bisequum.

Slickensides

Slickensides are polished and grooved surfaces that are produced by one soil mass sliding past another. Some slickensides occur at the lower boundary of a slip surface where a mass of soil moves downward on a relatively steep slope. Slickensides are very common in swelling clays that undergo marked changes in moisture content.

Soft powdery lime

Soft powdery lime is a term used in the definitions of a number of taxa. It refers to translocated authigenic lime, soft enough to be cut readily with a fingernail, that has been precipitated in place from the soil solution rather than inherited from a soil parent material such as a calcareous loess or till. It should be present in a significant enough accumulation to constitute a *k* horizon.

Soft powdery lime may either disrupt the soil structure or fabric to form spheroidal aggregates (white eyes) that are soft and powdery when dry; or it may be present as soft coatings in pores or on structural faces. If present as coatings, it covers a significant part of the surfaces. Commonly, it coats all of them to a thickness between 1 and more than 5 mm; but if little lime is present in the soil, the surfaces may be only partially coated. The coatings should be thick enough to be visible when moist and should cover a continuous area larger than filaments.

The pseudomycelia commonly seen in a dry calcareous horizon do not come within the meaning of soft powdery lime. Pseudomycelia are soft powdery filaments that are commonly branching, on structural faces. They may come and go with the seasons and may be lime that has been precipitated in a single season by the withdrawal of stored soil moisture, rather than a *k* horizon.

Soft coatings on hard lime concretions are also excluded from the meaning of soft powdery lime. These may be thin or thick and may be the result of either current accumulation or removal of lime, i.e., the concretion may be either growing or undergoing dissolution, and either process can produce a soft coating.

Soil moisture regimes

The term *soil moisture regime* refers to the presence or absence either of ground water or of water held at a tension of less than 1500 kPa, in the soil or in specific horizons, by periods of the year. Water held at a tension of 1500 kPa or more is not available to keep most mesophytic plants alive. The availability of water is also affected by dissolved salts. But if a soil is saturated with water that is too salty to be available to most plants, we call such a soil salty rather than dry. Consequently, a horizon is considered dry when the moisture tension is 1500 kPa or more, and is considered moist if water is held at a tension of less than 1500 kPa but more than zero. A soil may be continuously moist in some or all horizons either throughout the year or for some part of the year. It may be either moist in winter and dry in summer, or the reverse. In the northern hemisphere, *summer* refers to the months of June, July, and August, and *winter* means December, January, and February.

Soil moisture control section

The intent in defining the soil moisture control section is to facilitate estimation of soil moisture regimes from climatic data. The upper boundary of this control section is the depth to which a dry (tension of more than 1500 kPa, but not air-dry) soil will be moistened by 2.5 cm of water within 24 hours. The lower boundary is the depth to which a dry soil will be moistened by 7.5 cm of water within 48 hours. These depths do not include the depth of moistening along any cracks or animal burrows that are open to the surface.

If 7.5 cm of water moistens the soil to a lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact or to a petrocalcic horizon or a duripan, the upper boundary of the rock or of the cemented horizon constitutes the lower boundary of the soil moisture control section. If a soil is moistened to one of these contacts or horizons by 2.5 cm of water, the soil moisture control section is the lithic contact itself, the paralithic contact, or the upper boundary of the cemented horizon. The control section of such a soil is considered moist if the upper boundary of the rock or the cemented horizon has a thin film of water. If that upper boundary is dry, the control section is considered dry.

The moisture control section of a soil extends approximately: (1) from 10 to 30 cm below the soil surface if the particle-size class of the soil is fine-loamy, coarse-silty, fine-silty, or clayey; (2) from 20 cm to 60 cm if the particle-size class is coarse-loamy; and (3) from 30 to 90 cm if the particle-size class is sandy. If the soil contains coarse fragments that do not absorb and release water, the limits of the moisture control section are deeper. In addition to the particle-size class, the limits of the soil moisture control section are also affected by differences in soil structure or pore-size distribution, or by other factors that influence movement and retention of water in the soil.

Classes of soil moisture regimes

The soil moisture regimes are defined in terms of the groundwater level, and in terms of the seasonal presence or absence of water held at a tension of less than 1500 kPa in the moisture control section. It is assumed in the definitions that the soil supports whatever vegetation it is capable of supporting, i.e., it may be in crops, grass, or native vegetation, but it is not being irrigated, nor fallowed to increase the amount of stored moisture. These cultural practices affect the soil moisture conditions as long as they are continued.

Aquic moisture regime.—The aquic (*L. aqua*, water) moisture regime signifies a reducing regime in a soil that is virtually free of dissolved oxygen because it is saturated by ground water or by water of the capillary fringe. Some soils at times are saturated with water while dissolved oxygen is present, either because the

water is moving or because the environment is unfavorable for micro-organisms (e.g., if the temperature is less than 1°C); such a regime is not considered aquic.

It is not known how long a soil must be saturated to have an aquic moisture regime, but the duration must be at least a few days, because it is implicit in the concept that dissolved oxygen is virtually absent. Because dissolved oxygen is removed from ground water by respiration of micro-organisms, roots, and soil fauna, it is also implicit in the concept that the soil temperature is above biologic zero (5°C) for some time while the soil is saturated.

Very commonly, the level of ground water fluctuates with the seasons; it is highest in the rainy season, or in fall, winter, or spring if cold weather virtually stops evapotranspiration. There are soils, however, in which the ground water is always at or very close to the surface. A tidal marsh and a closed, landlocked depression fed by perennial streams are examples. The moisture regime in these soils is called *peraquic*.

Although the terms *aquic moisture regime* and *peraquic* are not used as either a criterion or a formative element for taxa, they are used in taxon descriptions as an aid in understanding genesis.

Aridic and torric (*L. aridus*, dry, and *L. torridus*,¹² hot and dry) **moisture regimes**.—These terms are used for the same moisture regime but in different categories of the taxonomy.

In the aridic (torric) moisture regime, the moisture control section is, in 6 or more out of 10 years,

1. Dry in all parts for more than half the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is above 5°C; *and*
2. Moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is above 8°C.

Soils that have an aridic or a torric moisture regime normally occur in arid climates. A few are in semiarid climates and either have physical properties that keep them dry, such as a crusty surface that virtually precludes infiltration of water, or they are very shallow over bedrock. There is little or no leaching in these moisture regimes, and soluble salts accumulate in the soil if there is a source of them.

The limits set for soil temperature exclude from these moisture regimes the very cold and dry polar regions and high elevations. The data available on the soils of

¹² *Torridus* is not a very satisfactory root, but a better one could not be found. Soils that have a torric moisture regime are hot and dry in summer, although they may not be hot throughout the year.

those regions are so fragmentary that no provision is made for their moisture regimes in this taxonomy.

Udic moisture regime.—The udic (*L. udus*, humid) moisture regime implies that, in 6 or more out of 10 years, the soil moisture control section is not dry in any part for as long as 90 cumulative days per year. If the mean annual soil temperature is lower than 22°C and if the mean winter and mean summer soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface differ by 5°C or more, the soil moisture control section, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in all parts for less than 45 consecutive days in the 4 months following the summer solstice. In addition, the udic moisture regime requires, except for short periods, a three-phase system, solid-liquid-gas, in part or all of the soil moisture control section when the soil temperature is above 5°C.

The udic moisture regime is common to the soils of humid climates which have well-distributed rainfall, or which have enough rain in summer so that the amount of stored moisture plus rainfall is approximately equal to, or exceeds, the amount of evapotranspiration. Water moves down through the soil at some time in most years.

In climates where precipitation exceeds evapotranspiration in all months of most years, the moisture tension rarely goes up to 100 kPa in the soil moisture control section, although there are occasional brief periods when some stored moisture is used. The water moves through the soil in all months when it is not frozen. Such an extremely wet moisture regime is called *perudic* (*L. per*, throughout in time; *L. udus*, humid). In the names of most taxa, the formative element *ud* is used to indicate either a udic or a perudic regime; the formative element *per* is used in selected taxa.

Ustic moisture regime.—The ustic (*L. ustus*, burnt, implying dryness) moisture regime is intermediate between the aridic and the udic regime. Its concept is one of moisture that is limited but is present at a time when conditions are suitable for plant growth. The concept of the ustic moisture regime is not applied to soils that have cryic or pergelic soil temperature regimes (defined below).

If the mean annual soil temperature is 22°C or higher or if the mean summer and winter soil temperatures differ by less than 5°C at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface, the soil moisture control section in the ustic moisture regime, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for 90 or more cumulative days per year. But the moisture control section is moist in some part either for more than 180 cumulative days per year, or for 90 or more consecutive days.

If the mean annual soil temperature is lower than 22°C and if the mean summer and winter soil temperatures

differ by 5°C or more at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, the soil moisture control section in the ustic regime is dry in some or all parts for 90 or more cumulative days per year in most years. But it is not dry in all parts for more than half the cumulative days when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is higher than 5°C. If the moisture control section, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is moist in all parts for 45 or more consecutive days in the 4 months following the winter solstice, the moisture control section is dry in all parts for less than 45 consecutive days in the 4 months following the summer solstice.

In tropical and subtropical regions that have a monsoon climate with either one or two dry seasons, summer and winter seasons have little meaning. In those regions, the moisture regime is ustic if there is at least one rainy season of 3 months or more. In temperate regions of subhumid or semiarid climates, the rainy seasons are usually spring and summer or spring and fall, but never winter. Native plants are mostly annuals, or plants that have a dormant period while the soil is dry.

Xeric moisture regime.—The xeric moisture regime (Gr. *xeros*, dry) is the typical moisture regime of Mediterranean climates, where winters are moist and cool and summers are warm and dry. The moisture, coming during the winter when potential evapotranspiration is at a minimum, is particularly effective for leaching. In a xeric moisture regime the soil moisture control section, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in all parts for 45 or more consecutive days in the 4 months following the summer solstice, and moist in all parts for 45 or more consecutive days in the 4 months following the winter solstice. Also, in 6 or more out of 10 years, the moisture control section is moist in some part for more than half the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is higher than 5°C, and for 90 or more consecutive days when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is higher than 8°C. The mean annual soil temperature is lower than 22°C, and mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures differ by 5°C or more either at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, or at a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower.

Soil temperature regimes

Classes of soil temperature regimes

The following soil temperature regimes are used in defining classes at various categoric levels in the taxonomy.

Pergelic (L. *per*, throughout in time and space, and L. *gelare*, to freeze; meaning permanent frost).—Soils with a pergelic temperature regime have a mean annual temperature lower than 0°C. These are soils that have permafrost if they are moist, or dry frost if there is no

excess water. It seems likely that the moist and the dry pergelic regimes should be defined separately, but at present we have only fragmentary data on the dry soils of very high latitudes. Ice wedges and lenses are normal in such soils in the United States.

Cryic (Gr. *kryos*, coldness; meaning very cold soils).—Soils in this temperature regime have a mean annual temperature higher than 0°C but lower than 8°C.

1. In mineral soils, the mean summer soil temperature (June, July, and August in the northern hemisphere and December, January, and February in the southern hemisphere) either at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface or at a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower, is as follows:

a. If the soil is not saturated with water during some part of the summer and

(1) If there is no O horizon: lower than 15°C; or

(2) If there is an O horizon: lower than 8°C; or

b. If the soil is saturated with water during some part of the summer and

(1) If there is no O horizon: lower than 13°C; or

(2) If there is an O horizon or a histic epipedon: lower than 6°C.

2. In organic soils, the soil is either:

a. Frozen in some layer within the control section in most years 2 months after the summer solstice; i.e., the soil is very cold in winter but warms up slightly in summer; or

b. Not frozen in most years below a depth of 5 cm from the soil surface; i.e., the soil is cold throughout the year but, because of marine influence, does not freeze in most years.

Cryic soils that have an aquic moisture regime commonly are churned by frost. All isofrigid (see below) soils without permafrost are considered to have a cryic temperature regime.

Frigid.—The concept of the frigid soil temperature regime and of other soil temperature regimes listed below are used chiefly in defining classes of soils in the low categories. A soil with a frigid regime is warmer in summer than a soil with a cryic regime, but its mean annual temperature is lower than 8°C, and the difference between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures (June-July-August and December-January-February) is more than 5°C either at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface or at a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Mesic.—The mean annual soil temperature is 8°C or higher but lower than 15°C, and the difference between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures is more than 5°C either at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface or at a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Thermic.—The mean annual soil temperature is 15°C or higher but lower than 22°C, and the difference between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures is more than 5°C either at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface or at a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Hyperthermic.—The mean annual soil temperature is 22°C or higher, and the difference between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures is more than 5°C either at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface or at a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

If the name of a soil temperature regime has the prefix *iso*, the mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures for June, July, and August and for December, January, and February differ by less than 5°C at a depth of 50 cm or at a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Isofrigid.—The mean annual soil temperature is lower than 8°C.

Isomesic.—The mean annual soil temperature is 8°C or higher but lower than 15°C.

Isothermic.—The mean annual soil temperature is 15°C or higher but lower than 22°C.

Isohyperthermic.—The mean annual soil temperature is 22°C or higher.

Spodic materials

Spodic materials have formed in an illuvial horizon that normally underlies a histic, an ochric, or an umbric epipedon or an albic horizon. In most undisturbed areas spodic materials underlie an albic horizon. They may occur within an umbric epipedon or Ap horizon.

A horizon consisting of spodic materials normally has an optical-density-of-oxalate-extract (ODOE) value of 0.25 or more, and that value must be at least two times as high as the ODOE value for an overlying eluvial horizon. This increase in ODOE value indicates an accumulation of translocated organic materials in an illuvial horizon. Soils with spodic materials show evidence that organic materials and aluminum, with or without iron, have been moved from an eluvial to an illuvial horizon. The morphological, chemical, and physical properties of spodic materials are as follows.

Definition of spodic materials

Spodic materials are mineral soil materials that do not have all the properties of an argillic or a kandic horizon, are dominated by illuvial active amorphous materials composed of organic matter and aluminum, with or without iron, and have both.

1. A pH value in water (1:1) of 5.9 or less and an organic-carbon content of 0.6 percent or more; and
2. One or more of the following:
 - a. An overlying albic horizon which extends horizontally through 50 percent or more of each pedon, and have, directly under the albic horizon, colors, moist (crushed and smoothed sample), as follows:
 - (1) A hue of 5YR or redder; or
 - (2) A hue of 7.5YR, color value of 5 or less, and chroma of 4 or less; or
 - (3) A hue of 10YR or neutral and a color value and chroma of 2 or less; or
 - (4) A color of 10YR 3/1; or
 - b. One of the colors listed above or a hue of 7.5YR, color value, moist, of 5 or less, and chroma of 5 or 6 (crushed and smoothed sample), and one or more of the following morphologic or chemical properties:
 - (1) Cementation by organic matter and aluminum, with or without iron, in 50 percent or more of each pedon, and very firm or firmer consistence in the cemented part; or
 - (2) Ten percent or more cracked coatings on sand grains; or
 - (3) Aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.50 or more, and half that amount or less in an overlying umbric (or subhorizon of an umbric) epipedon, or an ochric epipedon or albic horizon; or
 - (4) An optical-density-of-oxalate-extract (ODOE) value of 0.25 or more, and a value half as high or lower in an overlying umbric (or subhorizon of an umbric) epipedon, or an ochric epipedon or albic horizon

Sulfidic materials

Sulfidic materials contain oxidizable sulfur compounds, and are mineral or organic soil materials with a pH value of more than 3.5 which, if incubated as a layer 1 cm thick under moist aerobic conditions (field capacity) at room temperature, show a drop in pH of 0.5 or more

units to a pH value of 4.0 or less (1:1 by weight in water, or in a minimum of water to permit measurement) within 8 weeks.

Sulfidic materials accumulate as a soil or sediment which is permanently saturated, generally with brackish water. The sulfates in the water are biologically reduced to sulfides as the materials accumulate. Sulfidic materials most commonly accumulate in coastal marshes near the mouths of rivers that carry noncalcareous sediments, but they may occur in fresh-water marshes if there is sulfur in the water. Upland sulfidic materials may have accumulated in a similar manner in the geologic past.

If a soil containing sulfidic materials is drained, or if sulfidic materials are otherwise exposed to aerobic conditions, the sulfides oxidize and form sulfuric acid. The pH value, which normally is near neutrality before drainage or exposure, may drop below 3. The acid may induce formation of iron and aluminum sulfates. The iron sulfate, jarosite, may segregate to form the yellow mottles that commonly characterize a sulfuric horizon. The transition from sulfidic materials to a sulfuric horizon normally requires very few years and may occur within a few weeks. A sample of sulfidic materials, if air-dried slowly in shade for about 2 months with occasional remoistening, becomes extremely acid.

Weatherable minerals

Several references are made to weatherable minerals in the text of this and subsequent chapters. Obviously, the stability of a mineral in a soil is a partial function of the soil moisture regime. Where weatherable minerals are referred to in the definitions of diagnostic horizons and of various taxa in this taxonomy, a humid climate, either present or past, is always assumed. Minerals that are included in the meaning of weatherable minerals are as follows:

1. Clay minerals: All 2:1 lattice clays except one which is currently considered to be an aluminum-interlayered chlorite. Sepiolite, talc, and glauconite are also included in this group of weatherable clay minerals, although they are not everywhere of clay size.
2. Silt- and sand-size minerals (0.02 to 0.2 mm in diameter). Feldspars, feldspathoids, ferromagnesian minerals, glass, micas, zeolites, and apatite.

Obviously, this is a restricted meaning of the term *weatherable minerals*. The intent is to include, in the definitions of diagnostic horizons and various taxa, only those weatherable minerals which are unstable in a humid climate compared to other minerals, such as quartz and 1:1 lattice clays, but which are more resistant to weathering than calcite.

LITERATURE CITED

Brewer, R. 1964. Fabric and mineral analysis of soil. John Wiley and Sons, Inc., New York, London, Sydney. 470 pp.

Pons, L.J., and I.S. Zonneveld. 1965. Soil ripening and soil classification. Initial soil formation in alluvial deposits and a classification of the resulting soils. Int. Inst. Land Reclam. and Impr. Pub. 13. Wageningen, The Netherlands. 128 pp.

Chapter 3

Horizons and Properties Diagnostic for the Higher Categories: Organic Soils¹

ORGANIC SOIL MATERIAL

Organic soil material either:

1. Is saturated with water for long periods (or artificially drained) and, excluding live roots, has an organic-carbon content (by weight) of:
 - a. 18 percent or more if the mineral fraction contains 60 percent or more clay; or
 - b. 12 percent or more if the mineral fraction contains no clay; or
 - c. $12 + (\text{clay percentage multiplied by } 0.1)$ percent or more if the mineral fraction contains less than 60 percent clay; or
2. Is never saturated with water for more than a few days and contains 20 percent or more (by weight) organic carbon.

Item 1 in this definition covers materials that have been called peat and muck. Item 2 is intended to include what has been called litter or an O horizon.

KINDS OF ORGANIC SOIL MATERIALS

Three different kinds of organic soil materials are distinguished in this taxonomy, based on the degree of decomposition of the plant materials from which they are derived. The three kinds (defined below) are: (1) fibric, (2) hemic, and (3) sapric. Because of the importance of fiber content in the definitions of these materials, fibers are defined before the kinds of organic soil materials, as follows.

Fibers

Fibers, in the terminology of this taxonomy, are pieces of plant tissue in organic soil materials (excluding live roots) which:

1. Are large enough to be retained on a 100-mesh sieve (openings 0.15 mm in diameter) when the materials are screened after dispersion in sodium hexametaphosphate; and

¹ Organic soils are referred to as Histosols in this taxonomy.

2. Show evidence of the cellular structure of the plants from which they are derived; and
3. Are either 2 cm or less in their smallest dimension, or are decomposed enough so they can be crushed and shredded with the fingers.

Pieces of wood which are larger than 2 cm in cross section and which are so undecomposed that they cannot be crushed and shredded with the fingers, such as large branches, logs, and stumps, are not considered to be fibers but coarse fragments (comparable to gravel, stones, and boulders in mineral soils).

Fibric soil materials (*L. fibra*, fiber)

Fibric soil materials are organic soil materials which either:

1. Contain three fourths² or more (by volume) fibers after rubbing, excluding coarse fragments; *or*
2. Contain two fifths or more (by volume) fibers after rubbing, excluding coarse fragments; and yield color values and chromas of 7/1, 7/2, 8/1, 8/2, or 8/3 (Munsell designations) on white chromatographic or filter paper that is inserted into a paste made of the soil materials in a saturated sodium pyrophosphate solution.

Hemic soil materials (*Gr. hemi*, half; implying intermediate decomposition)

Hemic soil materials are intermediate in their degree of decomposition between the less decomposed fibric and more decomposed sapric materials. Their morphological features give intermediate values for fiber content, bulk density, and water content. They are partly altered both physically and biochemically.

Sapric soil materials (*Gr. sapos*, rotten)

These are the most highly decomposed of the three kinds of organic soil materials. They have the smallest amount of plant fiber, the highest bulk density, and the lowest water content on a dry-weight basis at saturation. Sapric soil materials are commonly very dark gray to black. They are relatively stable, i.e., they change very little physically and chemically with time in comparison to other organic soil materials.

Sapric materials have the following characteristics:

1. Their fiber content, after rubbing, is less than one sixth (by volume), excluding coarse fragments; and
2. Their sodium-pyrophosphate-extract color on white chromatographic or filter paper is below or to the right of a line drawn to exclude blocks 5/1, 6/2, and 7/3 (Munsell designations). If few or no fibers can be

² Fractions are used rather than percentages to avoid implying a higher degree of accuracy than is justified.

detected and the color of the pyrophosphate extract is to the left or above this line, the possibility that the material is limnic must be considered.

Humilluvic material

Humilluvic material, i.e., illuvial humus, accumulates in the lower parts of some organic soils if they are acid and have been drained and cultivated. The humilluvic material has a younger C¹⁴ age than the overlying organic materials. It has very high solubility in sodium pyrophosphate and rewets very slowly after drying. Most commonly it accumulates near a contact with a sandy mineral horizon

To be recognized as a differentia in classification, the humilluvic material must constitute one half or more (by volume) of a layer 2 cm or more thick.

Limnic materials

The presence or absence of limnic deposits is taken into account in the higher categories of organic soils (Histosols, see below), while the nature of such deposits is considered in the lower categories. Limnic materials include both organic and inorganic materials that were either (1) deposited in water by precipitation or through the action of aquatic organisms, such as algae or diatoms, or (2) derived from underwater and floating aquatic plants and subsequently modified by aquatic animals. They include coprogenous earth (sedimentary peat), diatomaceous earth, and marl.

Coprogenous earth

A coprogenous-earth (sedimentary peat) layer is a limnic layer which:

1. Contains many fecal pellets with diameters between a few hundredths and a few tenths of a millimeter; and
2. Has a color value, moist, of 4 or less; and
3. Either forms a slightly viscous water suspension and is slightly plastic but not sticky, or shrinks upon drying to form clods that are difficult to rewet and often tend to crack along horizontal planes; and
4. Normally contains almost no visible fragments of plants; and
5. Either yields a saturated sodium-pyrophosphate extract on white chromatographic or filter paper that has a higher color value and lower chroma than 10 YR 7/3 (Munsell designations), or has a cation-exchange capacity of less than 240 cmol(+) per kg organic matter (measured by loss on ignition), or both.

Diatomaceous earth

A diatomaceous-earth layer is a limnic layer which.

1. If not previously dried, has a matrix color value of 3, 4, or 5, which changes irreversibly on drying as the

result of the irreversible shrinkage of organic-matter coatings on diatoms (identifiable by microscopic, 440X, examination of dry samples); and

2. Either yields a saturated sodium-pyrophosphate extract on white chromatographic or filter paper that has a higher color value and lower chroma than 10 YR 7/3 (Munsell designations), or has a cation-exchange capacity of less than 240 cmol(+) per kg organic matter (by loss on ignition), or both.

Marl

A marl layer is a limnic layer which:

1. Has a color value, moist, of 5 or more; *and*
2. Reacts with dilute HCl to evolve CO₂.

Marl usually does not change its color irreversibly on drying because a layer of marl contains too little organic matter, even before it has been shrunk by drying, to coat the carbonate particles.

THICKNESS OF ORGANIC SOIL MATERIALS (CONTROL SECTION OF HISTOSOLS)

For practical reasons an arbitrary control section has been established for the classification of organic soils (Histosols). Depending on the kinds of soil materials that are present in the surface layer, the control section has a thickness of either 130 cm or 160 cm from the soil surface, if there is no lithic or paralithic contact, thick layer of water, or permafrost within the respective limit. The thicker control section is used if the surface soil layer to a depth of 60 cm either contains three fourths or more fibers derived from *Sphagnum*, *Hypnum*, or other mosses, or has a bulk density of less than 0.1 g/cm³. Layers of water, which may be between a few centimeters and many meters thick in these soils, are considered to be the lower boundary of the control section only if the water extends below a depth of 130 or 160 cm, respectively. A lithic or paralithic contact, if shallower than 130 or 160 cm, constitutes the lower boundary of the control section; or the lower boundary of the control section is 25 cm below the upper limit of permafrost 2 months after the summer solstice. An unconsolidated mineral substratum shallower than those limits does not change the lower boundary of the control section.

The control section of Histosols is divided somewhat arbitrarily into three tiers: surface, subsurface, and bottom tiers.

Surface tier

The surface tier of a Histosol extends from the soil surface to a depth of 60 cm if either (1) the materials

within that depth are fibric and three fourths or more of the fiber volume is derived from sphagnum or other mosses, or (2) the materials have a bulk density of less than 0.1 g/cm^3 ; otherwise, the surface tier extends from the soil surface to a depth of 30 cm.

On some organic soils, a surface mineral layer less than 40 cm thick is present as a result of flooding, volcanic eruptions, additions of mineral materials to increase soil strength or reduce frost hazard, or other causes. If such a mineral layer is less than 30 cm thick, it constitutes the upper part of the surface tier; if it is 30 to 40 cm thick, it constitutes the whole surface tier and part of the subsurface tier.

O
R
G

Subsurface tier

The subsurface tier is normally 60 cm thick. If, however, the control section ends at a shallower depth (at a lithic or paralithic contact or a water layer, or in permafrost), the subsurface tier extends from the lower boundary of the surface tier to the lower boundary of the control section. It includes any unconsolidated mineral layers that may be present within those depths.

Bottom tier

The bottom tier is 40 cm thick unless the control section has its lower boundary at a shallower depth (at a lithic or paralithic contact or a water layer, or in permafrost).

Chapter 4

Family and Series Differentiae

FAMILY DIFFERENTIAE FOR MINERAL SOILS

To distinguish families of mineral soils within a subgroup, the following differentiae are used. They are listed and defined in the same sequence in which the descriptive adjectives relating to each differentia appear in the family names.

- Particle-size classes
- Mineralogy classes
- Calcareous and reaction classes
- Soil temperature classes
- Soil depth classes
- Soil consistence classes
- Classes of coatings
- Classes of cracks

Particle-size classes

The term *particle size* is used to characterize the grain-size composition of a whole soil, while the term *texture* is used in describing its fine-earth fraction, which consists of particles with a diameter of less than 2.0 mm.

The particle-size classes of this taxonomy represent a compromise between conventional divisions in pedologic and in engineering classifications. Engineering classifications have set the limit between sand and silt at a diameter of 74 microns, while pedologic classifications have put it at either 50 or 20 microns. Engineering classifications have been based on grain-size percentages by weight in the soil fraction less than 74 mm in diameter, while textural classes in pedologic classifications have been based on percentages by weight in the fraction less than 2.0 mm in diameter. In engineering classifications, the very-fine-sand separate (diameter between 0.05 mm and 0.1 mm) has been subdivided by the 74-micron limit. In defining the particle-size classes for this taxonomy, a similar division has been made, but in a different way. A fine sand or loamy fine sand normally contains an appreciable amount of very fine sand, but the very-fine-sand fraction is mostly coarser than 74 microns. A silty sediment such as loess may also contain an appreciable amount of very fine sand, most of which, however, is finer than 74 microns. So in designing the particle-size

classes for this taxonomy, the very fine sand has been allowed to "float." It is included with the sand if the texture (fine-earth fraction) of a soil is sand, loamy fine sand, or coarser. But it is treated as silt if the texture is very fine sand, loamy very fine sand, sandy loam, silt loam, or finer.

No single set of particle-size classes seems adequate to serve as family differentiae for all the different kinds of soils. So this taxonomy is providing a choice of either 7 or 11 particle-size classes, of which the second set replaces the *loamy* class of the first set with 4 and the *clayey* class with 2 more narrowly defined classes (see below). This permits relatively fine distinctions between families of soils for which particle size is important, while providing broader groupings for soils in which particle sizes are difficult to measure precisely, or for which narrowly defined particle-size classes would produce undesirable separations. Thus the term *clayey* is used for some soil families to indicate a clay content of 35 percent or more in specific horizons, while in other families the more narrowly defined terms *fine* and *very fine* indicate that these horizons have clay contents either of 35 to 60 percent, or of 60 percent or more, in their fine-earth fraction. The term *fine earth* refers to particles smaller than 2.0 mm in diameter. The term *rock fragments* means particles 2.0 mm or more in diameter and includes all particles with horizontal dimensions smaller than the size of a pedon. It is not the same as the term *coarse fragments*, which excludes stones and boulders with diameters of 25 cm or more.

Definition of classes

Fragmental.—90 percent or more (by volume) rock fragments and voids; less than 10 percent (by volume) particles less than 2.0 mm in diameter.

Sandy-skeletal.—35 percent or more (by volume) rock fragments; 10 percent or more (by volume) particles less than 2.0 mm in diameter (fine-earth fraction) with a texture of sand or loamy sand, including less than 50 percent (by weight) very fine sand.

Loamy-skeletal.—35 percent or more (by volume) rock fragments; 10 percent or more (by volume) particles less than 2.0 mm in diameter (fine-earth fraction) with a texture of loamy very fine sand, very fine sand, or finer, including less than 35 percent (by weight) clay.

Clayey-skeletal.—35 percent or more (by volume) rock fragments; 10 percent or more (by volume) particles less than 2.0 mm in diameter (fine-earth fraction), including 35 percent or more (by weight) clay

Sandy.—In the fine-earth fraction, a texture of sand or loamy sand, including less than 50 percent (by weight) very fine sand; in the whole soil, less than 35 percent (by volume) rock fragments.

Loamy.¹—In the fine-earth fraction, a texture of loamy very fine sand, very fine sand, or finer, including less than 35 percent (by weight) clay; in the whole soil, less than 35 percent (by volume) rock fragments.

Coarse-loamy. In the fraction less than 75 mm in diameter, 15 percent or more (by weight) particles with diameters of 0.1 to 75 mm (fine sand or coarser, including rock fragments up to 7.5 cm in diameter); in the fine-earth fraction, less than 18 percent (by weight) clay.

Fine-loamy. In the fraction less than 75 mm in diameter, 15 percent or more (by weight) particles with diameters of 0.1 to 75 mm (fine sand or coarser, including rock fragments up to 7.5 cm in diameter); in the fine-earth fraction, 18 to 35 percent (by weight) clay (Vertisols are excluded).

Coarse-silty. In the fraction less than 75 mm in diameter, less than 15 percent (by weight) particles with diameters of 0.1 to 75 mm (fine sand or coarser, including rock fragments up to 7.5 cm in diameter); in the fine-earth fraction, less than 18 percent (by weight) clay.

Fine-silty. In the fraction less than 75 mm in diameter, less than 15 percent (by weight) particles with diameters of 0.1 to 75 mm (fine sand or coarser, including rock fragments up to 7.5 cm in diameter); in the fine-earth fraction, 18 to 35 percent (by weight) clay (Vertisols are excluded).

Clayey.²— In the fine-earth fraction, 35 percent or more (by weight) clay; in the whole soil, less than 35 percent (by volume) rock fragments.

Fine. 35 to 60 percent (by weight) clay (30 to 60 percent in Vertisols) in the fine-earth fraction.

Very fine. 60 percent or more (by weight) clay in the fine-earth fraction.

¹ If the ratio of (percent water retained at 1500 kPa tension minus percent organic carbon) to the percentage of measured clay is 0.6 or more in half or more of the control section, then the percentage of clay is considered to be 2.5 times (percent water retained at 1500 kPa tension minus percent organic carbon), but no more than 100. Carbonates of clay size are not considered to be clay but are treated as silt in all particle-size classes

² See preceding footnote.

Modifiers that replace names of particle-size classes³

There are two situations in which particle-size class names are not used. In one, the name is redundant. Psamments and Psammaquents are sandy by definition, so no particle-size modifier is used in the family names of those soils.

In the second situation particle-size analysis is difficult to apply, which is the case with soil materials that are derived from volcanic ejecta and/or have a high content of sesquioxides and organic matter. Normal particle-size classes do not characterize these components adequately, especially as they often cannot be readily dispersed and the results of dispersion are variable. Consequently, normal particle-size class names are not used for those parts of soils that have andic soil properties or a high amount of volcanic glass, as is the case with Andisols and many andic and vitrandic subgroups of other soil orders. In addition, most Cryods and Cryaquods and a few other Spodosols that are not identified in andic subgroups have andic soil properties in some horizons within the particle-size control section, and particle-size class names are not used for these horizons.⁴

The following is a list of modifiers used as substitutes for particle-size class names, together with the criteria for each. These criteria combine particle-size and mineralogical properties and take the place of both.

1. Substitutes for the fragmental particle-size class:

These classes have a fine-earth component of less than 10 percent of the total volume.

Pumiceous - In the whole soil, more than 60 percent (by weight) volcanic ash, cinders, lapilli, pumice and

³ Definitions of the geologic terms used in the substitute particle-size classes are generally the same as in: Bates, R.L., and J.A. Jackson, (Eds). 1980. *Glossary of Geology*. 2nd ed. American Geological Institute, Falls Church, VA. 751 pp. However, different definitions are used here for the following terms:

Cinders. Uncemented, juvenile, vitric, vesicular pyroclastic material, more than 2.0 mm in at least one dimension, with an apparent specific gravity (including vesicles) of more than 1.0 and less than 2.0 g/cm³.

Lapilli: Nonvesicular or slightly vesicular pyroclastics, 2.0 to 76 mm in at least one dimension, with an apparent specific gravity of 2.0 or more g/cm³.

Pumice-like: Vesicular pyroclastic materials other than pumice that have an apparent specific gravity (including vesicles) of less than 1.0 g/cm³.

⁴ Particle-size class names are applied, although with reservations, to spodic horizons that do not have andic soil properties but contain significant amounts of organic matter. Somewhat different classes probably should be used for most families of Spodosols, because some series that otherwise seem reasonably homogeneous are split at the family level by the particle-size classes. But alternatives have not yet been sufficiently tested.

pumice-like⁵ fragments with diameters of more than 1 mm; in the fraction coarser than 2.0 mm, two thirds or more (by volume) pumice or pumice-like fragments.

Cindery - In the whole soil, more than 60 percent (by weight) volcanic ash, cinders, lapilli, pumice and pumice-like fragments with diameters of more than 1 mm; in the fraction coarser than 2.0 mm, less than two thirds (by volume) pumice and pumice-like fragments.

2. Substitutes for the non-fragmental particle-size classes:

These classes have a fine-earth component of 10 percent or more of the total volume.

Ashy - Less than 35 percent (by volume) rock fragments; a fine-earth fraction which contains 30 percent or more (by weight) particles between 0.02 and 2.0 mm in diameter and which has either:

- a. Andic soil properties, and a water content at 1500 kPa tension of less than 30 percent on undried samples and less than 12 percent on dried samples; or
- b. No andic soil properties, and a total of 30 percent or more of the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction (by grain count) consisting of volcanic glass, glass aggregates, glass-coated grains, and other vitric volcanoclastics.

Ashy-pumiceous - 35 percent or more (by volume) rock fragments, of which two thirds or more (by volume) are pumice or pumice-like fragments; an ashy fine-earth fraction.

Ashy-skeletal - 35 percent or more (by volume) rock fragments, of which less than two-thirds (by volume) are pumice and pumice-like fragments; an ashy fine-earth fraction.

Medial - A fine-earth fraction which has andic soil properties, and which has a water content at 1500 kPa tension of 12 percent on air-dried samples and of 30 to 100 percent on undried samples; less than 35 percent (by volume) rock fragments.

Medial-pumiceous - 35 percent or more (by volume) rock fragments, of which two thirds or more (by volume) are pumice or pumice-like fragments; a medial fine-earth fraction.

Medial-skeletal - 35 percent or more (by volume) rock fragments, of which less than two thirds (by volume) are pumice or pumice-like fragments; a medial fine-earth fraction.

Hydrous - A fine-earth fraction which has andic soil properties, and which has a water content at 1500 kPa

⁵ See footnote 3.

tension of 100 percent or more on undried samples; less than 35 percent (by volume) rock fragments.

Hydrous-pumiceous - 35 percent or more (by volume) rock fragments, of which two thirds or more (by volume) are pumice or pumice-like fragments; a hydrous fine-earth fraction.

Hydrous-skeletal - 35 percent or more (by volume) rock fragments, of which less than two thirds (by volume) are pumice or pumice-like fragments; a hydrous fine-earth fraction.

Control section for particle-size classes or their substitutes

The particle-size and substitute class names listed above are applied to certain horizons, or to the soil materials within specific depth limits, which have been designated as the *particle-size control section*. The lower boundary of the control section may be at a specified depth (in centimeters) from the mineral soil surface, or at the upper boundary of a root-limiting layer, i.e., a duripan, a fragipan, a petrocalcic, petrogypsic, or placic horizon, or continuous ortstein; or at a lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact. The following list of particle-size control sections for particular kinds of soils is arranged as a key.⁶ The control sections are as follows:

1. For soils that have, within 36 cm of the mineral soil surface,
 - a. A root-limiting layer: Between the mineral soil surface and the root-limiting layer;
 - b. A soil temperature of 0°C or lower, 2 months after the summer solstice: Between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 36 cm.
2. For Andisols: Between either the mineral soil surface or the upper boundary of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, and the shallowest of the following: (a) a depth of 100 cm, or (b) a root-limiting layer or contact, or (c) a depth of 25 cm below the level to which the soil is frozen 2 months after the summer solstice.
3. For those great groups of Alfisols, Spodosols, and Ultisols that have a fragipan or spodic horizon in or above an argillic or a kandic horizon; for Oxisols; and for other soils that do not have an argillic, kandic, or natric horizon: Between the lower boundary of an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and the shallowest of the

⁶ This key, like the others in Soil Taxonomy, is designed in such a way that the reader makes the correct classification by going through the key systematically, starting at the beginning and eliminating one by one any classes which include criteria that do not fit the soil in question. The soil belongs into the first class listed for which it meets the criteria

following: (a) a depth of 100 cm, or (b) a root-limiting layer or contact, or (c) a depth of 25 cm below the level to which the soil is frozen 2 months after the summer solstice.

4. For those Alfisols, Ultisols, and great groups of Aridisols and Mollisols which have an argillic, a kandic, or a natric horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface and its lower boundary at a depth of 25 cm or more, or which are in a grossarenic subgroup, one of the following:

a. If there are no horizons or layers of strongly contrasting particle sizes (defined below), and there is no root-limiting layer or contact at a depth of less than 50 cm from the top of the argillic, kandic, or natric horizon: Either the whole argillic, kandic, or natric horizon if less than 50 cm thick, or its upper 50 cm; or

b. If there are horizons or layers of strongly contrasting particle sizes within or below the argillic, kandic, or natric horizon and within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface: Between the upper boundary of the argillic, kandic, or natric horizon and either a depth of 100 cm from the mineral soil surface or a root-limiting layer or contact, whichever is shallower; or

c. If there is a root-limiting layer or contact directly below the argillic, kandic, or natric horizon: Between the upper boundary of the argillic, kandic, or natric horizon and either the root-limiting layer or contact, or a depth of 50 cm from the top of the argillic, kandic, or natric horizon, whichever is shallower.

5. For those Alfisols, Ultisols, and great groups of Aridisols and Mollisols which have an argillic, a kandic, or a natric horizon that has its upper boundary at a depth of 100 cm or more from the mineral surface, and which are not in a grossarenic subgroup: Between the lower boundary of an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 100 cm.

6. For other soils which have an argillic or a natric horizon that has its lower boundary at a depth of less than 25 cm from the mineral soil surface: Between the upper boundary of the argillic or natric horizon and either a depth of 100 cm or a root-limiting layer or contact, whichever is shallower.

Strongly contrasting particle-size classes

In general, the weighted average particle size of the whole control section determines what particle-size or substitute class name is used for a soil family. If a particle-size class name applies for one part and a substitute class name for the remaining part of the

control section, the name for the thicker part is used for that soil family.

If, however, the particle-size control section consists of two parts with strongly contrasting particle-size or substitute classes (listed below) and if the transition zone between them is less than 12.5 cm thick, both class names are used. For example, if the weighted average particle size of the control section's upper part is loamy fine sand and that of the lower part is clay, with a transition zone of less than 12.5 cm, the family particle-size class of that soil is *sandy over clayey*. If the particle-size control section includes more than one pair of the strongly contrasting classes listed below, then the pair of adjacent classes that contrast most strongly is used in classifying the soil family; however, substitute class names are used only if the soil materials to which they apply extend 10 cm or more into the upper part of the particle-size control section.

The following particle-size or substitute classes are considered strongly contrasting if the transition zone between the two parts of the particle-size control section is less than 12.5 cm thick:

1. Ashy over clayey.
2. Ashy over loamy-skeletal.
3. Ashy over loamy.
4. Ashy over medial-skeletal.
5. Ashy over medial if the water content at 1500 kPa tension in dried samples of the fine-earth fraction is 10 percent or less for the ashy materials and 15 percent or more for the medial materials.
6. Ashy over pumiceous or cindery if there is an absolute difference of 20 percent or more between volumes of rock fragments in the two parts of the control section.
7. Ashy over sandy or sandy-skeletal.
8. Ashy-skeletal over fragmental or cindery if the volume of the fine-earth fraction is 35 percent or more (absolute) greater in the ashy-skeletal part than in the fragmental or cindery part.
9. Cindery over loamy.
10. Cindery over medial-skeletal.
11. Cindery over medial.
12. Clayey over fine-silty if there is an absolute difference of 25 percent or more between clay percentages of the fine-earth fraction in the two parts of the control section.
13. Clayey over fragmental.
14. Clayey over loamy if there is an absolute difference of 25 percent or more between clay

percentages of the fine-earth fraction in the two parts of the control section.

15. Clayey over loamy-skeletal if there is an absolute difference of 25 percent or more between clay percentages of the fine-earth fraction in the two parts of the control section.

16. Clayey over sandy or sandy-skeletal.

17. Clayey-skeletal over sandy or sandy-skeletal.

18. Coarse-loamy over clayey.

19. Coarse-loamy over fragmental.

20. Coarse-loamy over sandy or sandy-skeletal if the coarse-loamy material contains less than 50 percent fine or coarser sand

21. Coarse-silty over clayey.

22. Coarse-silty over sandy or sandy-skeletal.

23. Fine-loamy over clayey if there is an absolute difference of 25 percent or more between clay percentages of the fine-earth fraction in the two parts of the control section

24. Fine-loamy over fragmental.

25. Fine-loamy over sandy or sandy-skeletal.

26. Fine-silty over clayey if there is an absolute difference of 25 percent or more between clay percentages of the fine-earth fraction in the two parts of the control section.

27. Fine-silty over fragmental.

28. Fine-silty over sandy or sandy-skeletal.

29. Hydrous over clayey-skeletal.

30. Hydrous over clayey.

31. Hydrous over fragmental.

32. Hydrous over loamy-skeletal.

33. Hydrous over loamy.

34. Hydrous over sandy or sandy-skeletal.

35. Loamy over sandy or sandy-skeletal if the loamy material contains less than 50 percent fine or coarser sand.

36. Loamy over pumiceous or cindery.

37. Loamy-skeletal over clayey if there is an absolute difference of 25 percent or more between clay percentages of the fine-earth fraction in the two parts of the control section.

38. Loamy-skeletal over fragmental if the volume of the fine-earth fraction is 35 percent or more (absolute) greater in the loamy-skeletal part than in the fragmental part.

39. Loamy-skeletal over sandy or sandy-skeletal if the loamy material has less than 50 percent fine or coarser sand.
40. Medial over ashy if the water content at 1500 kPa tension in dried samples of the fine-earth fraction is 15 percent or more for the medial materials and 10 percent or less for the ashy materials.
41. Medial over clayey-skeletal.
42. Medial over clayey.
43. Medial over fragmental.
44. Medial over hydrous.
45. Medial over loamy-skeletal.
46. Medial over loamy.
47. Medial over pumiceous or cindery.
48. Medial over sandy or sandy-skeletal.
49. Pumiceous or ashy-pumiceous over loamy.
50. Pumiceous or ashy-pumiceous over medial-skeletal.
51. Pumiceous or ashy-pumiceous over medial.
52. Pumiceous or ashy-pumiceous over sandy or sandy-skeletal.
53. Sandy over clayey.
54. Sandy over loamy if the loamy material contains less than 50 percent fine or coarser sand.
55. Sandy-skeletal over loamy if the loamy material contains less than 50 percent fine or coarser sand.

The purpose in setting up classes of strongly contrasting particle sizes has been to identify changes in pore-size distribution which are not identified in higher soil categories and which seriously affect the movement and retention of water. The above list has been compiled for use in grouping the soil series of the United States into families, and is not intended as a complete list. For example, "fine sand over coarse sand" is a pair of strongly contrasting particle-size classes common among Udipsamments in western Europe, but not included here because it is much less common in the United States.

Choice of 7 or 11 particle-size classes

Only seven particle-size class names are used for families of shallow soils and those in lithic, arenic, and grossarenic subgroups.

With families of Ultisols not included in the preceding item, subclasses of the loamy particle-size class, but not those of the clayey class, are used.

Contrasting particle-size families are recognized for soils in which substitute class names are applicable to part of the control section. If such substitute terms are applied only to the upper part, one of the seven particle-size class names is used to characterize the lower part. For example, we use the term *cindery over loamy* (not *cindery over fine-loamy*).

Only two subclasses of particle-size classes are applied to soil families in the Vertisol order, i.e., *fine* if there is less than 60 percent clay, and *very fine* if there is 60 percent or more clay in the weighted average of the control section's fine-earth fraction.

Mineralogy classes

The control section

Mineralogy classes are based on the approximate mineralogical composition of selected grain-size fractions of the same segment of a soil (i.e., the same control section) that is used to determine particle-size classes.

Contrasting mineralogy modifiers

Contrasting mineralogy modifiers are only recognized in those soil families to which substitutes for particle-size names have been applied. In naming the contrasting mineralogy classes for the families of such soils, the set of seven particle-size classes is used to describe the lower part of the particle-size control section. For example, a pair of contrasting layers in the control section is characterized as *medial over loamy, mixed* (not *medial over coarse-loamy, mixed*).

If there are layers of contrasting particle sizes in the control section, the mineralogy class of the upper part determines the family mineralogy modifier. For example, if there is fine-loamy material of mixed mineralogy over siliceous sandy material, the soil family is described as *fine-loamy over sandy, mixed* (not *fine-loamy, mixed, over sandy, siliceous*).

Key to mineralogy classes

Table 1 provides a key for determining the proper mineralogy classes of families in all mineral soils except Oxisols; the mineralogy classes of Oxisol families are listed in Table 2. These tables contain keys, not complete definitions.

Important variations in Andisols, in many intergrades to Andisols, and in many cryic great groups and cryic subgroups of Spodosols are identified by using the substitute modifiers listed above which replace names of particle-size classes, and which include aspects of texture, consistence, and mineralogy.

Mineralogy classes are not named in families of Calciaquolls because their amount of carbonates is more significant than other aspects of their mineralogy, and

they are not mentioned in families of Quartzipsamments because these soils are siliceous by definition.

Obviously, it is normally impossible to be certain what percentages of the different kinds of clay minerals are present in a soil. Quantitative methods of identification are still subject to change, and although much progress has been made in the past few decades, an element of judgement still enters into the estimation. However, one does not have to depend exclusively on X-ray, surface, and DTA determinations. Other physical and chemical properties, e.g., changes in volume, cation-exchange capacity, and consistence, can suggest the mineralogy of many clayey soils.

The clay mineralogy descriptions for clayey soils are based on the weighted average percentages of the control section's fine-earth fraction.

Calcareous and reaction classes

In the following, presence or absence of carbonates in mineral soils and reaction classes are treated together because they are so intimately related; e.g., a calcareous horizon cannot be strongly acid. Two classes identifying the presence or absence of carbonates, *calcareous* and *noncalcareous*, are defined for selected taxa. Their control section is one of the following: (1) between 25 and 50 cm from the mineral soil surface, or (2) between a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface and a lithic or paralithic contact at a depth between 25 and 50 cm, or (3) a layer directly above a lithic or paralithic contact that is less than 25 cm below the mineral soil surface. Definitions of the two classes are as follows:

Calcareous.—The fine-earth fraction effervesces in all parts with cold dilute HCl.

Noncalcareous.—The fine-earth fraction does not effervesce in all parts with cold dilute HCl. The term *noncalcareous* is not used as part of the family name.

It should be noted that a soil containing dolomite is calcareous, and that effervescence of dolomite, when treated with cold dilute HCl, is slow.

The control section for reaction classes is the same as for particle-size classes. Three classes, *acid*, *nonacid*, and *allic*, are defined for use in selected taxa, as follows:

Acid.—The pH is less than 5.0 in 0.01 M CaCl₂ (2:1) throughout the control section (about 5.5 in H₂O, 1:1).

Nonacid.—The pH is 5.0 or more in 0.01 M CaCl₂ (2:1) in some or all layers of the control section. The term *nonacid* is not used in the family name of calcareous soils.

Allic.—A layer 30 cm or more thick within the control section contains more than 2 cmol(+) of KCl-extractable Al per kg soil in the less-than-2.0-mm fraction.

The terms *acid* and *nonacid* are used only in names of certain families of Entisols and Aquepts; they are not used in sandy, sandy-skeletal, cindery, pumiceous, and fragmental families of these taxa, or in Sulfaquepts and Fragiaquepts, or in families with a carbonatic or gypsic mineralogy. The term *allic* is used only in names of Oxisol families.

Calcareous classes, if appropriate, are applied to the same taxa as reaction classes and are also used in family names of Aquolls, except Calciaquolls and Aquolls with an argillic horizon. Calcareous and reaction class names are not used in soil families that have a carbonatic or gypsic mineralogy. Because *calcareous* implies *nonacid*, the term *nonacid* is omitted as redundant if a soil family is termed *calcareous*. If a soil is both nonacid and noncalcareous, only the class name *nonacid* is used (*noncalcareous* is never used in a family name). The term *calcareous*, when used as a family modifier, is considered a subclass of mineralogy and is added to the mineralogy class name in parentheses, e.g.: fine-loamy, mixed (calcareous), mesic Typic Haplaquolls.

Soil temperature classes

Soil temperature classes, as named and defined here, are used as family differentiae in all orders. The names are used as family modifiers unless the criteria for a higher taxon carry the same limitation. Thus *frigid* is implied in all boric suborders and cryic great groups, and would be redundant if used in the names of families within these classes of soils.

The Celsius (centigrade) scale is the standard. It is assumed that the temperature is that of a soil that is not being irrigated.

For soil families that have a difference of 5°C or more between mean summer (June, July, and August in the northern hemisphere) and mean winter (December, January, and February in the northern hemisphere) soil temperatures, either at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface or at a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower, the soil temperature classes, defined in terms of the mean annual soil temperature, are as follows:

Frigid.— Lower than 8°C.

Mesic.— 8° to 15°C.

Thermic.— 15° to 22°C.

Hyperthermic.— 22°C or higher.

For soil families that have a difference of less than 5°C between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures, either at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface or at a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower, the soil temperature classes, defined in terms of the mean annual soil temperature, are as follows:

Isofrigid.— Lower than 8°C.

Isomesic.— 8° to 15°C.

Isothermic.— 15° to 22°C.

Isohyperthermic.— 22°C or higher.

Other characteristics

Several other soil characteristics besides those mentioned above are considered in particular taxa for grouping series into families. These characteristics include depth of soil, consistence, coatings on sands, and permanent cracks.

Depth of soil

Distinctions according to soil depth are made in some great groups and in arenic, grossarenic, and lithic subgroups. But at the family level some other soils should also be grouped according to depth, e.g., soils which have a shallow paralithic contact with weakly consolidated rock, such as clay shale, that is too compact for penetration by roots. One soil-depth class name, *shallow*, is used to characterize certain soil families that have one of the following depths (from the mineral soil surface):

Shallow.—Either:

1. Less than 50 cm to the upper boundary of a duripan or of a petrocalcic or petrogypsic horizon, or to a lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact. Used for families in all great groups of Alfisols, Andisols, Aridisols, Entisols, Inceptisols, Mollisols, Spodosols, and Ultisols, except in the family names of lithic subgroups of these orders, where it would be redundant. Or:
2. Less than 100 cm to a lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact. Used for families of Oxisols.

Consistence

In this taxonomy, some cemented horizons, e.g., a duripan, serve as differentiae in categories above the family, while others, such as a cemented spodic horizon (ortstein), do not. But no single family should include soils both with and without a continuous, shallow, cemented horizon. In Spodosols, in particular, a cemented spodic horizon has to be used as a family differentia. The following two soil consistence classes are defined for Spodosol families:

Ortstein.—All or part of the spodic horizon, when moist, is at least weakly cemented into a massive horizon that is present in more than half of each pedon.

Noncemented.—The spodic horizon, when moist, is not cemented into a massive horizon in one half or more of each pedon.

Cementation of a small volume within the spodic horizon into concretions does not constitute cementation to form a massive horizon. While the name of a family

of noncemented Spodosols normally does not have a modifier to indicate lack of cementation, the name of a family of cemented Spodosols contains the modifier *ortstein*.

A cemented calcic or gypsic horizon is not identified in the family name. Many calcic and some gypsic horizons are weakly cemented and some are indurated. The recognition of petrocalcic and petrogypsic horizons is expected to meet most, if not all, the needs for recognition of cementation in those horizons. Therefore, taxa with a petrocalcic or petrogypsic horizon do not have a family modifier indicating cementation.

Classes of coatings

Despite the emphasis given to particle-size classes in the taxonomy, variability remains in the sandy particle-size class, which includes sands and loamy sands. Some sands are very clean, i.e., almost completely free of silt and clay, while others are mixed with appreciable amounts of finer grains. A total of 5 percent silt plus clay makes a reasonable division of the sands at the family level. Two classes of Quartzipsamments are defined in terms of their silt-plus-clay content, as follows:

Coated.—The fine-earth fraction contains more than 5 percent (by weight) silt plus clay.

Uncoated.—The fine-earth fraction contains 5 percent or less (by weight) silt plus clay.

Classes of permanent cracks

Hydraquents consolidate or shrink after drainage and become Fluvaquents. In the process they form polyhedrons roughly 12 to 50 cm in diameter, depending on their *n* value and particle size. These polyhedrons are separated by cracks that range in width from 2 mm to more than 1 cm. The polyhedrons may shrink and swell with changes in the moisture content of the soil, but the cracks are permanent and can persist for several hundreds of years even though the soils are cultivated. These cracks permit rapid movement of water through the soil, either vertically or laterally. But such soils may have the same particle size, mineralogy, and other family properties as soils which are not cracked or which have cracks that open and close with the seasons. Soils with permanent cracks are very rare in the United States. They are identified by the following term:

Cracked—This modifier is used only for families of Fluvaquents. It means that there are continuous, permanent lateral and vertical cracks 2 mm or more wide, spaced at average lateral intervals of less than 50 cm. If the family name of a Fluvaquent does not contain the modifier *cracked*, permanent cracks are assumed to be absent.

FAMILY DIFFERENTIAE FOR HISTOSOLS

Most of the differentiae which are used to distinguish families of Histosols (organic soils) have already been defined, either because they are used as differentiae in mineral soils as well as Histosols, or because their definitions are used for the classification of some Histosols in categories higher than the family. In the following, differentiae not previously mentioned are defined and the classes in which they are used are enumerated.

The order in which family modifiers, if appropriate for a particular family, are placed in the technical family names of Histosols, is as follows:

- Particle size
- Mineralogy, including nature of limnic deposits
- Reaction
- Soil temperature regime
- Soil depth

Particle-size classes

Particle-size modifiers are used only in family names of terric subgroups of Histosols. The following terms are used:

- Fragmental
- Loamy-skeletal or clayey-skeletal
- Sandy or sandy-skeletal
- Loamy
- Clayey

The meanings of these terms are the same as those defined for particle-size classes of mineral soils. The proper term is selected to describe the weighted average particle size of either the upper 30 cm of the mineral layer or of that part of the mineral layer that is within the control section, whichever is thicker.

Mineralogy classes

Three different kinds of mineralogy classes are recognized for families in certain great groups and subgroups of Histosols:

Ferrihumic.—Used for families of Histosols, i.e., Fibrists, Hemists, and Saprists, except Sphagnofibrists and sphaginic subgroups of other great groups. Ferrihumic soil material, i.e., bog iron, is an authigenic (formed in place) deposit consisting of hydrated iron oxide mixed with organic matter, either dispersed and soft or cemented into large aggregates, in a mineral or organic layer that has all the following characteristics:

1. Saturation with water for more than 6 months per year (or artificial drainage);
2. Two percent or more (by weight) iron concretions with lateral dimensions ranging from less than 5 mm to more than 100 mm, containing 10 percent or more (by weight) free iron oxide (7 percent or more Fe) and 1 percent or more (by weight) organic matter; and
3. A reddish brown, dark reddish brown, or similar color which changes little on drying.

If *ferrihumic* is used as a modifier in the technical name of a Histosol family, no other mineralogy modifier is used for that family because the presence of iron is considered to be by far its most important mineralogical characteristic.

Modifiers applied only to terric subgroups.—In families within terric subgroups of Histosols, the same mineralogy modifiers that are used for mineral soils are applied to those mineral parts of the soil for which a particle-size modifier has been used, unless the mineralogy is ferrihumic.

Modifiers applied to limnic subgroups.—If limnic materials with a thickness of 5 cm or more are present in the control section of Histosol families, and if they do not have ferrihumic mineralogy, the following family modifiers are used:

Coprogeous. The limnic materials consist of coprogeous earth.

Diatomaceous. The limnic materials consist of diatomaceous earth.

Marly. The limnic materials consist of marl.

Reaction classes

The following two modifiers indicating reaction are used in families of all subgroups of Histosols:

Euic.—The pH value of undried samples is 4.5 or more (in 0.01 M CaCl₂) in one or more layers of organic soil materials within the control section.

Dysic.—The pH value of undried samples is less than 4.5 (in 0.01 M CaCl₂) in all layers of organic soil materials within the control section.

Soil temperature classes

The soil temperature classes of Histosol families have the same names and definitions as those used for families of mineral soils. The modifier *frigid*, however, would be redundant in the family names of boris and cryic great groups and is therefore omitted. No temperature modifier is used for families of pergelic subgroups.

Soil depth classes

The following two soil depth modifiers are used for families in all lithic subgroups of Histosols, except in the suborder of Folists:

Shallow.—Indicates a lithic contact between 18 and 50 cm from the soil surface.

Micro.—Indicates a lithic contact at a depth of less than 18 cm from the soil surface.

SERIES DIFFERENTIAE WITHIN A FAMILY

Control sections for the soil series are very similar to those for the family, but they differ in a few important respects. The particle-size and mineralogy control sections for families end at the upper boundary of a fragipan, duripan, or petrocalcic horizon because these horizons contain few roots, and in contrast to the control sections for the series, those for the family do not take into account the thickness of such horizons, or a lithic or paralithic contact between 50 and 100 cm from the mineral soil surface. The function of the series is pragmatic, and differences within a family that affect the use of a soil should be considered in classifying soil series. Separations of soils at the series level can be based on differences in particle size, texture, mineralogy, amount of organic matter, structure, etc. that have not been recognized as family differentiae.

Primary attention at the series level is given to the nature of the soil within the control section, especially to genetic horizons, provided that they are well expressed and not thin. If the genetic horizons are thin or not well expressed, attention is centered on a corresponding part of the regolith. Differences in soil or regolith which are outside the control section and have not been recognized as differentiae in categories higher than the series, but which are relevant to potential uses of certain soils, are considered as a basis for phase distinctions.

Control section for the differentiation of series

Whether or not well-expressed genetic horizons are present, the part of a soil to be considered in differentiating series within a family of mineral soils is as follows:

Mineral soils with permafrost.—The series control section for soils that have permafrost within 150 cm of the soil surface extends from the soil surface to the shallowest of the following:

1. A lithic or petroferric contact; or
2. A depth of 100 cm if depth to permafrost is less than 75 cm; or

3. 25 cm below the upper boundary of permafrost if that boundary is 75 cm or more below the soil surface, or
4. 25 cm below a paralithic contact; or
5. A depth of 150 cm.

All other mineral soils.—The series control section for all other mineral soils extends from the soil surface to the shallowest of the following:

1. A lithic or petroferric contact, or
2. A depth of either 25 cm below a paralithic contact or 150 cm below the soil surface, whichever is shallower, if there is a paralithic contact within 150 cm; or
3. A depth of 150 cm if the bottom of the deepest diagnostic horizon is less than 150 cm from the soil surface; or
4. The lower boundary of the deepest diagnostic horizon or a depth of 200 cm, whichever is shallower, if the lower boundary of the deepest diagnostic horizon is 150 cm or more below the soil surface.

Organic soils (Histosols) —The series control section for Histosols normally consists of the surface, subsurface, and bottom tiers, with the same exceptions with respect to the lower boundary of the control section as defined above for the higher categories of Histosols.

TABLE 1.—KEY TO MINERALOGY CLASSES¹
(except for Oxisols - see Table 2)

**A. MINERALOGY CLASSES OF SOIL FAMILIES
IN ANY PARTICLE-SIZE CLASS**

Carbonatic: More than 40 percent (by weight) carbonates (expressed as CaCO_3) plus gypsum, with carbonates constituting more than 65 percent of the total weight of carbonates plus gypsum, either in the fine-earth fraction or in the less-than-20-mm fraction, whichever has a higher percentage of carbonates plus gypsum.

Ferritic: More than 40 percent (by weight) iron oxide (extractable by dithionite citrate), reported as Fe_2O_3 (or 28 percent reported as Fe), in the fine-earth fraction.

Gibbsitic: More than 40 percent (by weight) hydrated aluminum oxides, reported as gibbsite and bohemite, in the fine-earth fraction.

Oxidic: In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, less than 90 percent quartz and less than 40 percent of any other single kind of mineral listed below; in the fine-earth fraction, a ratio of extractable-iron-oxide plus gibbsite percentages to the clay percentage² that is 0.20 or more:

$$\frac{\text{extractable Fe}_2\text{O}_3 \text{ (pct.)} + \text{gibbsite (pct.)}}{\text{clay (pct.)}} \geq 0.2$$

Serpentinitic: More than 40 percent (by weight) serpentine minerals (antigorite, chrysotile, fibrolite, and talc) in the fine-earth fraction.

Gypsic: More than 40 percent (by weight) carbonates (expressed as CaCO_3) plus gypsum, with gypsum constituting more than 35 percent of the total weight of carbonates plus gypsum, either in the fine-earth fraction or in the less-than-20-mm fraction, whichever has a higher percentage of carbonates plus gypsum.

Glaucinitic: More than 40 percent (by weight) glauconite in the fine-earth fraction.

¹ This key, like the others in Soil Taxonomy, is designed in such a way that the reader makes the correct classification by going through the key systematically, starting at the beginning and eliminating one by one any classes which include criteria that do not fit the soil in question. The soil belongs into the first class listed for which it meets the criteria. In the case of Table 1, the user should first go through all the items in section A and, if the soil in question does not meet the criteria for any class listed there, proceed either to section B or to section C, depending on the particle-size class of the soil.

² If the ratio of (percent water retained at 1500 kPa tension minus percent organic carbon) to the percentage of measured clay is 0.6 or more in half or more of the control section, then the percentage of clay is considered to be 2.5 times (percent water retained at 1500 kPa tension minus percent organic carbon), but no more than 100.

B. OTHER MINERALOGY CLASSES OF SOIL FAMILIES, IN THE FRAGMENTAL, SANDY, SANDY-SKELETAL, LOAMY, OR LOAMY-SKELETAL PARTICLE-SIZE CLASSES

Micaceous: More than 40 percent (by weight)³ mica in the 0.02-to-20-mm fraction.

Siliceous: More than 90 percent (by weight)⁴ silica minerals (quartz, chalcedony, or opal) and other extremely durable minerals that are resistant to weathering, in the 0.02-to-20-mm fraction.

Mixed: All others that have less than 40 percent (by weight) of any single kind of mineral other than quartz or feldspars, in the 0.02-to-20-mm fraction.

F
A
M

C. OTHER MINERALOGY CLASSES OF SOIL FAMILIES, IN THE CLAYEY OR CLAYEY-SKELETAL PARTICLE-SIZE CLASS

Halloysitic: More than one half (by weight) halloysite⁵, and smaller amounts of allophane or kaolinite, or both, in the less-than-0.002-mm fraction.

Kaolinitic: More than one half (by weight) kaolinite, tabular halloysite, dickite, and nacrite, smaller amounts of other 1:1 or non-expanding 2:1 layer minerals or gibbsite, and less than 10 percent (by weight) montmorillonite, in the less-than-0.002-mm fraction.

Montmorillonitic: More than one half (by weight) montmorillonite and nontronite, or a mixture that contains more montmorillonite than any other single kind of clay mineral, in the less-than-0.002-mm fraction.

Illitic: More than one half (by weight) illite (hydrous mica), and commonly more than 4 percent K_2O , in the less-than-0.002-mm fraction.

Vermiculitic: More than one half (by weight) vermiculite, or more vermiculite than any other single kind of clay mineral, in the less-than-0.002-mm fraction.

Chloritic: More than one half (by weight) chlorite, or more chlorite than any other single kind of clay mineral, in the less-than-0.002-mm fraction.

Mixed: Other soils⁶.

³ Percentages by weight are estimated from grain counts. Usually, counting one or two of the dominant grain-size fractions of a conventional mechanical analysis is sufficient for placement of the soil.

⁴ See preceding footnote.

⁵ The halloysite considered here includes only the tubular forms. What is known as tabular halloysite is grouped with kaolinite.

⁶ *Sepiolitic*, defined as containing more than one half (by weight) sepiolite, attapulgite, and palygorskite, should be listed separately if identified.

**TABLE 2.—KEY TO MINERALOGY CLASSES
OF OXISOLS**

Does the mineralogy control section have:

1. More than 40 percent iron oxide (more than 28 percent Fe) (by dithionite citrate) in the fine-earth fraction?
2. More than 40 percent gibbsite in the fine-earth fraction?
3. 18 to 40 percent iron oxide (12.6 to 28 percent Fe) (by dithionite citrate) in the fine-earth fraction?
4. 18 to 40 percent gibbsite in the fine-earth fraction?
5. More than 50 percent (by weight) kaolinite in the fine-earth fraction?
6. More than 50 percent (by weight) halloysite in the fine-earth fraction?

If none of the above—*Mixed*

- 1* with or without *2, 4, 5, 6*—*Ferritic*
- 2* with or without *3, 5, 6*—*Gibbsitic*
- 3* with or without *5, 6*—*Ferruginous*
- 4* with or without *5, 6*—*Allitic*
- 3 and 4* with or without *5, 6*—*Sesquic*
- 5*—*Kaolinitic*
- 6*—*Halloysitic*

Chapter 5

Identification of the Taxonomic Class of a Soil

All the keys in Soil Taxonomy are designed in such a way that their user can determine the correct classification of a soil by going through the key systematically, starting at the beginning and eliminating one by one any classes which include criteria that do not fit the soil in question. The soil belongs into the first class listed for which it meets all the criteria.

In classifying a specific soil to the subgroup level, the user of Soil Taxonomy begins by checking through the *Key to soil orders* to determine the name of the first order which, according to the criteria listed, includes the soil in question. The next step is to go systematically through the *Key to suborders* of that particular order to identify the right suborder for the soil, i.e., the first in the list for which it meets all the criteria. The same procedure is used to find the soil's great group class in the *Key to great groups* of the identified suborder. Likewise, going through the *Key to subgroups* of that great group, the user selects as the correct subgroup name for the classified soil the name of the first taxon for which it meets all the criteria.

KEY

KEY TO SOIL ORDERS

In this key and the other keys that follow, the diagnostic horizons and the properties mentioned do not include those below any lithic, paralithic, or petroferic contact, nor the properties of buried soils except their organic carbon if of Holocene age, andic soil properties, and base saturation. Other properties of buried soils are considered in the categories of subgroup, family, and series but not in those of order, suborder, and great group. The meaning of the term "buried soil" is given in Chapter 1.

A. Soils which:

1. Do not have andic soil properties in 60 percent or more of the thickness between the soil surface and either a depth of 60 cm, or a lithic or paralithic contact or duripan if shallower; *and*
2. Have *one or more* of the following:
 - a. Organic soil materials that overlie fragmental materials and/or fill their interstices, and either a lithic or paralithic contact directly below the fragmental materials, or a thickness of organic plus fragmental materials totaling 40 cm or more

between the soil surface and a depth of 50 cm; *or*

b. Mineral soil layers which, if present, have a total thickness of 10 cm or less, and organic soil materials that constitute two thirds or more of the total thickness of the soil to a lithic or paralithic contact; *or*

c. Organic soil materials with an upper boundary within 40 cm of the soil surface which are saturated with water for 6 months or more per year in most years (or artificially drained), and which have a total thickness of *either*:

(1) 60 cm or more if three fourths or more of their volume consists of moss fibers, or if their bulk density, moist, is less than 0.1 g/cm³; *or*

(2) 40 cm or more if they consist either of sapric or hemic materials, or of fibric materials with less than three fourths (by volume) moss fibers and a bulk density, moist, of 0.1 g/cm³ or more.

Histosols, p. 271

B. Other soils which do not have a plaggen epipedon or an argillic or a kandic horizon above a spodic horizon, and have *one or more* of the following:

1. A spodic horizon, an albic horizon in 50 percent or more of each pedon, and a cryic or pergelic soil temperature regime; *or*

2. An Ap horizon containing 85 percent or more spodic materials; *or*

3. A spodic horizon with *all* the following characteristics:

a. *One or more* of the following:

(1) A thickness of 10 cm or more; *or*

(2) An overlying Ap horizon; *or*

(3) Cementation in 50 percent or more of each pedon; *or*

(4) A coarse-loamy, loamy-skeletal, or finer particle size, and a frigid temperature regime in the soil; *or*

(5) A cryic or pergelic temperature regime in the soil; *and*

b. An upper boundary within the following depths from the mineral soil surface: *either*

(1) Less than 50 cm; *or*

(2) Less than 200 cm if the soil has a sandy particle size between the mineral soil surface and the spodic horizon; *and*

c. A lower boundary as follows:

(1) *Either* at a depth of 25 cm or more below the mineral soil surface, *or* at the top of a duripan or fragipan, or at a lithic, paralithic, or petroferic contact, whichever is shallowest; *or*

(2) At any depth,

(a) If the spodic horizon has a coarse-loamy, loamy-skeletal, or finer particle size, and the soil has a frigid temperature regime, *or*

(b) If the soil has a cryic or pergelic temperature regime; *and*

d. *Either*:

(1) A directly overlying albic horizon in 50 percent or more of each pedon, *or*

(2) No andic soil properties in 60 percent or more of the thickness *either*:

(a) Within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, if there is no lithic or paralithic contact, duripan, or petrocalcic horizon within that depth; *or*

(b) Between either the mineral soil surface, or the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, and a lithic or paralithic contact, duripan, or petrocalcic horizon.

Spodosols, p. 441

C. Other soils that have andic soil properties in 60 percent or more of the thickness *either*:

1. Within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, if there is no lithic or paralithic contact, duripan, or petrocalcic horizon within that depth; *or*

2. Between either the mineral soil surface, or the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, and a lithic or paralithic contact, duripan, or petrocalcic horizon.

Andisols, p. 139

D. Other soils which have *either*:

1. An oxic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, and no kandic horizon that has its upper boundary within that depth; *or*

2. 40 percent or more (by weight) clay in the fine-earth fraction between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 18 cm (after mixing), *and* a kandic horizon that has the weatherable-mineral properties of an oxic horizon and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Oxisols, p. 413

E. Other soils which have:

1. A layer 25 cm or more thick, with an upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, that has *either* slickensides close enough to intersect *or* wedge-shaped aggregates which have their long axes tilted 10 to 60 degrees from the horizontal; *and*

2. A weighted average of 30 percent or more clay in the fine-earth fraction either between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 18 cm or in an Ap horizon, whichever is thicker, *and* 30 percent or more clay in the fine-earth fraction of all horizons between a depth of 18 cm and either a depth of 50 cm, or a lithic or paralithic contact, duripan, or petrocalcic horizon if shallower; *and*

3. Cracks¹ that open and close periodically.

Vertisols, p. 491

F. Other soils that have an ochric or anthropic epipedon, and *either*:

1. Do not have an argillic, a natric, or a sulfuric horizon, *but* have *either*:

a. Saturation with water within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for 1 month or more per year in some years, and a salic horizon that has its upper boundary within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

¹ A crack is a separation between gross polyhedrons. If the surface horizon is strongly self-mulching, i.e., a mass of loose granules, or if the soil is cultivated while cracks are open, the cracks may be largely filled with granular materials from the surface; but they are open in the sense that the polyhedrons are separated. A crack is regarded as open if it controls the infiltration and percolation of water in a dry clayey soil.

b. An aridic soil moisture regime and, within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, the upper boundary of one or more of the following: a calcic, petrocalcic, gypsic, petrogypsic, or cambic horizon or a duripan;
or

2. Have an argillic or a natric horizon, *and both*:

a. An aridic moisture regime; *and*

b. An epipedon that is not *both* hard, very hard, or harder *and* massive when dry.

Aridisols, p. 177

G. Other soils that have *either*:

1. An argillic or a kandic horizon, but no fragipan, and a base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 35 percent at one of the following depths:

a. If the epipedon has a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle size throughout, *either*:

(1) 125 cm below the upper boundary of the argillic horizon (but no deeper than 200 cm below the mineral soil surface), or 180 cm below the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper; *or*

(2) At a lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact if shallower; *or*

b. The shallowest of the following depths:

(1) 125 cm below the upper boundary of the argillic or kandic horizon; *or*

(2) 180 cm below the mineral soil surface; *or*

(3) At a lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact; *or*

2. A fragipan and *both* of the following:

a. Either an argillic or a kandic horizon above, within, or below it, or clay films 1 mm or more thick in one or more of its subhorizons; *and*

b. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 35 percent at the shallowest of the following depths:

(1) 75 cm below the upper boundary of the fragipan; *or*

(2) 200 cm below the mineral soil surface; *or*

(3) At a lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact.

Ultisols, p. 455

H. Other soils that have *both* of the following:

1. *Either*

a. A mollic epipedon; *or*

b. *Both* a surface horizon which meets all the requirements for a mollic epipedon except thickness after the soil has been mixed to a depth of 18 cm, *and* a subhorizon more than 7.5 cm thick, within the upper part of an argillic, a kandic, or a natric horizon, that meets the color, organic-carbon content, base saturation, and structure requirements of a mollic epipedon but is separated from the surface horizon by an albic horizon; *and*

2. A base saturation of 50 percent or more (by NH_4OAc) in all horizons *either* between the upper boundary of any argillic, kandic, or natric horizon and a depth of 125 cm below that boundary, *or* between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 180 cm, *or* between the mineral soil surface and a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever depth is shallowest.

Mollisols, p. 335

I. Other soils which have *either*:

1. An argillic, a kandic, or a natric horizon; *or*

2. A fragipan that has clay films 1 mm or more thick in some part.

Alfisols, p. 79

J. Other soils which have *either*:

1. *One or more* of the following:

a. A cambic horizon; *or*

b. Aquic conditions within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface for some time in most years (or artificial drainage), and permafrost; *or*

c. Within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, the upper boundary of one or more of the following: a calcic, petrocalcic, gypsic, petrogypsic, or placic horizon or a duripan; *or*

d. Either a fragipan or an oxic horizon that has its upper boundary within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

e. A sulfuric horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. No sulfidic materials within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and both*:

a. In one or more horizons between 20 and 50 cm below the mineral soil surface, either an n value of 0.7 or less, or less than 8 percent clay in the fine-earth fraction; *and*

b. *One or both* of the following:

(1) A histic, a mollic, a plaggen, or an umbric epipedon, *or*

(2) In 50 percent or more of the layers between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 50 cm, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or more), which decreases with increasing depth below 50 cm, *and* also ground water within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface at some time during the year when the soil is not frozen in any part.

Inceptisols, p. 289

K. Other soils.

Entisols, p. 233

Chapter 6

Alfisols

KEY TO SUBORDERS

IA. Alfisols that have, in one or more horizons within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage), and have *one or both* of the following:

1. Redoximorphic features in all layers between either the lower boundary of an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm below the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 40 cm; and *one* of the following within the upper 12.5 cm of the argillic, natric, or kandic horizon:

a. Fifty percent or more redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less on faces of peds, and redox concentrations within peds; *or*

b. Redox concentrations and 50 percent or more redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less in the matrix; *or*

c. Fifty percent or more redox depletions with a chroma of 1 or less on faces of peds or in the matrix, or both; *or*

2. In the horizons that have aquic conditions, enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aqualfs, p. 80

IB. Other Alfisols that have *either*:

1. A frigid temperature regime, but not a xeric moisture regime; *or*

2. A cryic temperature regime.

Boralfs, p. 91

IC. Other Alfisols that have *either*:

1. An ustic moisture regime; *or*

2. An epipedon that is both hard, very hard, or harder and massive when dry, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Ustalfs, p. 115

ID. Other Alfisols that have *either*:

1. A xeric moisture regime; *or*

2. An epipedon that is both hard, very hard, or harder and massive when dry, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Xeralfs, p. 129

IE. Other Alfisols.

Udalfs, p. 99

AQUALFS

Key to great groups

IAA. Aqualfs that have one or more horizons between 30 and 150 cm from the mineral soil surface in which plinthite either forms a continuous phase or constitutes one half or more of the volume.

Plinthaqualfs, p. 90

IAB. Other Aqualfs that have a duripan.

Duraqualfs, p. 82

IAC. Other Aqualfs that have a natric horizon.

Natraqualfs, p. 89

IAD. Other Aqualfs that have a fragipan.

Fragiaqualfs, p. 86

IAE. Other Aqualfs that have a CEC of 16 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (by 1N NH₄OAc pH 7) and an ECEC of 12 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (sum of bases extracted with 1N NH₄OAc pH 7, plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al) in 50 percent or more *either* of the argillic or kandic horizon if less than 100 cm thick, *or* of its upper 100 cm.

Kandiaqualfs, p. 88

IAF. Other Aqualfs that have a glossic horizon.

Glossaqualfs, p. 87

IAG. Other Aqualfs that have an abrupt textural change between the ochric epipedon or albic horizon and the argillic horizon, and have a low or very low saturated hydraulic conductivity in the argillic horizon.

Albaqualfs, p. 80

IAH. Other Aqualfs that have an umbric epipedon.

Umbraqualfs, p. 90

IAI. Other Aqualfs that have episaturation.

Epiaqualfs, p. 84

IAJ. Other Aqualfs.

Endoaqualfs, p. 82

Albaqualfs

Key to subgroups

IAGA. Albaqualfs that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more.

Arenic Albaqualfs

IAGB. Other Albaqualfs which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Albaqualfs

IAGC. Other Albaqualfs that have *both*:

1. A chroma of 3 or more in 40 percent or more of the matrix between the lower boundary of the A or Ap horizon and a depth of 75 cm from the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. An Ap horizon with a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample), or materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm which have these color values after mixing.

Udolic Albaqualfs

IAGD. Other Albaqualfs that have a chroma of 3 or more in 40 percent or more of the matrix between the lower boundary of the A or Ap horizon and a depth of 75 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Aeric Albaqualfs

IAGE. Other Albaqualfs which have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*
2. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
3. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron

percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Aquandic Albaqualfs

IAGF. Other Albaqualfs that have an Ap horizon with a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample), or materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm which have these color values after mixing.

Mollic Albaqualfs

IAGG. Other Albaqualfs which have, within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, the upper boundary of a brittle horizon 15 cm or more thick that contains either some opal coatings or 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes.

Durorthidic Albaqualfs

IAGH. Other Albaqualfs.

Typic Albaqualfs

Duraqualfs

Duraqualfs are the Aqualfs that have a duripan below the argillic horizon. They are not known to occur in the United States. The group has been proposed for other countries, but definitions of subgroups have not been suggested.

Endoaqualfs

Key to subgroups

IAJA. Endoaqualfs which have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*
2. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
3. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron

percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Aquandic Endoaqualfs

IAJB. Other Endoaqualfs that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

Arenic Endoaqualfs

IAJC. Other Endoaqualfs that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more.

Grossarenic Endoaqualfs

IAJD. Other Endoaqualfs that have, in one or more horizons between the A or Ap horizon and a depth of 75 cm below the mineral soil surface, *one* of the following colors:

1. A hue of 7.5YR or redder in 50 percent or more of the matrix; *and*
 - a. If peds are present, a chroma of 2 or more on 50 percent or more of ped exteriors, or no redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less in ped interiors; *or*
 - b. If peds are absent, a chroma of 2 or more in 50 percent or more of the matrix; *or*
2. In 50 percent or more of the matrix, a hue of 10YR or yellower *and either*
 - a. Both a color value, moist, and chroma of 3 or more; *or*
 - b. A chroma of 2 or more if there are no redox concentrations.

A
L
F

Aeric Endoaqualfs

IAJE. Other Endoaqualfs which have a mollic epipedon, or an Ap horizon that meets all the requirements for a mollic epipedon except thickness, or materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm that meet these requirements after mixing.

Mollic Endoaqualfs

IAJF. Other Endoaqualfs which have an Ap horizon that meets all the requirements for an umbric epipedon except thickness, or materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm that meet these requirements after mixing.

Umbric Endoaqualfs

IAJG. Other Endoaqualfs.

Typic Endoaqualfs

Epiaqualfs

Key to subgroups

IAIA. Epiaqualfs which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Epiaqualfs

IAIB. Other Epiaqualfs which have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*
2. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
3. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Aquandic Epiaqualfs

IAIC. Other Epiaqualfs that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

Arenic Epiaqualfs

IAID. Other Epiaqualfs that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more.

Grossarenic Epiaqualfs

IAIE. Other Epiaqualfs which have:

1. An Ap horizon that meets all the requirements for an umbric epipedon except thickness, or materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm that meet these requirements after mixing; *and*
2. In one or more horizons between the A or Ap horizon and a depth of 75 cm below the mineral soil surface, *one* of the following colors:
 - a. A hue of 7.5YR or redder in 50 percent or more of the matrix; *and*
 - (1) If peds are present, a chroma of 2 or more on 50 percent or more of ped exteriors, or no redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less in ped interiors; *or*
 - (2) If peds are absent, a chroma of 2 or more in 50 percent or more of the matrix; *or*
 - b. In 50 percent or more of the matrix, a hue of 10YR or yellower *and either*
 - (1) Both a color value, moist, and chroma of 3 or more; *or*
 - (2) A chroma of 2 or more if there are no redox concentrations.

Aeric Umbric Epiaqualfs**IAIF. Other Epiaqualfs which have *both*:**

1. A mollic epipedon, or an Ap horizon that meets all the requirements for a mollic epipedon except thickness, or materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm that meet these requirements after mixing; *and*
2. In 50 percent or more of the matrix in one or more horizons between the A or Ap horizon and a depth of 75 cm from the mineral soil surface, chromas as follows:
 - a. Three or more if the mean annual soil temperature is lower than 15°C; *or*
 - b. If the mean annual soil temperature is 15°C or higher:
 - (1) Three or more if the hue is 2.5Y or redder and the color value, moist, is 6 or more; *or*
 - (2) Two or more if the hue is 2.5Y or redder and the color value, moist, is 5 or less; *or*
 - (3) Three or more if the hue is yellower than 2.5Y; *or*

- c. Two or more if there are no redox concentrations.

Udolic Epiaqualfs

IAIG. Other Epiaqualfs that have, in one or more horizons between the A or Ap horizon and a depth of 75 cm below the mineral soil surface, colors as follows:
either

1. A hue of 7.5YR or redder in 50 percent or more of the matrix; *and*
 - a. If peds are present, a chroma of 2 or more on 50 percent or more of ped exteriors, or no redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less in ped interiors; *or*
 - b. If peds are absent, a chroma of 2 or more in 50 percent or more of the matrix; *or*
2. In 50 percent or more of the matrix, a hue of 10YR or yellower *and either*
 - a. Both a color value, moist, and chroma of 3 or more; *or*
 - b. A chroma of 2 or more if there are no redox concentrations.

Aeric Epiaqualfs

IAIH. Other Epiaqualfs which have a mollic epipedon, or an Ap horizon that meets all the requirements for a mollic epipedon except thickness, or materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm that meet these requirements after mixing.

Mollic Epiaqualfs

IAII. Other Epiaqualfs which have an Ap horizon that meets all the requirements for an umbric epipedon except thickness, or materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm that meet these requirements after mixing.

Umbric Epiaqualfs

IAIJ. Other Epiaqualfs.

Typic Epiaqualfs

Fragiaqualfs

Key to subgroups

IADA. Fragiaqualfs that have, between the A or Ap horizon and a fragipan, a horizon with 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or more if the hue is 10YR or redder, or of 4 or more if the hue is 2.5Y or yellower.

Aeric Fragiaqualfs

IADB. Other Fragiaqualfs that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Fragiaqualfs

IADC. Other Fragiaqualfs that have an Ap horizon with a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample), or materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm which have these color values after mixing.

Umbric Fragiaqualfs

IADD. Other Fragiaqualfs.

Typic Fragiaqualfs

Glossaqualfs

Key to subgroups

IAFA. Glossaqualfs that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm to 100 cm.

Arenic Glossaqualfs

IAFB. Other Glossaqualfs that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more.

Grossarenic Glossaqualfs

IAFC. Other Glossaqualfs that have, in one or more horizons between the A or Ap horizon and a depth of 75 cm below the mineral soil surface, *one* of the following colors:

1. A hue of 7.5YR or redder in 50 percent or more of the matrix, *and*
 - a. If peds are present, either a chroma of 2 or more on 50 percent or more of ped exteriors, or no redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less in ped interiors; *or*
 - b. If peds are absent, a chroma of 2 or more in 50 percent or more of the matrix; *or*
2. In 50 percent or more of the matrix, a hue of 10YR or yellower *and either*
 - a. Both a color value, moist, and chroma of 3 or more; *or*
 - b. A chroma of 2 or more if there are no redox concentrations.

Aeric Glossaqualfs

IAFD. Other Glossaqualfs that have an Ap horizon with a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample), or materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm which have these color values after mixing.

Mollic Glossaqualfs

IAFE. Other Glossaqualfs.

Typic Glossaqualfs

Kandiaqualfs

Key to subgroups

IAEA. Kandiaqualfs that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

Arenic Kandiaqualfs

IAEB. Other Kandiaqualfs that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more.

Grossarenic Kandiaqualfs

IAEC. Other Kandiaqualfs that have 5 percent or more (by volume) *plinthite* in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Kandiaqualfs

IAED. Other Kandiaqualfs that have *both*:

1. An Ap horizon with a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample), or materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm which have these color values after mixing; *and*

2. In one or more horizons between the A or Ap horizon and a depth of 75 cm below the mineral soil surface, *one* of the following colors:

a. A hue of 7.5YR or redder in 50 percent or more of the matrix, *and*

(1) If peds are present, either a chroma of 2 or more on 50 percent or more of ped exteriors, or no redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less in ped interiors; *or*

(2) If peds are absent, a chroma of 2 or more in 50 percent or more of the matrix; *or*

b. In 50 percent or more of the matrix, a hue of 10YR or yellower *and either*

(1) Both a color value, moist, and chroma of 3 or more; *or*

(2) A chroma of 2 or more if there are no redox concentrations.

Aeric Umbric Kandiaqualfs

IAEE. Other Kandiaqualfs that have, in one or more horizons between the A or Ap horizon and a depth of 75 cm below the mineral soil surface, *one* of the following colors:

1. A hue of 7.5YR or redder in 50 percent or more of the matrix, *and*

- a. If peds are present, either a chroma of 2 or more on 50 percent or more of ped exteriors, or no redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less in ped interiors; *or*
 - b. If peds are absent, a chroma of 2 or more in 50 percent or more of the matrix; *or*
2. In 50 percent or more of the matrix, a hue of 10YR or yellower *and either*
- a. Both a color value, moist, and chroma of 3 or more; *or*
 - b. A chroma of 2 or more if there are no redox concentrations.

Aeric Kandiaqualfs

IAEF. Other Kandiaqualfs that have an Ap horizon with a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample), or materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm which have these color values after mixing.

Umbric Kandiaqualfs

IAEG. Other Kandiaqualfs.

Typic Kandiaqualfs

Natraqualfs

Key to subgroups

IACA. Natraqualfs which have *one or both* of the following:

- 1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
- 2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Natraqualfs

IACB. Other Natraqualfs that have *both*:

- 1. A glossic horizon, or interfingering of albic materials into the natric horizon; *and*
- 2. In all horizons within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface, an exchangeable sodium percentage of less than 15 percent, and less magnesium and sodium than calcium and extractable acidity.

Albic Glossic Natraqualfs

IACC. Other Natraqualfs that have an exchangeable sodium percentage of less than 15 percent, and less magnesium and sodium than calcium and extractable

acidity, either throughout the upper 15 cm of the natric horizon, or in all horizons within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper.

Albic Natraqualfs

IACD. Other Natraqualfs that have a glossic horizon, or interfingering of albic materials into the natric horizon.

Glossic Natraqualfs

IACE. Other Natraqualfs that have an Ap horizon with a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample), or materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm which have these color values after mixing.

Mollic Natraqualfs

IACF. Other Natraqualfs.

Typic Natraqualfs

Plinthaqualfs

Plinthaqualfs are the Aqualfs that have one or more horizons between 30 and 150 cm from the mineral soil surface in which plinthite either forms a continuous phase or constitutes one half or more of the volume.

Umbrqualfs

Key to subgroups

IAHA. Umbrqualfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*
2. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
3. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Aquandic Umbrqualfs

IAHB. Other Umbrqualfs that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil

surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

Arenic Umbraqualfs

IAHC. Other Umbraqualfs that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more.

Grossarenic Umbraqualfs

IAHD. Other Umbraqualfs that have, in one or more horizons above the argillic horizon, 5 percent or more (by volume) discrete nodules 2.5 to 30 cm in diameter that are cemented by iron.

Ferrudalfic Umbraqualfs

IAHE. Other Umbraqualfs.

Typic Umbraqualfs

BORALFS

Key to great groups

IBA. Boralfs which have *all* of the following:

1. An argillic horizon that has its upper boundary 60 cm or more below the mineral surface; *and*
2. A texture finer than loamy fine sand in one or more horizons above the argillic horizon; *and*
3. Either a glossic horizon, or interfingering of albic materials into the argillic horizon.

Paleboralfs, p. 97

IBB. Other Boralfs that have a fragipan.

Fragiboralfs, p. 95

IBC. Other Boralfs that have a natric horizon.

Natriboralfs, p. 97

IBD. Other Boralfs that have a cryic soil temperature regime.

Cryoboralfs, p. 92

IBE. Other Boralfs that have *both*:

1. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of 60 percent or more in all subhorizons of the argillic horizon; *and*
2. A moisture control section that is dry in one or more horizons for some time in most years.

Eutroboralfs, p. 93

IBF. Other Boralfs.

Glossoboralfs, p. 96

Cryoboralfs

Key to subgroups

IBDA. Cryoboralfs that have *both*:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. A color value, moist, of 3 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) either in an Ap horizon, or between the soil surface and a depth of 15 cm, after mixing.

Lithic Mollic Cryoboralfs

IBDB. Other Cryoboralfs that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Cryoboralfs

IBDC. Other Cryoboralfs which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Cryoboralfs

IBDD. Other Cryoboralfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Cryoboralfs

IBDE. Other Cryoboralfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*

b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandic Cryoboralfs

IBDF. Other Cryoboralfs that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Cryoboralfs

IBDG. Other Cryoboralfs that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Cryoboralfs

IBDH. Other Cryoboralfs which have an argillic horizon that *either* has a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser, *or* is discontinuous vertically in its upper 15 cm (in lamellae).

Psammentic Cryoboralfs

IBDI. Other Cryoboralfs that have a color value, moist, of 3 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) either in an Ap horizon, or between the soil surface and a depth of 15 cm, after mixing.

Mollic Cryoboralfs

IBDJ. Other Cryoboralfs that have a glossic horizon.

Glossic Cryoboralfs

IBDK. Other Cryoboralfs.

Typic Cryoboralfs

Eutroboralfs

Key to subgroups

IBEA. Eutroboralfs that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Eutroboralfs

IBEB. Other Eutroboralfs which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a

depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Eutroboralfs

IBEC. Other Eutroboralfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Eutroboralfs

IBED. Other Eutroboralfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandid Eutroboralfs

IBEE. Other Eutroboralfs that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*
2. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

Aquic Arenic Eutroboralfs

IBEF. Other Eutroboralfs which have *both*:

1. A glossic horizon; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less in layers that also have aquic conditions in most years (or artificial drainage) *either*:
 - a. Within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon if its upper boundary is within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
 - b. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface if the upper boundary of the argillic horizon

is 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface.

Glossaquic Eutroboralfs

IBEG. Other Eutroboralfs that have redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less in layers that also have aquic conditions in most years (or artificial drainage) *either*:

1. Within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon if its upper boundary is within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface if the upper boundary of the argillic horizon is 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface.

Aquic Eutroboralfs

IBEH. Other Eutroboralfs that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Eutroboralfs

IBEI. Other Eutroboralfs which have an argillic horizon that *either* has a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser, *or* is discontinuous vertically in its upper 15 cm (in lamellae).

Psammentic Eutroboralfs

IBEJ. Other Eutroboralfs that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more.

Arenic Eutroboralfs

IBEK. Other Eutroboralfs that have an Ap horizon with a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample), or materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm which have these color values after mixing.

Mollic Eutroboralfs

IBEL. Other Eutroboralfs that have a glossic horizon.

Glossic Eutroboralfs

IBEM. Other Eutroboralfs.

Typic Eutroboralfs

Fragiboralfs

Key to subgroups

IBBA. Fragiboralfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Fragiboralfs

IBBB. Other Fragiboralfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both of* the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandic Fragiboralfs

IBBC. Other Fragiboralfs that have, in one or more subhorizons within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Fragiboralfs

IBBD. Other Fragiboralfs that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Fragiboralfs

IBBE. Other Fragiboralfs.

Typic Fragiboralfs

Glossoboralfs

Key to subgroups

IBFA. Glossoboralfs that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Glossoboralfs

IBFB. Other Glossoboralfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Glossoboralfs

IBFC. Other Glossoboralfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both of* the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:

a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*

b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandic Glossoboralfs

IBFD. Other Glossoboralfs that have, in one or more subhorizons within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Glossoboralfs

IBFE. Other Glossoboralfs that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Glossoboralfs

IBFF. Other Glossoboralfs which have an argillic horizon that *either* has a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser, *or* is discontinuous vertically in its upper 15 cm (in lamellae).

Psammentic Glossoboralfs

IBFG. Other Glossoboralfs that do not have a glossic horizon.

Eutric Glossoboralfs

IBFH. Other Glossoboralfs.

Typic Glossoboralfs

Natriboralfs

Natriboralfs are the Boralfs that have a natric horizon. They are rare in the United States, and subgroups have not been developed.

Paleboralfs

Key to subgroups

IBAA. Paleboralfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron

percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Paleboralfs

IBAB. Other Paleboralfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandic Paleboralfs

IBAC. Other Paleboralfs that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Paleboralfs

IBAD. Other Paleboralfs that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Paleboralfs

IBAE. Other Paleboralfs which have an argillic horizon that has, in its fine-earth fraction, a clay increase with depth of 20 percent or more (absolute) within its upper 7.5 cm.

Abruptic Paleboralfs

IBAF. Other Paleboralfs that have an Ap horizon with a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample), or materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm which have these color values after mixing.

Mollic Paleboralfs

IBAG. Other Paleboralfs.

Typic Paleboralfs

UDALFS

Key to great groups

IEA. Udalfs that have an agric horizon.

Agrudalfs, p. 100

IEB. Other Udalfs that have a natric horizon.

Natrudalfs, p. 112

IEC. Other Udalfs which have:

1. A discontinuous albic horizon, or none, above the argillic horizon; *and*
2. An argillic horizon that is discontinuous horizontally; *and*
3. In the argillic horizon, discrete nodules 2.5 cm to 30 cm in diameter with exteriors that (a) are enriched and either weakly cemented or indurated with iron, and (b) have either a redder hue or a higher chroma than the interiors.

Ferrudalfs, p. 101

IED. Other Udalfs that have a glossic horizon and a fragipan.

Fraglossudalfs, p. 103

IEE. Other Udalfs that have a glossic horizon.

Glossudalfs, p. 103

IEF. Other Udalfs that have a fragipan.

Fragiudalfs, p. 101

IEG. Other Udalfs which:

1. Do not have a lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. Have a CEC of 16 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (by 1N NH₄OAc pH 7) and an ECEC of 12 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (sum of bases extracted with 1N NH₄OAc pH 7, plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al) in 50 percent or more *either* of the argillic or kandic horizon if less than 100 cm thick, *or* of its upper 100 cm; *and*
3. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, *either*
 - a. Do not have a clay decrease with increasing depth of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content; *or*
 - b. Have 5 percent or more (by volume) skeletans on faces of pedis in the layer that has a 20 percent lower clay content *and*, below that layer, a clay increase of 3 percent or more (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction.

Kandiudalfs, p. 110

IEH. Other Udalfs that have a CEC of 16 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (by 1N NH₄OAc pH 7) and an ECEC of 12 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (sum of bases extracted with 1N NH₄OAc pH 7, plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al) in 50 percent or more *either* of the argillic or kandic horizon if less than 100 cm thick, *or* of its upper 100 cm.

Kanhapludalfs, p. 111

IEI. Other Udalfs which:

1. Do not have a lithic or paralithic contact within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, *either*
 - a. Do not have a clay decrease with depth of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content; *or*
 - b. Have 5 percent or more (by volume) skeletalans on faces of peds in the layer that has a 20 percent lower clay content *and*, below that layer, a clay increase of 3 percent or more (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction; *and*
3. Have *one or more* of the following in the argillic horizon:
 - a. In the matrix of its lowest subhorizon, a hue redder than 10YR and 50 percent or more chroma of 5 or more; *or*
 - b. In 50 percent or more of its matrix, a hue of 2.5YR or redder, a color value, moist, of 3 or less, and a color value, dry, of 4 or less; *or*
 - c. In one or more subhorizons, many coarse redox concentrations with a hue redder than 7.5YR or a chroma of 6 or more, or both.

Paleudalfs, p. 112

IEJ. Other Udalfs which have throughout the argillic horizon a hue of 2.5YR or redder, a color value, moist, of 3 or less, and a color value, dry, no more than 1 unit higher than the value, moist.

Rhodudalfs, p. 115

IEK. Other Udalfs.

Hapludalfs, p. 105

Agrudalfs

Agrudalfs are the Udalfs that have an agric horizon; some of them have an anthropic epipedon. These soils have been farmed for many hundreds of years and have received heavy applications of animal manure and other amendments. They are not known to occur in the United States. It seems probable that only the typic and anthropic subgroups are needed for this great group.

The Agrudalfs of western Europe have been farmed for more than 1,000 years,¹ and the early farmers selected only the best soils for cultivation. All of them are well drained, and they seem quite similar in most properties. The Typic Agrudalfs do not have an anthropic epipedon.

Ferrudalfs

Key to subgroups

IECA. Ferrudalfs that have, in one or more horizons within 60 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Ferrudalfs

IECB. Other Ferrudalfs.

Typic Ferrudalfs

Fragiudalfs

Key to subgroups

IEFA. Fragiudalfs which:

1. Do not, above the fragipan, have an argillic horizon with clay films on both vertical and horizontal faces of any peds; *and*
2. Have, directly above the fragipan, a layer 5 cm or more thick which *either*:
 - a. Has, on faces of primary peds, clay depletions of clean silt and sand that constitute 1 percent or more (by volume) of the layer; *or*
 - b. Is an eluvial horizon (E) and has 3 or more percent (absolute) less clay in the fine-earth fraction than both the overlying and underlying horizons; *and*
3. Have an Ap horizon with a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample), or materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm which have these color values after mixing; *and*
4. Have a base saturation (by NH_4OAc) of less than 50 percent in one or more layers of the epipedon.

Umbreptic Fragiudalfs

IEFB. Other Fragiudalfs that have an Ap horizon with a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample), or materials

¹ Personal communication from R. Tavernier.

between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm which have these color values after mixing.

Mollic Fragiudalfs

IEFC. Other Fragiudalfs that have *both*:

1. Directly above the fragipan, a layer 5 cm or more thick which *either*:

a. Has, on faces of primary peds, clay depletions of clean silt and sand that constitute 1 percent or more (by volume) of the layer; *or*

b. Is an eluvial horizon (E) and has 3 or more percent (absolute) less clay in the fine-earth fraction than both the overlying and underlying horizons; *and*

2. In one or more horizons within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Glossaquic Fragiudalfs

IEFD. Other Fragiudalfs which:

1. Do not, above the fragipan, have an argillic horizon with clay films on both vertical and horizontal faces of any peds; *and*

2. Have, in one or more horizons within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aqueptic Fragiudalfs

IEFE. Other Fragiudalfs that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. Within a vertical distance of 7.5 cm at the top of the argillic horizon, a clay increase of more than 15 percent (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction.

Albaquic Fragiudalfs

IEFF. Other Fragiudalfs that have, in one or more horizons within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Fragiudalfs

IEFG. Other Fragiudalfs that are saturated with water, in one or more layers above the fragipan, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Fragiudalfs

IEFH. Other Fragiudalfs that have, directly above the fragipan, a layer 5 cm or more thick which *either*:

1. Has, on faces of primary peds, clay depletions of clean silt and sand that constitute 1 percent or more (by volume) of the layer; *or*
2. Is an eluvial horizon (E) and has 3 or more percent (absolute) less clay in the fine-earth fraction than both the overlying and underlying horizons.

Glossic Fragiudalfs

IEFI. Other Fragiudalfs that do not, above the fragipan, have an argillic horizon with clay films on both vertical and horizontal faces of any peds.

Ochreptic Fragiudalfs

IEFJ. Other Fragiudalfs.

Typic Fragiudalfs

Fraglossudalfs

Key to subgroups

IEDA. Fraglossudalfs that have, in one or more subhorizons within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Fraglossudalfs

IEDB. Other Fraglossudalfs that are saturated with water, in one or more layers above the fragipan, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Fraglossudalfs

IEDC. Other Fraglossudalfs.

Typic Fraglossudalfs

Glossudalfs

Key to subgroups

IEEA. Glossudalfs which have a brittle matrix in 25 percent or more of a horizon 10 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Fragic Glossudalfs

IEEB. Other Glossudalfs which have *both*:

1. In one or more subhorizons within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*
2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

- a. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*
- b. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
- c. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - (1) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - (2) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Aquandic Glossudalfs

IEEC. Other Glossudalfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Glossudalfs

IEED. Other Glossudalfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

- 1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
- 2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandic Glossudalfs

IEEE. Other Glossudalfs that have, in one or more subhorizons within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less,

and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Glossudalfs

IEEF. Other Glossudalfs that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Glossudalfs

IEEG. Other Glossudalfs that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more.

Arenic Glossudalfs

IEEH. Other Glossudalfs that do not have a glossic horizon 50 cm or more thick.

Haplic Glossudalfs

IEEI. Other Glossudalfs.

Typic Glossudalfs

Hapludalfs

Key to subgroups

IEKA. Hapludalfs that have *both*:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. In one or more subhorizons within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Lithic Hapludalfs

IEKB. Other Hapludalfs that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Hapludalfs

IEKC. Other Hapludalfs which have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:
 - a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
 - b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less in layers that also have aquic conditions in most years (or artificial drainage) *either*:

- a. Within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon if its upper boundary is within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, *or*
- b. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface if the upper boundary of the argillic horizon is 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface.

Aquertic Hapludalfs

IEKD. Other Hapludalfs which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Hapludalfs

IEKE. Other Hapludalfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Hapludalfs

IEKF. Other Hapludalfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandic Hapludalfs

IEKG. Other Hapludalfs which have both:

1. Redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less in layers that also have aquic conditions in most years (or artificial drainage) *either*:
 - a. Within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon if its upper boundary is within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, *or*
 - b. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface if the upper boundary of the argillic horizon is 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. An argillic horizon that *either* has a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser *or* is discontinuous vertically within its upper 20 cm.

Psammaquentic Hapludalfs

IEKH. Other Hapludalfs which have an argillic horizon that *either* has a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser *or* is discontinuous vertically within its upper 20 cm.

Psammentic Hapludalfs

A
L
F

IEKI. Other Hapludalfs that have both:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*
2. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more.

Aquic Arenic Hapludalfs

IEKJ. Other Hapludalfs that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more.

Arenic Hapludalfs

IEKK. Other Hapludalfs that have anthraquic conditions.

Anthraquic Hapludalfs

IEKL. Other Hapludalfs which have:

1. An abrupt textural change; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less in layers that also have aquic conditions in most years (or artificial drainage) *either*:
 - a. Within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon if its upper boundary is within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, *or*
 - b. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface if the upper boundary of the argillic horizon is 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface; *and*

3. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 60 percent at a depth of 125 cm from the top of the argillic horizon, or at a depth of 180 cm from the mineral soil surface, or directly above a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallowest.

Albaquiltic Hapludalfs

IEKM. Other Hapludalfs which have *both*:

1. An abrupt textural change; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less in layers that also have aquic conditions in most years (or artificial drainage) *either*:
 - a. Within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon if its upper boundary is within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, *or*
 - b. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface if the upper boundary of the argillic horizon is 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface.

Albaquic Hapludalfs

IEKN. Other Hapludalfs which have *both*:

1. Interfingering of albic materials, and albic materials surrounding some peds, in the upper part of the argillic horizon; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less in layers that also have aquic conditions in most years (or artificial drainage) *either*:
 - a. Within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon if its upper boundary is within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, *or*
 - b. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface if the upper boundary of the argillic horizon is 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface.

Glossaquic Hapludalfs

IEKO. Other Hapludalfs which have *both*:

1. Redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less in layers that also have aquic conditions in most years (or artificial drainage) *either*:
 - a. Within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon if its upper boundary is within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, *or*
 - b. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface if the upper boundary of the argillic horizon is 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 60 percent at a depth of 125 cm from the top of the argillic horizon, or at a depth of 180 cm

from the mineral soil surface, or directly above a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallowest.

Aquultic Hapludalfs

IEKP. Other Hapludalfs which have *both*:

1. An Ap horizon that has a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample), or materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm which have these color values after mixing; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less in layers that also have aquic conditions in most years (or artificial drainage) *either*:
 - a. Within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon if its upper boundary is within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, *or*
 - b. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface if the upper boundary of the argillic horizon is 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface.

Aquollic Hapludalfs

IEKQ. Other Hapludalfs which have redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less in layers that also have aquic conditions in most years (or artificial drainage) *either*:

1. Within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon if its upper boundary is within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, *or*
2. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface if the upper boundary of the argillic horizon is 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface.

Aquic Hapludalfs

IEKR. Other Hapludalfs that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Hapludalfs

IEKS. Other Hapludalfs that have *both*:

1. Five percent or more (by volume) albic materials in one or more subhorizons of the argillic horizon; *and*
2. A mean annual soil temperature of 10°C or higher.

Glossic Hapludalfs

IEKT. Other Hapludalfs that have *both*:

1. In the upper part of the argillic horizon, interfingering of albic materials and albic materials surrounding some peds; *and*

2. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 10°C.

Glossoboric Hapludalfs

IEKU. Other Hapludalfs that have a base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 60 percent at a depth of 125 cm below the top of the argillic horizon, or at a depth of 180 cm below the mineral soil surface, or directly above a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallowest.

Ultic Hapludalfs

IEKV. Other Hapludalfs that have an Ap horizon with a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample), or materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm which have these color values after mixing.

Mollic Hapludalfs

IEKW. Other Hapludalfs.

Typic Hapludalfs

Kandiudalfs

Key to subgroups

IEGA. Kandiudalfs that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*
2. Five percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthaquic Kandiudalfs

IEGB. Other Kandiudalfs that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Kandiudalfs

IEGC. Other Kandiudalfs that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Kandiudalfs

IEGD. Other Kandiudalfs that have *both*:

1. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm to 100 cm; *and*
2. Five percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Arenic Plinthic Kandiudalfs

IEGE. Other KandiuudalFs that have *both*:

1. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more; *and*
2. Five percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Grossarenic Plinthic KandiuudalFs

IEGF. Other KandiuudalFs that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

Arenic KandiuudalFs

IEGG. Other KandiuudalFs that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more.

Grossarenic KandiuudalFs

IEGH. Other KandiuudalFs that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic KandiuudalFs

IEGI. Other KandiuudalFs that have, throughout the argillic or kandic horizon, a hue of 2.5YR or redder, a color value, moist, of 3 or less, and a color value, dry, that is no more than one unit higher than the value, moist.

Rhodic KandiuudalFs

IEGJ. Other KandiuudalFs that have an Ap horizon with a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample), or materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm which have these color values after mixing.

Mollic KandiuudalFs

IEGK. Other KandiuudalFs.

Typic KandiuudalFs

KanhapludalFs

Key to subgroups

IEHA. KanhapludalFs that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic KanhapludalFs

IEHB. Other KanhapludalFs that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic KanhapludalFs

IEHC. Other Kanhapludalfs that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Kanhapludalfs

IEHD. Other Kanhapludalfs that have, throughout the argillic or kandic horizon, a hue of 2.5YR or redder, a color value, moist, of 3 or less, and a color value, dry, that is no more than one unit higher than the value, moist.

Rhodic Kanhapludalfs

IEHE. Other Kanhapludalfs.

Typic Kanhapludalfs

Natrudalfs

Key to subgroups

IEBA. Natrudalfs which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Natrudalfs

IEBB. Other Natrudalfs that have either a glossic horizon, or interfingering of albic materials into the natric horizon.

Glossic Natrudalfs

IEBC. Other Natrudalfs that have an Ap horizon with a color value, moist, of 2 or less (crushed and smoothed sample), or materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm which have that color value after mixing.

Mollic Natrudalfs

IEBD. Other Natrudalfs.

Typic Natrudalfs

Paleudalfs

Key to subgroups

IEIA. Paleudalfs which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a

thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Paleudalfs

IEIB. Other Paleudalfs that have anthraquic conditions.

Anthraquic Paleudalfs

IEIC. Other Paleudalfs that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. Five percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthaquic Paleudalfs

IEID. Other Paleudalfs which have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. In the upper part of the argillic horizon, one or more subhorizons that have 5 percent or more (by volume) clay depletions with a chroma of 2 or less.

Glossaquic Paleudalfs

IEIE. Other Paleudalfs that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. A clay increase of 15 percent or more (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction within a vertical distance of 2.5 cm at the upper boundary of the argillic horizon.

Albaquic Paleudalfs

IEIF. Other Paleudalfs that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Paleudalfs

IEIG. Other Paleudalfs that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Paleudalfs

IEIH. Other Paleudalfs that have *both*:

1. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm; *and*
2. Five percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Arenic Plinthic Paleudalfs

IEII. Other Paleudalfs that have *both*:

1. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more; *and*
2. Five percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Grossarenic Plinthic Paleudalfs

IEIJ. Other Paleudalfs which have an argillic horizon that has a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser, *or* is discontinuous horizontally, *or* is discontinuous vertically within its upper 20 cm.

Psammentic Paleudalfs

IEIK. Other Paleudalfs that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

Arenic Paleudalfs

IEIL. Other Paleudalfs that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more.

Grossarenic Paleudalfs

IEIM. Other Paleudalfs that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Paleudalfs

IEIN. Other Paleudalfs that have *either*:

1. In the upper part of the argillic horizon, one or more subhorizons that have 5 percent or more (by volume) skeletans with a chroma of 2 or less; *or*
2. Five percent or more (by volume) albic materials in some subhorizon of the argillic horizon.

Glossic Paleudalfs

IEIO. Other Paleudalfs that have, throughout the argillic horizon, a hue of 2.5YR or redder, a color value, moist, of 3 or less, and a color value, dry, that is no more than one unit higher than the value, moist.

Rhodic Paleudalfs

IEIP. Other Paleudalfs that have an Ap horizon with a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample), or materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm which have these color values after mixing.

Mollic Paleudalfs

IEIQ. Other Paleudalfs.

Typic Paleudalfs

Rhodudalfs

Rhodudalfs are dark red Udalfs that have a thinner solum than Paleudalfs. Their definition is parallel to that of other Rhodic great groups. Their parent materials are basic. These soils are rare in the United States, and definitions of subgroups have not been developed.

A
L
F

USTALFS

Key to great groups

ICA. Ustalfs which have a duripan that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Durustalfs, p. 117

ICB. Other Ustalfs that have one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface in which plinthite either forms a continuous phase or constitutes one half or more of the volume.

Plinthustalfs, p. 128

ICC. Other Ustalfs that have a natric horizon.

Natrustalfs, p. 123

ICD. Other Ustalfs which:

1. Have a CEC of 16 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (by 1N NH₄OAc pH 7) and an ECEC of 12 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (sum of bases extracted with 1N NH₄OAc pH 7, plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al) in 50 percent or more *either* of the argillic or kandic horizon if less than 100 cm thick, *or* of its upper 100 cm; *and*
2. Do not have a lithic, paralithic, or petroferic contact within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
3. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, *either*
 - a. Do not have a clay decrease with increasing depth of 20 percent or more

(relative) from the maximum clay content;
or

b. Have 5 percent or more (by volume) skeletalans on faces of peds in the layer that has a 20 percent lower clay content *and*, below that layer, a clay increase of 3 percent or more (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction.

Kandiustalfts, p. 120

ICE. Other Ustalfts that have a CEC of 16 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (by 1N NH₄OAc pH 7) and an ECEC of 12 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (sum of bases extracted with 1N NH₄OAc pH 7, plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al) in 50 percent or more *either* of the argillic or kandic horizon if less than 100 cm thick, *or* of its upper 100 cm.

Kanhaplustalfts, p. 122

ICF. Other Ustalfts which have *one or more* of the following:

1. A petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. No lithic or paralithic contact within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, *and* an argillic horizon which has *both*:

a. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, *either*

(1) No clay decrease with increasing depth of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content; *or*

(2) Five percent or more (by volume) skeletalans on faces of peds in the layer that has a 20 percent lower clay content *and*, below that layer, a clay increase of 3 percent or more (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction;
and

b. *One or more* of the following:

(1) In the matrix of its lowest subhorizon, a hue of 7.5YR or redder and a chroma of 5 or more; *or*

(2) In 50 percent or more of its matrix, a hue of 7.5YR or redder, a color value, moist, or 3 or less, and a color value, dry, of 4 or less; *or*

(3) In the matrix of its lowest subhorizon, common or many coarse redox concentrations with a hue of 7.5YR or redder or a chroma of 6 or more, or both; *or*

3. No lithic or paralithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, *and* an argillic horizon which has *both*:

- a. A clayey particle size throughout one or more subhorizons in its upper part; *and*
- b. At its upper boundary, a clay increase of *either* 20 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 7.5 cm, *or* of 15 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 2.5 cm, in the fine-earth fraction.

Paleustalfs, p. 124

ICG. Other Ustalfs which have throughout the argillic horizon a hue of 2.5YR or redder, a color value, moist, of 3 or less, and a color value, dry, no more than 1 unit higher than the value, moist.

Rhodustalfs, p. 128

ICH. Other Ustalfs.

Haplustalfs, p. 117

A
L
F

Durustalfs

Durustalfs are the Ustalfs which have a duripan that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface. They are not known to occur in the United States, but the great group has been provided for use in other countries. Subgroups have not been developed.

Haplustalfs

Key to subgroups

ICHA. Haplustalfs that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Haplustalfs

ICHB. Other Haplustalfs which have *both*:

1. If neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:
 - a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for four tenths or less of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
 - b. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C; *and*

2. *One or both* of the following:

- a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
- b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Udertic Haplustalfs

ICHC. Other Haplustalfs which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Haplustalfs

ICHD. Other Haplustalfs that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*
2. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

Aquic Arenic Haplustalfs

ICHE. Other Haplustalfs that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*
2. An argillic horizon that has a base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 75 percent throughout.

Aquiltic Haplustalfs

ICHF. Other Haplustalfs that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic

conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Haplustalfs

ICHG. Other Haplustalfs that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Haplustalfs

ICHH. Other Haplustalfs which have an argillic horizon that has a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser, *or* is discontinuous horizontally, *or* is discontinuous vertically within its upper 20 cm.

Psammentic Haplustalfs

ICHI. Other Haplustalfs which have *both*:

1. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more; *and*

2. If neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:

a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*

b. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, remains moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Arenic Aridic Haplustalfs

ICHJ. Other Haplustalfs that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more.

Arenic Haplustalfs

ICHK. Other Haplustalfs which, if neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*

2. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years,

remains moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Aridic Haplustalfs

ICHL. Other Haplustalfs that have a CEC of less than 24 cmol(+)/kg clay (by 1N NH₄OAc pH 7) in 50 percent or more *either* of the argillic horizon if less than 100 cm thick, *or* of its upper 100 cm.

Kanhaplic Haplustalfs

ICHM. Other Haplustalfs that have an argillic horizon with a base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 75 percent throughout.

Ultic Haplustalfs

ICHN. Other Haplustalfs which, if neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, and a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for four tenths or less of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
2. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, and a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Udic Haplustalfs

ICHO. Other Haplustalfs.

Typic Haplustalfs

Kandiustalfs

Key to subgroups

ICDA. Kandiustalfs that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more.

Grossarenic Kandiustalfs

ICDB. Other Kandiustalfs that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*
2. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

Aquic Arenic Kandiustalfs

ICDC. Other Kandiuustalfts that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Kandiuustalfts

ICDD. Other Kandiuustalfts that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Kandiuustalfts

ICDE. Other Kandiuustalfts which have *both*:

1. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm; *and*

2. If neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:

a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*

b. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, remains moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Arenic Aridic Kandiuustalfts

ICDF. Other Kandiuustalfts that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

Arenic Kandiuustalfts

ICDG. Other Kandiuustalfts which, if neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*

2. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, remains moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at

a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Aridic KandiuustalFs

ICDH. Other KandiuustalFs which, if neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, and a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for 135 cumulative days or less per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
2. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, and a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Udic KandiuustalFs

ICDL. Other KandiuustalFs which have, throughout the argillic or kandic horizon, a hue of 2.5YR or redder, a color value, moist, of 3 or less, and a color value, dry, that is no more than one unit higher than the value, moist.

Rhodic KandiuustalFs

ICDJ. Other KandiuustalFs.

Typic KandiuustalFs

KanhaplustalFs

Key to subgroups

ICEA. KanhaplustalFs that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic KanhaplustalFs

ICEB. Other KanhaplustalFs that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic KanhaplustalFs

ICEC. Other KanhaplustalFs which, if neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
2. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, remains moist in some or all parts for less than 90

consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Aridic Kanhaplustalfs

ICED. Other Kanhaplustalfs which, if neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, and a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for 135 cumulative days or less per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*

2. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, and a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Udic Kanhaplustalfs

ICEE. Other Kanhaplustalfs which have, throughout the argillic or kandic horizon, a hue of 2.5YR or redder, a color value, moist, of 3 or less, and a color value, dry, that is no more than one unit higher than the value, moist.

Rhodic Kanhaplustalfs

ICEF. Other Kanhaplustalfs.

Typic Kanhaplustalfs

Natrustalfs

Key to subgroups

ICCA. Natrustalfs which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Natrustalfs

ICCB. Other Natrustalfs that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more.

Grossarenic Natrustalfs

ICCC. Other Natrustalfs that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage);
and

2. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

Aquic Arenic Natrustalfs

ICCD. Other Natrustalfs that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Natrustalfs

ICCE. Other Natrustalfs that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

Arenic Natrustalfs

ICCF. Other Natrustalfs which have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petrocalcic Natrustalfs

ICCG. Other Natrustalfs which have a salic horizon that has its upper boundary within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Salorthidic Natrustalfs

ICCH. Other Natrustalfs that have an Ap horizon with a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample), or materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm which have these color values after mixing.

Mollic Natrustalfs

ICCI. Other Natrustalfs.

Typic Natrustalfs

Paleustalfs

Key to subgroups

ICFA. Paleustalfs which have *both*:

1. If neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:

a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for four tenths or less of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*

b. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C; *and*

2. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Udertic Paleustalfs

A
L
F

ICFB. Other Paleustalfs which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Paleustalfs

ICFC. Other Paleustalfs which have an argillic horizon that has a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser, *or* is discontinuous horizontally, *or* is discontinuous vertically within its upper 20 cm.

Psammentic Paleustalfs

ICFD. Other Paleustalfs that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more.

Grossarenic Paleustalfs

ICFE. Other Paleustalfs that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

Aquic Arenic Paleustalfs

ICFF. Other Paleustalfs that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Paleustalfs

ICFG. Other Paleustalfs that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Paleustalfs

ICFH. Other Paleustalfs that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Paleustalfs

ICFI. Other Paleustalfs which have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petrocalcic Paleustalfs

ICFJ. Other Paleustalfs which have *both*:

1. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm; *and*
2. If neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:
 - a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
 - b. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, remains moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Arenic Aridic Paleustalfs

ICFK. Other Paleustalfs that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

Arenic Paleustalfs

ICFL. Other Paleustalfs which have *both*:

1. If neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:
 - a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
 - b. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, remains moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C; *and*
2. A calcic horizon, *either* within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface if the weighted average particle-size class of the upper 50 cm of the argillic horizon is sandy, *or* within 60 cm if it is loamy, *or* within 50 cm if it is clayey, *and* carbonates in all horizons above the calcic horizon.

Calciorthidic Paleustalfs

ICFM. Other Paleustalfs which, if neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
2. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, remains moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Aridic Paleustalfs

ICFN. Other Paleustalfs that have a CEC of less than 24 cmol(+) per kg clay (by 1N NH₄OAc pH 7) in 50 percent or more *either* of the argillic horizon if less than 100 cm thick, *or* of its upper 100 cm.

Kandic Paleustalfs

ICFO. Other Paleustalfs which have, throughout the argillic horizon, a hue of 2.5YR or redder, a color value, moist, of 3 or less, and a color value, dry, that is no more than one unit higher than the value, moist.

Rhodic Paleustalfs

ICFP. Other Paleustalfs that have an argillic horizon with a base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 75 percent throughout.

Utic Paleustalfs

ICFQ. Other Paleustalfs which, if neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, and a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for four tenths or less of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*

2. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, and a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Udic Paleustalfs

ICFR. Other Paleustalfs.

Typic Paleustalfs

Plinthustalfs

Plinthustalfs are the Ustalfs that have one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface in which plinthite either forms a continuous phase or constitutes one half or more of the volume. There are no soil series in the United States that are presently classified in this great group, but the group is provided for other parts of the world. Subgroups have not been developed.

Rhodustalfs

Key to subgroups

ICGA. Rhodustalfs that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Rhodustalfs

ICGB. Other Rhodustalfs that have a CEC of less than 24 cmol(+) per kg clay (by 1N NH₄OAc pH 7) in 50 percent or more *either* of the argillic horizon if less than 100 cm thick, *or* of its upper 100 cm.

Kanhaplic Rhodustalfs

ICGC. Other Rhodustalfs which, if neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for four tenths or less of the cumulative days per year when the

temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*

2. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Udic Rhodustalfs

ICGD. Other Rhodustalfs.

Typic Rhodustalfs

XERALFS

Key to great groups

IDA. Xeralfs which have a duripan that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Durixeralfs, p. 130

IDB. Other Xeralfs that have a natric horizon.

Natrixeralfs, p. 135

IDC. Other Xeralfs that have a fragipan.

Fragixeralfs, p. 131

IDD. Other Xeralfs that have one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface in which plinthite either forms a continuous phase or constitutes one half or more of the volume.

Plinthoxeralfs, p. 138

IDE. Other Xeralfs which have throughout the argillic horizon a hue of 2.5YR or redder, a color value, moist, of 3 or less, and a color value, dry, no more than 1 unit higher than the value, moist.

Rhodoxeralfs, p. 138

IDF. Other Xeralfs which have *one or more* of the following:

1. A petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. No lithic or paralithic contact within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, and an argillic horizon which has *both*:

a. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, *either*

(1) No clay decrease with increasing depth of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content; *or*

(2) Five percent or more (by volume) skeletalans on faces of peds in the layer that has a 20 percent lower clay content *and*, below that layer, a clay increase of 3 percent or more

(absolute) in the fine-earth fraction;
and

b. In the matrix of its lowest subhorizon, *one or both* of the following:

(1) A hue of 7.5YR or redder and a chroma of 5 or more; *or*

(2) Common or many coarse redox concentrations with a hue of 7.5YR or redder or a chroma of 6 or more, or both; *or*

3. No lithic or paralithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, *and* an argillic horizon which has *both*:

a. A clayey particle size throughout one or more subhorizons in its upper part; *and*

b. At its upper boundary, a clay increase either of 20 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 7.5 cm, or of 15 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 2.5 cm, in the fine-earth fraction.

Palixeralfs, p. 135

IDG. Other Xeralfs.

Haploxeralfs, p. 132

Durixeralfs

Key to subgroups

IDAA. Durixeralfs that have a natric horizon.

Natric Durixeralfs

IDAB. Other Durixeralfs which have, above the duripan, *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more.

Vertic Durixeralfs

IDAC. Other Durixeralfs that have, in one or more subhorizons within the argillic horizon, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Durixeralfs

IDAD. Other Durixeralfs which have *both*:

1. An argillic horizon that has *both*:

a. A clayey particle size throughout some subhorizon 7.5 cm or more thick; *and*

b. At its upper boundary or within some part, a clay increase *either* of 20 percent or

more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 7.5 cm, *or* of 15 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 2.5 cm, in the fine-earth fraction; *and*

2. A duripan that is not indurated in any subhorizon.

Abruptic Haplic Durixeralfs

IDAE. Other Durixeralfs which have an argillic horizon that has *both*:

1. A clayey particle size throughout some subhorizon 7.5 cm or more thick; *and*
2. At its upper boundary or within some part, a clay increase *either* of 20 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 7.5 cm, *or* of 15 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 2.5 cm, in the fine-earth fraction.

Abruptic Durixeralfs

IDAF. Other Durixeralfs which have a duripan that is not indurated in any subhorizon.

Haplic Durixeralfs

IDAG. Other Durixeralfs.

Typic Durixeralfs

Fragixeralfs

Key to subgroups

IDCA. Fragixeralfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Fragixeralfs

IDCB. Other Fragixeralfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron

percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandic Fragixeralfs

IDCC. Other Fragixeralfs that have an Ap horizon with a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample), or materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm which have these color values after mixing.

Mollic Fragixeralfs

IDCD. Other Fragixeralfs that have, in one or more horizons within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Fragixeralfs

IDCE. Other Fragixeralfs that do not, above the fragipan, have an argillic horizon with clay films on both vertical and horizontal faces of any peds.

Ochreptic Fragixeralfs

IDCF. Other Fragixeralfs.

Typic Fragixeralfs

Haploxeralfs

Key to subgroups

IDGA. Haploxeralfs that have *both*:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. A color value, moist, of 3 or less and 0.7 percent or more organic carbon, either throughout an Ap horizon or throughout the upper 10 cm of an A horizon.

Lithic Mollic Haploxeralfs

IDGB. Other Haploxeralfs which have *both*:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. An argillic horizon that is discontinuous horizontally in each pedon.

Lithic Ruptic-Xerochreptic Haploxeralfs

IDGC. Other Haploxeralfs that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Haploxeralfs

IDGD. Other Haploxeralfs which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has

its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Haploxeralfs

IDGE. Other Haploxeralfs which have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*
2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:
 - a. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*
 - b. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
 - c. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - (1) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - (2) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

A
L
F

Aquandic Haploxeralfs

IDGF. Other Haploxeralfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Haploxeralfs

IDGG. Other Haploxeralfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66

percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:

a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*

b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandic Haploxeralfs

IDGH. Other Haploxeralfs which have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. An argillic horizon that has a base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 75 percent in one or more subhorizons within its upper 75 cm or above a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Aquultic Haploxeralfs

IDGI. Other Haploxeralfs that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Haploxeralfs

IDGJ. Other Haploxeralfs that have an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or more) in one or more subhorizons of the argillic horizon.

Natric Haploxeralfs

IDGK. Other Haploxeralfs which have an argillic horizon that is *either* discontinuous vertically within its upper 20 cm, *or* has a sandy particle size.

Psammentic Haploxeralfs

IDGL. Other Haploxeralfs that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Haploxeralfs

IDGM. Other Haploxeralfs which have a calcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Calcic Haploxeralfs

IDGN. Other Haploxeralfs which have an argillic horizon that has a base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 75 percent in one or more subhorizons within

its upper 75 cm or above a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Ultic Haploxeralfs

IDGO. Other Haploxeralfs that have a color value, moist, of 3 or less and 0.7 percent or more organic carbon, either throughout an Ap horizon or throughout the upper 10 cm of an A horizon.

Mollic Haploxeralfs

IDGP. Other Haploxeralfs.

Typic Haploxeralfs

Natrixeralfs

Key to subgroups

IDBA. Natrixeralfs which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

A
L
F

Vertic Natrixeralfs

IDBB. Other Natrixeralfs that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Natrixeralfs

IDBC. Other Natrixeralfs.

Typic Natrixeralfs

Palexeralfs

Key to subgroups

IDFA. Palexeralfs which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Palexeralfs

IDFB. Other Palexeralfs which have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

a. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*

b. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*

c. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:

(1) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*

(2) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Aquandic Palexeralfs

IDFC. Other Palexeralfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Palexeralfs

IDFD. Other Palexeralfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:

- a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
- b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandic Palexeralfs

IDFE. Other Palexeralfs that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Palexeralfs

IDFF. Other Palexeralfs which have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petrocalcic Palexeralfs

IDFG. Other Palexeralfs that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more.

Arenic Palexeralfs

IDFH. Other Palexeralfs that have an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or more) in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Natric Palexeralfs

IDFI. Other Palexeralfs that have a calcic horizon within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Calcic Palexeralfs

IDFJ. Other Palexeralfs that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Palexeralfs

IDFK. Other Palexeralfs which have an argillic horizon that has a base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 75 percent throughout.

Ultic Palexeralfs

IDFL. Other Palexeralfs with an argillic horizon that has *neither*:

1. A clayey particle size throughout any subhorizon in its upper part; *nor*

2. At its upper boundary, a clay increase of 20 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 7.5 cm, or of 15 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 2.5 cm, in the fine-earth fraction.

Haplic Palexeralfs

IDFM. Other Palexeralfs that have a color value, moist, of 3 or less and 0.7 percent or more organic carbon, either throughout an Ap horizon or throughout the upper 10 cm of an A horizon.

Mollic Palexeralfs

IDFN. Other Palexeralfs.

Typic Palexeralfs

Plinthoxeralfs

Plinthoxeralfs are the Xeralfs that have one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface in which plinthite either forms a continuous phase or constitutes one half or more of the volume. There are few of these soils in the United States, but they are moderately extensive in other parts of the world. Subgroups have not been developed.

Rhodoxeralfs

Key to subgroups

IDEA. Rhodoxeralfs that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Rhodoxeralfs

IDEB. Other Rhodoxeralfs which have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petrocalcic Rhodoxeralfs

IDEC. Other Rhodoxeralfs which have a calcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Calcic Rhodoxeralfs

IDED. Other Rhodoxeralfs which have an argillic horizon that is either less than 15 cm thick or is discontinuous horizontally in each pedon.

Ochreptic Rhodoxeralfs

IDEE. Other Rhodoxeralfs.

Typic Rhodoxeralfs

Chapter 7

Andisols¹

KEY TO SUBORDERS

CA. Andisols that have *either*:

1. A histic epipedon; *or*
2. In a layer between 40 and 50 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and one or more of the following*:
 - a. Two percent or more redox concentrations; *or*
 - b. A color value, moist, of 4 or more, and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds, or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*
 - c. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquands, p. 140

CB. Other Andisols that have a cryic or pergelic soil temperature regime.

Cryands, p. 146

CC. Other Andisols that have an aridic moisture regime.

Torrands, p. 150

CD. Other Andisols that have a xeric moisture regime.

Xerands, p. 174

CE. Other Andisols that have a 1500-kPa water retention of less than 15 percent on air-dried samples *and* of less than 30 percent on undried samples, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 35 cm or more within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Vitrands, p. 172

CF. Other Andisols that have an ustic moisture regime.

Ustands, p. 169

CG. Other Andisols.

Udands, p. 151

¹ This chapter builds on the preliminary Andisol Proposal (1978) by Guy D. Smith (NZ Soil Bureau Record 96) and represents the work of the International Committee on the Classification of Andisols (ICOMAND), chaired by Michael L. Leamy, New Zealand Soil Bureau.

AQUANDS

Key to great groups

CAA. Aquands that have a cryic or pergelic soil temperature regime.

Cryaquands, p. 140

CAB. Other Aquands that have, in half or more of each pedon, a placic horizon within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Placaquands, p. 144

CAC. Other Aquands that have, in 75 percent or more of each pedon, a cemented layer which does not slake in water after air-drying and which has its upper boundary within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Duraquands, p. 141

CAD. Other Aquands that have a 1500-kPa water retention of less than 15 percent on air-dried samples *and* of less than 30 percent on undried samples, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 35 cm or more within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Vitraquands, p. 145

CAE. Other Aquands that have a melanic epipedon.

Melanaquands, p. 143

CAF. Other Aquands that have episaturation.

Epiaquands, p. 142

CAG. Other Aquands.

Endoquands, p. 141

Cryaquands

Key to subgroups

CAAA. Cryaquands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Lithic Cryaquands

CAAB. Other Cryaquands that have a mean annual soil temperature of 0°C or lower.

Pergelic Cryaquands

CAAC. Other Cryaquands that have a histic epipedon.

Histic Cryaquands

CAAD. Other Cryaquands that have, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties,

whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

Thaptic Cryaquands

CAAE. Other Cryaquands.

Typic Cryaquands

Duraquands

Key to subgroups

CACA. Duraquands that have a histic epipedon.

Histic Duraquands

CACB. Other Duraquands that have extractable bases plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al^{3+} totaling less than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Acraquoxic Duraquands

CACC. Other Duraquands that have, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

Thaptic Duraquands

CACD. Other Duraquands.

Typic Duraquands

Endoaquands

Key to subgroups

CAGA. Endoaquands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Lithic Endoaquands

CAGB. Other Endoaquands that have a petroferric contact within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Petroferric Endoaquands

CAGC. Other Endoaquands which have a horizon 15 cm or more thick, with 20 percent or more (by volume) cemented soil material that does not slake in water after air-drying, that has its upper boundary within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Duric Endoaquands

CAGD. Other Endoaquands that have a histic epipedon.

Histic Endoaquands

CAGE. Other Endoaquands that have more than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg Al³⁺ (by 1N KCl) in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more, between 25 and 50 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Alic Endoaquands

CAGF. Other Endoaquands that have, undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Hydric Endoaquands

CAGG. Other Endoaquands that have, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

Thaptic Endoaquands

CAGH. Other Endoaquands.

Typic Endoaquands

Epiaquands

Key to subgroups

CAFA. Other Epiaquands that have a petroferric contact within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Petroferric Epiaquands

CAFB. Other Epiaquands that have a horizon 15 cm or more thick, with 20 percent or more (by volume) cemented soil material that does not slake in water after air-drying, that has its upper boundary within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Duric Epiaquands

CAFC. Other Epiaquands that have a histic epipedon.

Histic Epiaquands

CAFD. Other Epiaquands that have more than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg Al^{3+} (by 1N KCl) in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more, between 25 and 50 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Alic Epiaquands

CAFE. Other Epiaquands that have, undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Hydric Epiaquands

CAFF. Other Epiaquands that have, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

Thaptic Epiaquands

CAFG. Other Epiaquands.

Typic Epiaquands

Melanaquands

Key to subgroups

CAEA. Melanaquands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Lithic Melanaquands

CAEB. Other Melanaquands that have extractable bases plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al^{3+} totaling less than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Acraquoxic Melanaquands

CAEC. Other Melanaquands that have *both*:

1. Undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. More than 6.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout a layer 50 cm or more thick within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Hydric Pachic Melanaquands

CAED. Other Melanaquands that have, undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Hydric Melanaquands

CAEE. Other Melanaquands that have, between 40 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

Thaptic Melanaquands

CAEF. Other Melanaquands.

Typic Melanaquands

Placaquands

Key to subgroups

CABA. Placaquands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Lithic Placaquands

CABB. Other Placaquands which have *both*:

1. A histic epipedon; *and*
2. A horizon 15 cm or more thick, with 20 percent or more (by volume) cemented soil material that does not slake in water after air-drying, that has its upper boundary within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Duric Histic Placaquands

CABC. Other Placaquands which have a horizon 15 cm or more thick, with 20 percent or more (by volume) cemented soil material that does not slake in water after air-drying, that has its upper boundary within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Duric Placaquands

CABD. Other Placaquands that have a histic epipedon.

Histic Placaquands

CABE. Other Placaquands that have, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

Thaptic Placaquands

CABF. Other Placaquands.

Typic Placaquands

**A
N
D**

Vitraquands

Key to subgroups

CADA. Vitraquands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Lithic Vitraquands

CADB. Other Vitraquands which have a horizon 15 cm or more thick, with 20 percent or more (by volume) cemented soil material that does not slake in water after air-drying, that has its upper boundary within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Duric Vitraquands

CADC. Other Vitraquands that have a histic epipedon.

Histic Vitraquands

CADD. Other Vitraquands that have, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

Thaptic Vitraquands

CADE. Other Vitraquands.

Typic Vitraquands

CRYANDS

Key to great groups

CBA. Cryands that have a mean annual soil temperature of 0°C or lower.

Gelicryands, p. 147

CBB. Other Cryands that have a melanic epipedon.

Melanocryands, p. 149

CBC. Other Cryands which have an epipedon with a color value, moist, and chroma of 3 or less that meets the depth, thickness, and organic-carbon requirements for a melanic epipedon.

Fulvicryands, p. 146

CBD. Other Cryands that have, undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of 100 percent or more throughout one or more layers with a total thickness of 35 cm or more within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Hydrocryands, p. 148

CBE. Other Cryands that have a 1500-kPa water retention of less than 15 percent on air-dried samples *and* of less than 30 percent on undried samples, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 35 cm or more within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Vitricryands, p. 149

CBF. Other Cryands.

Haplocryands, p. 147

Fulvicryands

Key to subgroups

CBCA. Fulvicryands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Lithic Fulvicryands

CBCB. Other Fulvicryands which have, undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of less than 30 percent throughout one or more layers with andic soil properties that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Vitric Fulvicryands

CBCC. Other Fulvicryands.

Typic Fulvicryands

Gelicryands

Key to subgroups

CBAA. All Gelicryands.

Typic Gelicryands

Haplocryands

Key to subgroups

CBFA. Haplocryands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Lithic Haplocryands

CBFB. Other Haplocryands that have more than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg Al^{3+} (by 1N KCl) in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more, between 25 and 50 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Alic Haplocryands

CBFC. Other Haplocryands that have, in some subhorizon between 50 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and one or more* of the following:

1. Two percent or more redox concentrations; *or*
2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more, and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds, or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*
3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Haplocryands

CBFD. Other Haplocryands that have extractable bases plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al^{3+} totaling less than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Acrudoxic Haplocryands

CBFE. Other Haplocryands which have, undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of less than 30 percent throughout one or more layers with andic soil properties that have a total thickness of 25 cm more within 100 cm

either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Vitric Haplocryands

CBFF. Other Haplocryands that have, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

Thaptic Haplocryands

CBFG. Other Haplocryands that have a xeric moisture regime.

Xeric Haplocryands

CBFH. Other Haplocryands.

Typic Haplocryands

Hydrocryands

Key to subgroups

CBDA. Hydrocryands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Lithic Hydrocryands

CBDB. Other Hydrocryands that have a placic horizon within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Placic Hydrocryands

CBDC. Other Hydrocryands that have, in one or more horizons between 50 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and one or more* of the following:

1. Two percent or more redox concentrations; *or*
2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more, and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds, or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*
3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Hydrocryands

CBDD. Other Hydrocryands that have, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the

top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

Thaptic Hydrocryands

CBDE. Other Hydrocryands.

Typic Hydrocryands

Melanocryands

Key to subgroups

CBBA. Melanocryands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Lithic Melanocryands

CBBB. Other Melanocryands that have more than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg Al³⁺ (by 1N KCl) in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more, between 25 and 50 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Alic Melanocryands

CBBC. Other Melanocryands which have, undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of less than 30 percent throughout one or more layers with andic soil properties that have a total thickness of 25 cm more within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Vitric Melanocryands

CBBD. Other Melanocryands.

Typic Melanocryands

Vitricryands

Key to subgroups

CBEA. Vitricryands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Lithic Vitricryands

CBEB. Other Vitricryands that have, in one or more horizons between 50 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and one or more* of the following:

1. Two percent or more redox concentrations; *or*
2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more, and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds, or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*
3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Vitricryands

CBEC. Other Vitricryands that have, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

Thaptic Vitricryands

CBED. Other Vitricryands that have a xeric moisture regime and a mollic or an umbric epipedon.

Humic Xeric Vitricryands

CBEE. Other Vitricryands that have a xeric moisture regime.

Xeric Vitricryands

CBEF. Other Vitricryands which have an argillic or a kandic horizon that has its upper boundary within 125 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Alfic Vitricryands

CBEG. Other Vitricryands that have a mollic or an umbric epipedon.

Humic Vitricryands

CBEH. Other Vitricryands.

Typic Vitricryands

TORRANDS

Key to great groups

CCA. All Torrands.

Vitritorrands, p. 151

Vitritorrands

Key to subgroups

BCAA. Vitritorrands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Vitritorrands

CCAB. Other Vitritorrands which have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petrocalcic Vitritorrands

CCAC. Other Vitritorrands which have a horizon 15 cm or more thick, with 20 percent or more (by volume) cemented soil material that does not slake in water after air-drying, that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Duric Vitritorrands

CCAD. Other Vitritorrands that have, in one or more horizons between 50 and 100 cm from the mineral soil surface, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and one or more* of the following:

1. Two percent or more redox concentrations; *or*
2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more, and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds, or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*
3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Vitritorrands

CCAE. Other Vitritorrands which have a calcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Calcic Vitritorrands

CCAF. Other Vitritorrands.

Typic Vitritorrands

UDANDS

Key to great groups

CGA. Udands that have, in half or more of each pedon, a placic horizon within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Placudands, p. 166

CGB. Other Udands that have, in 75 percent or more of each pedon, a cemented layer which does not slake in water after air-drying and which has its upper boundary within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of

the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Durudands, p. 152

CGC. Other Udands that have a melanic epipedon.

Melanudands, p. 162

CGD. Other Udands which have an epipedon with a color value, moist, and chroma of 3 or less that meets the depth, thickness, and organic-carbon requirements of a melanic epipedon.

Fulvudands, p. 153

CGE. Other Udands that have, undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of 100 percent or more throughout one or more layers with a total thickness of 35 cm or more within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Hydrudands, p. 160

CGF. Other Udands.

Hapludands, p. 156

Durudands

Key to subgroups

CGBA. Durudands that have, in one or more horizons between 50 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and one or more* of the following:

1. Two percent or more redox concentrations; *or*
2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more, and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds, or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*
3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Durudands

CGBB. Other Durudands that have extractable bases plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al^{3+} totaling less than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Acrudoxic Durudands

CGBC. Other Durudands that have *both*:

1. Undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick within 100 cm either of the mineral soil

surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. More than 6.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout a layer 50 cm or more thick within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Hydric Pachic Durudands

CGBD. Other Durudands that have, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

Thaptic Durudands

CGBE. Other Durudands.

Typic Durudands

Fulvudands

Key to subgroups

CGDA. Fulvudands that have *both*:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*
2. Undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Hydric Lithic Fulvudands

CGDB. Other Fulvudands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Lithic Fulvudands

CGDC. Other Fulvudands that have more than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg Al³⁺ (by 1N KCl) in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more, between 25 and 50 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Alic Fulvudands

CGDD. Other Fulvudands that have, in one or more horizons between 50 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer

with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and one or more* of the following:

1. Two percent or more redox concentrations; *or*
2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more, and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds, or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*
3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Fulvudands

CGDE. Other Fulvudands that have *both*:

1. Extractable bases plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al^{3+} totaling less than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*
2. Undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Acrudoxic Hydric Fulvudands

CGDF. Other Fulvudands which have *both*:

1. Extractable bases plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al^{3+} totaling less than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*
2. An argillic or a kandic horizon that has *both*:
 - a. An upper boundary within 125 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*
 - b. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 35 percent throughout its upper 50 cm.

Acrudoxic Ultic Fulvudands

CGDG. Other Fulvudands that have extractable bases plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al^{3+} totaling less than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Acrudoxic Fulvudands

CGDH. Other Fulvudands that have *both*:

1. Undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*
2. More than 6.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout a layer 50 cm or more thick within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Hydric Pachic Fulvudands

CGDI. Other Fulvudands that have *both*:

1. A sum of extractable bases of more than 25.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 15 cm or more between 25 and 75 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*
2. More than 6.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout a layer 50 cm or more thick within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Eutric Pachic Fulvudands

CGDJ. Other Fulvudands that have more than 6.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout a layer 50 cm or more thick within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Pachic Fulvudands

CGDK. Other Fulvudands that have *both*:

1. Undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*
2. Between 40 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

Hydric Thaptic Fulvudands

CGDL. Other Fulvudands that have, undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Hydric Fulvudands

CGDM. Other Fulvudands that have, between 40 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

Thaptic Fulvudands

CGDN. Other Fulvudands that have a sum of extractable bases of more than 25.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 15 cm or more between 25 and 75 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Eutric Fulvudands

CGDO. Other Fulvudands.

Typic Fulvudands

Hapludands

Key to subgroups

CGFA. Hapludands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Lithic Hapludands

CGFB. Other Hapludands that have a petroferic contact within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Petroferic Hapludands

CGFC. Other Hapludands that have anthraquic conditions.

Anthraquic Hapludands

CGFD. Other Hapludands which have *both*:

1. A horizon 15 cm or more thick, with 20 percent or more (by volume) cemented soil material that does not slake in water after air-drying, that has its upper boundary within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. In one or more horizons between 50 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and one or more* of the following:

- a. Two percent or more redox concentrations; *or*
- b. A color value, moist, of 4 or more, and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds, or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*
- c. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Duric Hapludands

CGFE. Other Hapludands that have a horizon 15 cm or more thick, with 20 percent or more (by volume) cemented soil material that does not slake in water after air-drying, that has its upper boundary within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

AND

Duric Hapludands

CGFF. Other Hapludands that have more than 2.0 $\text{cmol}(+)/\text{kg Al}^{3+}$ (by 1N KCl) in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more, between 25 and 50 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Alic Hapludands

CGFG. Other Hapludands that have, in one or more horizons between 50 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and one or more* of the following:

1. Two percent or more redox concentrations; *or*
2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more, and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds, or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*
3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Hapludands

CGFH. Other Hapludands that have *both*:

1. Extractable bases plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al^{3+} totaling less than 2.0 $\text{cmol}(+)/\text{kg}$ in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more, between 25 and 100

cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. Undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Acrudoxic Hydric Hapludands

CGFI. Other Hapludands that have, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, *both*:

1. Extractable bases plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al^{3+} totaling less than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more; *and*

2. A layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

Acrudoxic Thaptic Hapludands

CGFJ. Other Hapludands that have *both*:

1. Extractable bases plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al^{3+} totaling less than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. An argillic or a kandic horizon that has *both*:

a. An upper boundary within 125 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

b. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 35 percent throughout its upper 50 cm.

Acrudoxic Ultic Hapludands

CGFK. Other Hapludands that have extractable bases plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al^{3+} totaling less than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Acrudoxic Hapludands

CGFL. Other Hapludands which have, undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of less than 30 percent throughout one or more layers with andic soil properties that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Vitric Hapludands

CGFM. Other Hapludands that have *both*:

1. Undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*
2. Between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

Hydric Thaptic Hapludands

CGFN. Other Hapludands that have, undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Hydric Hapludands

CHFO. Other Hapludands that have *both*:

1. A sum of extractable bases of more than 25.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 15 cm or more between 25 and 75 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*
2. Between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

Eutric Thaptic Hapludands

CGFP. Other Hapludands that have, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick

with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

Thaptic Hapludands

CGFQ. Other Hapludands that have a sum of extractable bases of more than 25.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 15 cm or more between 25 and 75 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Eutric Hapludands

CGFR. Other Hapludands which have an oxic horizon that has its upper boundary within 125 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Oxic Hapludands

CGFS. Other Hapludands which have an argillic or a kandic horizon that has *both*:

1. An upper boundary within 125 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*
2. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 35 percent throughout its upper 50 cm.

Ultic Hapludands

CGFT. Other Hapludands which have an argillic or a kandic horizon that has its upper boundary within 125 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Alfic Hapludands

CGFU. Other Hapludands.

Typic Hapludands

Hydrudands

Key to subgroups

CGEA. Hydrudands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Lithic Hydrudands

CGEB. Other Hydrudands that have, in one or more horizons between 50 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and one or more* of the following:

1. Two percent or more redox concentrations; *or*
2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more, and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds, or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*
3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Hydrudands

CGEC. Other Hydrudands which have, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, *both*:

1. Extractable bases plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al^{3+} totaling less than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more; *and*
2. A layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

A
N
D

Acrudoxic Thaptic Hydrudands

CGED. Other Hydrudands that have extractable bases plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al^{3+} totaling less than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Acrudoxic Hydrudands

CGEE. Other Hydrudands that have, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

Thaptic Hydrudands

CGEF. Other Hydrudands that have a sum of extractable bases of more than 25.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 15 cm or more between 25 and 75 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Eutric Hydrudands

CGEG. Other Hydrudands which have an argillic or a kandic horizon that has *both*:

1. An upper boundary within 125 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*
2. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 35 percent throughout its upper 50 cm.

Ultic Hydrudands

CGEH. Other Hydrudands.

Typic Hydrudands

Melanudands

Key to subgroups

CGCA. Melanudands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Lithic Melanudands

CGCB. Other Melanudands that have anthraquic conditions.

Anthraquic Melanudands

CGCC. Other Melanudands that have *both*:

1. More than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg Al³⁺ (by 1N KCl) in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more, between 25 and 50 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*
2. In one or more horizons between 50 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and one or more* of the following:
 - a. Two percent or more redox concentrations; *or*
 - b. A color value, moist, of 4 or more, and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds, or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*
 - c. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α,α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Alic Aquic Melanudands

CGCD. Other Melanudands that have *both*:

1. More than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg Al³⁺ (by 1N KCl) in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more, between

25 and 50 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. More than 6.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout a layer 50 cm or more thick within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Alic Pachic Melanudands

CGCE. Other Melanudands that have *both*:

1. More than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg Al³⁺ (by 1N KCl) in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more, between 25 and 50 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. Between 40 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

Alic Thaptic Melanudands

CGCF. Other Melanudands that have more than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg Al³⁺ (by 1N KCl) in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more, between 25 and 50 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Alic Melanudands

CGCG. Other Melanudands that have, in one or more horizons between 50 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and one or more* of the following:

1. Two percent or more redox concentrations; *or*

2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more, and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds, or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*

3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Melanudands

CGCH. Other Melanudands that have *both*:

1. Extractable bases plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al^{3+} totaling less than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. Undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of less than 30 percent throughout one or more layers with andic soil properties that have a total thickness of 25 cm more within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Acrudoxic Vitric Melanudands

CGCI. Other Melanudands that have *both*:

1. Extractable bases plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al^{3+} totaling less than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. Undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Acrudoxic Hydric Melanudands

CGCJ. Other Melanudands that have extractable bases plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al^{3+} totaling less than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Acrudoxic Melanudands

CGCK. Other Melanudands that have *both*:

1. More than 6.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout a layer 50 cm or more thick within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. Undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of less than 30 percent throughout one or more layers with andic soil properties that have a total thickness of 25 cm more within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Pachic Vitric Melanudands

CGCL. Other Melanudands that have *both*:

1. A sum of extractable bases of more than 25.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 15 cm or more between 25 and 75 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*
2. Undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of less than 30 percent throughout one or more layers with andic soil properties that have a total thickness of 25 cm more within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Eutric Vitric Melanudands

CGCM. Other Melanudands which have, undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of less than 30 percent throughout one or more layers with andic soil properties that have a total thickness of 25 cm more within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Vitric Melanudands

CGCN. Other Melanudands that have *both*:

1. Undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*
2. More than 6.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout a layer 50 cm or more thick within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Hydric Pachic Melanudands

CGCO. Other Melanudands that have more than 6.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout a layer 50 cm or more thick within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Pachic Melanudands

CGCP. Other Melanudands that have *both*:

1. A sum of extractable bases of more than 25.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 15 cm or more between 25 and 75 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. Undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Eutric Hydric Melanudands

CGCQ. Other Melanudands that have, undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Hydric Melanudands

CGCR. Other Melanudands that have, between 40 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

Thaptic Melanudands

CGCS. Other Melanudands which have an argillic or a kandic horizon that has *both*:

1. An upper boundary within 125 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*
2. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 35 percent throughout its upper 50 cm.

Ultic Melanudands

CGCT. Other Melanudands.

Typic Melanudands

Placudands

Key to subgroups

CGAA. Placudands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Lithic Placudands

CGAB. Other Placudands that have, in one or more horizons between 50 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and one or more* of the following:

1. Two percent or more redox concentrations; *or*

2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more, and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds, or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*
3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Placudands

CGAC. Other Placudands that have *both*:

1. Extractable bases plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al^{3+} totaling less than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*
2. Undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Acruoxic Hydric Placudands

CGAD. Other Placudands that have extractable bases plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al^{3+} totaling less than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Acruoxic Placudands

CGAE. Other Placudands that have *both*:

1. A sum of extractable bases of more than 25.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 15 cm or more between 25 and 75 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*
2. Undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of less than 30 percent throughout one or more layers with andic soil properties that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Eutric Vitric Placudands

CGAF. Other Placudands which have, undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of less than 30 percent throughout one or more layers with andic soil properties that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Vitric Placudands

CGAG. Other Placudands that have *both*:

1. Undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*
2. More than 6.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout a layer 50 cm or more thick within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Hydric Pachic Placudands

CGAH. Other Placudands that have more than 6.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout a layer 50 cm or more thick within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Pachic Placudands

CGAI. Other Placudands that have, undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Hydric Placudands

CGAJ. Other Placudands that have, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

Thaptic Placudands

CGAK. Other Placudands that have a sum of extractable bases of more than 25.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 15 cm or more between 25 and 75 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Eutric Placudands

CGAL. Other Placudands.

Typic Placudands

USTANDS

Key to great groups

CFA. Ustands which have a duripan that has its upper boundary within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Durustands, p. 169

CFB. Other Ustands.

Haplustands, p. 170

Durustands

Key to subgroups

CFAA. Durustands that have, in one or more horizons between 50 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and one or more* of the following:

1. Two percent or more redox concentrations; *or*
2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more, and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds, or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*
3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Durustands

CFAB. Other Durustands that have, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

Thaptic Durustands

CFAC. Other Durustands that have an umbric epipedon.

Humic Durustands

CFAD. Other Durustands.

Typic Durustands

Haplustands

Key to subgroups

CFBA. Haplustands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Lithic Haplustands

CFBB. Other Haplustands that have, in one or more horizons between 50 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and one or more* of the following:

1. Two percent or more redox concentrations; *or*
2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more, and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds, or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*
3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Haplustands

CFBC. Other Haplustands that have *both*:

1. Extractable bases plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al^{3+} totaling less than 15.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 60 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*
2. Undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of less than 30 percent throughout one or more layers with andic soil properties that have a total thickness of 25 cm more within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Dystric Vitric Haplustands

CFBD. Other Haplustands which have, undried, a 1500-kPa water retention of less than 30 percent throughout one or more layers with andic soil properties that have a total thickness of 25 cm more within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Vitric Haplustands

CFBE. Other Haplustands that have more than 6.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout a layer 50 cm or more thick within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Pachic Haplustands

CFBF. Other Haplustands that have, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

Thaptic Haplustands

CFBG. Other Haplustands which have a calcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 125 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Calcic Haplustands

CFBH. Other Haplustands that have extractable bases plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al^{3+} totaling less than 15.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 60 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Dystric Haplustands

CFBI. Other Haplustands which have an oxic horizon that has its upper boundary within 125 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Oxic Haplustands

CFBJ. Other Haplustands which have an argillic or a kandic horizon that has its upper boundary within 125 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Alfic Haplustands

CFBK. Other Haplustands that have an umbric epipedon.

Humic Haplustands

CFBL. Other Haplustands.

Typic Haplustands

VITRANDS

Key to great groups

CEA. Vitrandes that have an ustic moisture regime.

Ustivitrandes, p. 173

CEB. Other Vitrandes.

Udivitrandes, p. 172

Udivitrandes

Key to subgroups

CEBA. Udivitrandes that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Lithic Udivitrandes

CEBB. Other Udivitrandes that have, in one or more horizons between 50 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and one or more* of the following:

1. Two percent or more redox concentrations; *or*
2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more, and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds, or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*
3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Udivitrandes

CEBC. Other Udivitrandes that have, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

Thaptic Udivitrandes

CEBD. Other Udivitrandes which have *both*:

1. An argillic or a kandic horizon that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, or of the upper boundary of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 35 percent throughout the upper 50 cm of the argillic or kandic horizon.

Ultic Udivitrands

CEBE. Other Udivitrands which have an argillic or a kandic horizon that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, or of the upper boundary of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Alfic Udivitrands

CEBF. Other Udivitrands that have a melanic, a mollic, or an umbric epipedon.

Humic Udivitrands

CEBG. Other Udivitrands.

Typic Udivitrands

Ustivitrands

Key to subgroups

CEAA. Ustivitrands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Lithic Ustivitrands

CEAB. Other Ustivitrands that have, in one or more horizons between 50 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and one or more* of the following:

1. Two percent or more redox concentrations; *or*
2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more, and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds, or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*
3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Ustivitrands

CEAC. Other Ustivitrands that have, between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

Thaptic Ustivitrands

CEAD. Other Ustivitrands which have a calcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 125 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Calcic Ustivitrands

CEAE. Other Ustivitrands that have an umbric epipedon.

Humic Ustivitrands

CEAF. Other Ustivitrands.

Typic Ustivitrands

XERANDS

Key to great groups

CDA. Xerands that have a 1500-kPa water retention of less than 15 percent on air-dried samples *and* of less than 30 percent on undried samples, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 35 cm or more within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Vitrikerands, p. 176

CDB. Other Xerands that have a melanic epipedon.

Melanoxerands, p. 175

CDC. Other Xerands.

Haploxerands, p. 174

Haploxerands

Key to subgroups

CDCA. Haploxerands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Haploxerands

CDCB. Other Haploxerands that have, in one or more horizons between 50 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and one or more* of the following:

1. Two percent or more redox concentrations; *or*
2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more, and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds, or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*
3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Haploxerands

CDCC. Other Haploxerands that have, between 25 and 100 cm from the mineral soil surface, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

Thaptic Haploxerands

CDCD. Other Haploxerands which have a calcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Calcic Haploxerands

CDCE. Other Haploxerands which have an argillic or a kandic horizon that has *both*:

1. An upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 35 percent throughout its upper 50 cm.

Ultic Haploxerands

CDCF. Other Haploxerands which have *both*:

1. A mollic or an umbric epipedon; *and*
2. An argillic or a kandic horizon that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Alfic Humic Haploxerands

CDCG. Other Haploxerands which have an argillic or a kandic horizon that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Alfic Haploxerands

CDCH. Other Haploxerands that have a mollic or an umbric epipedon.

Humic Haploxerands

CDCI. Other Haploxerands.

Typic Haploxerands

Melanoxerands

Key to subgroups

CDBA. Melanoxerands that have more than 6.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout a layer 50 cm or more thick within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Pachic Melanoxerands

CDBB. Other Melanoxerands.

Typic Melanoxerands

Vitrikerands

Key to subgroups

CDAA. Vitrikerands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Vitrikerands

CDAB. Other Vitrikerands that have, in one or more horizons between 50 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface, or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and one or more* of the following:

1. Two percent or more redox concentrations; *or*
2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more, and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds, or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*
3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Vitrikerands

CDAC. Other Vitrikerands that have, between 25 and 100 cm from the mineral soil surface, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

Thaptic Vitrikerands

CDAD. Other Vitrikerands which have *both*:

1. A melanic, a mollic, or an umbric epipedon; and
2. An argillic or a kandic horizon that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Alfic Humic Vitrikerands

CDAE. Other Vitrikerands which have an argillic or a kandic horizon that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Alfic Vitrikerands

CDAF. Other Vitrikerands that have a melanic, a mollic, or an umbric epipedon.

Humic Vitrikerands

CDAG. Other Vitrikerands.

Typic Vitrikerands

Chapter 8

Aridisols

KEY TO SUBORDERS

FA. Aridisols that have an argillic or a natric horizon.

Argids, p. 177

FB. Other Aridisols.

Orthids, p. 205

ARGIDS

Key to great groups

FAA. Argids which have a duripan that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface, and a natric horizon.

Nadurargids, p. 191

FAB. Other Argids which have a duripan that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

Durargids, p. 178

FAC. Other Argids which have a natric horizon, but do not have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

Natrargids, p. 193

FAD. Other Argids which do not have a lithic or paralithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface, *and* have *either*:

1. A petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface; *or*
2. An argillic horizon that has 35 percent or more clay in the fine-earth fraction of some part, and *either*
 - a. A clay increase of 15 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 2.5 cm either within the argillic horizon or at its upper boundary; *or*
 - b. If there is an Ap horizon directly above the argillic horizon, a clay increase of 10 percent or more (absolute) at the upper boundary of the argillic horizon.

Paleargids, p. 200

FAE. Other Argids.

Haplargids, p. 182

Durargids

Key to subgroups

FABA. Durargids which have, above the duripan, *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more.

Vertic Durargids

FABB. Other Durargids that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the soil surface, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and one or more* of the following:

1. A chroma of 0, or a hue of 2.5Y or yellower and a chroma of 1; *or*
2. Redox concentrations and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less; *or*
3. Fifty percent or more chroma of 2 or less and, in horizons with a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the soil surface, a higher exchangeable sodium percentage (or sodium adsorption ratio) than in the zone with aquic conditions; *or*
4. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Durargids

FABC. Other Durargids which have:

1. A duripan that has its upper boundary 18 cm or more below the soil surface; *and*
2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:
 - a. Within 40 cm of the soil surface, if the upper boundary of the duripan is at a depth of 40 cm or more,
 - (1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
 - (2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
 - (3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*
 - b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if the upper boundary of the duripan is at a depth of 18 to 40 cm,

- (1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
- (2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
- (3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

3. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22°C, a difference of 5°C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime; *and*

4. An argillic horizon that has 35 percent or more clay in the fine-earth fraction of some part, and *either*

a. A clay increase of 15 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 2.5 cm either within the argillic horizon or at its upper boundary; *or*

b. If there is an Ap horizon directly above the argillic horizon, a clay increase of 10 percent or more (absolute) at the upper boundary of the argillic horizon.

Abruptic Xerollic Durargids

FABD. Other Durargids which have an argillic horizon that has 35 percent or more clay in the fine-earth fraction of some part, and *either*

1. A clay increase of 15 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 2.5 cm either within the argillic horizon or at its upper boundary; *or*

2. If there is an Ap horizon directly above the argillic horizon, a clay increase of 10 percent or more (absolute) at the upper boundary of the argillic horizon.

Abruptic Durargids

FABE. Other Durargids that have *both*:

1. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22°C, a difference of 5°C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*

b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:

(1) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*

(2) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrixerandic Durargids

FABF. Other Durargids which have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year in 6 or more out of 10 years when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*

b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:

(1) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*

(2) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Ustivitrandid Durargids

FABG. Other Durargids which have:

1. A duripan 18 cm or more below the soil surface that is either not platy or massive, or not indurated in any subhorizon; *and*

2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if the upper boundary of the duripan is 40 cm or more below the soil surface,

(1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if the upper boundary of the duripan is at a depth of 18 to 40 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

3. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22°C, a difference of 5°C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Haploxerollic Durargids

FABH. Other Durargids which do not have a platy or massive duripan that is indurated in any subhorizon.

Haplic Durargids

FABI. Other Durargids that have:

1. A duripan at a depth of 18 cm or more; *and*

2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if the upper boundary of the duripan is 40 cm or more below the soil surface,

(1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if the upper boundary of the duripan is at a depth of 18 to 40 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

3. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22°C , a difference of 5°C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Xerollic Durargids

FABJ. Other Durargids which have a moisture control section that is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year in 6 or more out of 10 years when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher.

Ustalfic Durargids

FABK. Other Durargids.

Typic Durargids

Haplargids

Key to subgroups

FAEA. Haplargids which have:

1. A frigid or colder soil temperature regime and an aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime; *and*

2. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface; *and*

3. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if the lithic contact is between 40 and 50 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if the lithic contact is between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

- (3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13.

Borollic Lithic Haplargids

FAEB. Other Haplargids which have:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface; *and*
2. An argillic horizon that is discontinuous horizontally in each pedon; *and*
3. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:
 - a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if the lithic contact is between 40 and 50 cm from the soil surface,
 - (1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
 - (2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
 - (3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*
 - b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if the lithic contact is between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,
 - (1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
 - (2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
 - (3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

4. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22°C, a difference of 5°C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Lithic Ruptic-Entic Xerollic Haplargids

FAEC. Other Haplargids which have:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface; *and*
2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:
 - a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if the lithic contact is between 40 and 50 cm from the soil surface,

- (1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
- (2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
- (3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if the lithic contact is between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

- (1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
- (2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
- (3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

3. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22°C, a difference of 5°C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, and an arid moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Lithic Xerollic Haplargids

FAED. Other Haplargids which have:

- 1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface; *and*
- 2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:
 - a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if the lithic contact is between 40 and 50 cm from the soil surface,
 - (1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
 - (2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
 - (3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*
 - b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if the lithic contact is between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,
 - (1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
 - (2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

3. A mean annual soil temperature of 8°C or higher, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Lithic Ustollic Haplargids

FAEE. Other Haplargids that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface.

Lithic Haplargids

FAEF. Other Haplargids which have:

1. A frigid or colder soil temperature regime; *and*

2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if there is no paralithic contact within 40 cm of the soil surface,

(1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if there is a paralithic contact between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

3. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Borollic Vertic Haplargids

FAEG. Other Haplargids which have *both*:

1. A frigid or colder soil temperature regime, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime; *and*
2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:
 - a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if there is no paralithic contact within 40 cm of the soil surface,
 - (1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
 - (2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
 - (3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*
 - b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if there is a paralithic contact between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,
 - (1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
 - (2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
 - (3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13.

Borollic HaplargidsFAEH. Other Haplargids which have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:
 - a. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*
 - b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*
2. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22°C, a difference of 5°C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Xerertic HaplargidsFAEI. Other Haplargids which have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. A mean annual soil temperature of 8°C or higher and an aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Ustertic Haplargids

FAEJ. Other Haplargids which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Haplargids

FAEK. Other Haplargids that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the soil surface, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) and *one or more* of the following:

1. A chroma of 0, or a hue of 2.5Y or yellower and a chroma of 1; *or*

2. Redox concentrations and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less; *or*

3. Fifty percent or more chroma of 2 or less and, in horizons with a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the soil surface, a higher exchangeable sodium percentage (or sodium adsorption ratio) than in the zone with aquic conditions; *or*

4. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Haplargids

FAEL. Other Haplargids which have:

1. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top

of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more;
and

2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if there is no paralithic contact within 40 cm of the soil surface,

(1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if there is a paralithic contact between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

3. A mean annual soil temperature of 8°C or higher, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Arenic Ustollic Haplargids

FAEM. Other Haplargids which have:

1. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more;
and

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year in 6 or more out of 10 years when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*

3. A mean annual soil temperature of 8°C or higher, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Arenic Ustalfic Haplargids

FAEN. Other Haplargids that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more.

Arenic Haplargids

FAEO. Other Haplargids which have:

1. A horizon within 100 cm of the soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist; *and*

2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if there is no paralithic contact within 40 cm of the soil surface,

(1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if there is a paralithic contact between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

3. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22°C, a difference of 5°C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Durixerollic Haplargids

FAEP. Other Haplargids that have a horizon within 100 cm of the soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist.

Duric Haplargids

FAEQ. Other Haplargids which have both:

1. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if there is no paralithic contact within 40 cm of the soil surface,

(1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if there is a paralithic contact between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

2. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22°C, a difference of 5°C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Xerollic Haplargids

FAER. Other Haplargids which have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year in 6 or more out of 10 years when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*

2. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22°C, a difference of 5°C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Xeralfic Haplargids

FAES. Other Haplargids which have *both*:

1. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if there is no paralithic contact within 40 cm of the soil surface,

(1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if there is a paralithic contact between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

2. A mean annual soil temperature of 8°C or higher, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Ustollic Haplargids

FAET. Other Haplargids which have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year in 6 or more out of 10 years when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*

2. A mean annual soil temperature of 8°C or higher, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Ustalfic Haplargids

FAEU. Other Haplargids.

Typic Haplargids

Nadurargids

Key to subgroups

FAAA. Nadurargids which have, above the duripan, *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more.

Vertic Nadurargids

FAAB. Other Nadurargids which have *both*:

1. A duripan that is either not platy or massive, or not indurated in any subhorizon; *and*

2. In one or more horizons within 100 cm of the soil surface, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and one or more* of the following:

a. A chroma of 0, or a hue of 2.5Y or yellower and a chroma of 1; *or*

b. Redox concentrations and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less; *or*

c. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Haplic Nadurargids

FAAC. Other Nadurargids that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the soil surface, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and one or more* of the following:

1. A chroma of 0, or a hue of 2.5Y or yellower and a chroma of 1; *or*
2. Redox concentrations and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less; *or*
3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Nadurargids

FAAD. Other Nadurargids which have:

1. A duripan 18 cm or more below the soil surface that is not indurated in any part; *and*
2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:
 - a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if the upper boundary of the duripan is 40 cm or more below the soil surface,
 - (1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
 - (2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
 - (3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*
 - b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if the upper boundary of the duripan is between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,
 - (1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
 - (2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
 - (3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*
3. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22°C, a difference of 5°C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a

depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Haploxerollic Nadurargids

FAAE. Other Nadurargids which have a duripan that is not indurated in any subhorizon.

Haplic Nadurargids

FAAF. Other Nadurargids which have:

1. A duripan 18 cm or more below the soil surface; *and*
2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:
 - a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if the upper boundary of the duripan is 40 cm or more below the soil surface,
 - (1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
 - (2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
 - (3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*
 - b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if the upper boundary of the duripan is between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,
 - (1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
 - (2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
 - (3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*
3. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22°C, a difference of 5°C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Xerollic Nadurargids

FAAG. Other Nadurargids.

Typic Nadurargids

Natrargids

Key to subgroups

FACA. Natrargids which have:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface; *and*

2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if the lithic contact is 40 cm or more below the soil surface,

(1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if the lithic contact is between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

3. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22°C, a difference of 5°C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Lithic Xerollic Natrargids

FACB. Other Natrargids that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface.

Lithic Natrargids

FACC. Other Natrargids which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Natrargids

FACD. Other Natrargids which have:

1. Skeletans on 10 percent or more of the faces of peds that are 2.5 cm or more below the upper boundary of the natric horizon; *and*

2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if there is no paralithic contact within 40 cm of the soil surface,

(1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if there is a paralithic contact between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

3. A frigid or colder soil temperature regime, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Borollic Glossic Natrargids

FACE. Other Natrargids which have *both*:

1. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if there is no paralithic contact within 40 cm of the soil surface,

(1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if there is a paralithic contact between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

2. A frigid or colder soil temperature regime, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Borollic Natrargids

FACF. Other Natrargids that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the soil surface, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and one or more* of the following:

1. A chroma of 0, or a hue of 2.5Y or yellower and a chroma of 1; *or*
2. Redox concentrations and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less; *or*
3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Natrargids

FACG. Other Natrargids which have:

1. A horizon within 100 cm of the soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist; *and*

2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if there is no paralithic contact within 40 cm of the soil surface,

(1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if there is a paralithic contact between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

3. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22°C, a difference of 5°C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Durixerollic Natrargids

FACH. Other Natrargids which have a horizon within 100 cm of the soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist.

Duric Natrargids

FACI. Other Natrargids which have:

1. Skeletans on 10 percent or more of the faces of peds that are 2.5 cm or more below the upper boundary of the natric horizon; *and*

2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if there is no paralithic contact within 40 cm of the soil surface,

(1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if there is a paralithic contact between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

3. An aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Glossic Ustollic Natrargids

FACJ. Other Natrargids which have:

1. An exchangeable sodium percentage of less than 15 (or a sodium adsorption ratio of less than 13) in 50 percent or more of the natric horizon; *and*

2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if there is no paralithic contact within 40 cm of the soil surface,

(1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if there is a paralithic contact between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

3. A mean annual soil temperature of 8°C or higher, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Haplustollic Natrargids

FAK. Other Natrargids which have:

1. An exchangeable sodium percentage of less than 15 (or a sodium adsorption ratio of less than 13) in 50 percent or more of the natric horizon; *and*

2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if there is no paralithic contact within 40 cm of the soil surface,

(1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if there is a paralithic contact between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

- (1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
- (2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
- (3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

3. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22°C, a difference of 5°C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Haploxerollic Natrargids

FACL. Other Natrargids that have an exchangeable sodium percentage of less than 15 (or a sodium adsorption ratio of less than 13) in 50 percent or more of the natric horizon.

Haplic Natrargids

FACM. Other Natrargids which have *both*:

1. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if there is no paralithic contact within 40 cm of the soil surface,

- (1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
- (2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
- (3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if there is a paralithic contact between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

- (1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
- (2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
- (3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

2. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22°C, a difference of 5°C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Xerollic Natrargids

FACN. Other Natrargids which have both:

1. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if there is no paralithic contact within 40 cm of the soil surface,

(1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if there is a paralithic contact between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

2. A mean annual soil temperature of 8°C or higher, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Ustollic Natrargids

FACO. Other Natrargids which have skeletalans on 10 percent or more of the faces of peds that are 2.5 cm or more below the upper boundary of the natric horizon.

Glossic Natrargids

FACP. Other Natrargids.

Typic Natrargids

Paleargids

Key to subgroups

FADA. Paleargids which have:

1. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, between the soil surface and a depth of 40 cm as follows:

a. 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

b. 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

c. $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

2. A frigid or colder soil temperature regime; *and*

3. *One or both* of the following:

- a. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*
- b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Borollic Vertic Paleargids

FADB. Other Paleargids which have *both*:

1. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if there is no petrocalcic horizon within 40 cm of the soil surface,

(1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if there is a petrocalcic horizon with an upper boundary between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

2. A frigid or colder soil temperature regime, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Borollic Paleargids

FADC. Other Paleargids which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a

layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Paleargids

FADD. Other Paleargids which have:

1. A petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface; *and*

2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if the upper boundary of the petrocalcic horizon is 40 cm or more below the soil surface,

(1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if the upper boundary of the petrocalcic horizon is between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

3. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22°C, a difference of 5°C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Petrocalcic Xerollic Paleargids

FADE. Other Paleargids which have:

1. A petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface; *and*

2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if the upper boundary of the petrocalcic horizon is 40 cm or more below the soil surface,

- (1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
- (2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
- (3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if the upper boundary of the petrocalcic horizon is between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

- (1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
- (2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
- (3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

3. A mean annual soil temperature that is 8°C or higher, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Petrocalcic Ustollic Paleargids

FADF. Other Paleargids which have:

- 1. A petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface; *and*
- 2. A moisture control section that is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year in 6 or more out of 10 years when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*
- 3. A mean annual soil temperature that is 8°C or higher, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Petrocalcic Ustalfic Paleargids

FADG. Other Paleargids which have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

Petrocalcic Paleargids

FADH. Other Paleargids which have a horizon within 100 cm of the soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist.

Duric Paleargids

FADI. Other Paleargids which have *both*:

- 1. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, between the soil surface and a depth of 40 cm as follows:

- a. 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
- b. 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
- c. $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

2. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22°C, a difference of 5°C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Xerollic Paleargids

FADJ. Other Paleargids which have *both*:

- 1. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, between the soil surface and a depth of 40 cm as follows:
 - a. 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
 - b. 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
 - c. $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*
- 2. An aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Ustollic Paleargids

FADK. Other Paleargids which have *both*:

- 1. A moisture control section that is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year in 6 or more out of 10 years when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*
- 2. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22°C, a difference of 5°C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Xeralfic Paleargids

FADL. Other Paleargids which have *both*:

- 1. A moisture control section that is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year in 6 or more out of 10 years when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*
- 2. A mean annual soil temperature that is 8°C or higher, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Ustalfic Paleargids

FADM. Other Paleargids.

Typic Paleargids**ORTHIDS****Key to great groups**

FBA. Orthids which:

1. Have a salic horizon that has its upper boundary within 75 cm of the soil surface; *and*
2. Are saturated with water within 100 cm of the soil surface for 1 month or more per year in most years (or artificially drained); *and*
3. Do not have a duripan that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

Salorthids, p. 231

FBB. Other Orthids which have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface and is not overlain by a duripan.

Paleorthids, p. 228

FBC. Other Orthids which have a duripan that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

Durorthids, p. 222

FBD. Other Orthids which have a gypsic or petrogypsic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

Gypsiorthids, p. 227

FBE. Other Orthids which:

1. Have a calcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface; *and*
2. In all parts above the calcic horizon, after the materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm have been mixed, are either calcareous or have a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser.

Calciorthids, p. 205

FBF. Other Orthids.

Camborthids, p. 212**Calciorthids**Key to subgroups

FBEA. Calciorthids which have:

1. A frigid soil temperature regime, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime; *and*
2. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface; *and*

3. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to noncarbonate clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if the lithic contact is between 40 and 50 cm below the soil surface,

(1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if the lithic contact is between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio between 1 and 13.

Borollic Lithic Calciorthis

FBEB. Other Calciorthis which have *both*:

1. A frigid soil temperature regime, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime; *and*

2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to noncarbonate clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if there is no paralithic contact within 40 cm of the soil surface,

(1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio})$, or more, with a

sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if there is a paralithic contact between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio between 1 and 13.

Borollic Calciorthids

FBEC. Other Calciorthids which have:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface; *and*

2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to noncarbonate clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if the lithic contact is between 40 and 50 cm below the soil surface,

(1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if the lithic contact is between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

3. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22°C, a difference of 5°C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Lithic Xerollic Calciorthisds

FBED. Other Calciorthisds which have:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface; *and*
2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to noncarbonate clay, as follows:
 - a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if the lithic contact is between 40 and 50 cm below the soil surface,
 - (1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
 - (2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
 - (3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*
 - b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if the lithic contact is between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,
 - (1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
 - (2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
 - (3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*
3. An aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Lithic Ustollic Calciorthisds

FBEE. Other Calciorthisds that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface.

Lithic Calciorthisds

FBEF. Other Calciorthisds which have *both*:

1. A horizon within 100 cm of the soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist; *and*

2. In one or more horizons within 100 cm of the soil surface, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and one or more* of the following:

- a. A chroma of 0, or a hue of 2.5Y or yellower and a chroma of 1; *or*
- b. Redox concentrations and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less; *or*
- c. Fifty percent or more chroma of 2 or less and, in horizons with a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the soil surface, a higher exchangeable sodium percentage (or sodium adsorption ratio) than in the zone with aquic conditions; *or*
- d. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Duric Calciorthids

FBEG. Other Calciorthids that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the soil surface, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage), *and one or more* of the following:

1. A chroma of 0, or a hue of 2.5Y or yellower and a chroma of 1; *or*
2. Redox concentrations and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less; *or*
3. Fifty percent or more chroma of 2 or less and, in horizons with a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the soil surface, a higher exchangeable sodium percentage (or sodium adsorption ratio) than in the zone with aquic conditions; *or*
4. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Calciorthids

FBEH. Other Calciorthids which have:

1. A horizon within 100 cm of the soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist; *and*
2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to noncarbonate clay, as follows:
 - a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if there is no paralithic contact within 40 cm of the soil surface,
 - (1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if there is a paralithic contact between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

3. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22°C, a difference of 5°C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Durixerollic Calciorthids

FBEI. Other Calciorthids which have a horizon within 100 cm of the soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist.

Duric Calciorthids

FBEJ. Other Calciorthids which have *both*:

1. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to noncarbonate clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if there is no paralithic contact within 40 cm of the soil surface,

(1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if there is a paralithic contact between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

2. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22°C, a difference of 5°C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Xerollic Calciorthis

FBEK. Other Calciorthis which have *both*:

1. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to noncarbonate clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if there is no paralithic contact within 40 cm of the soil surface,

(1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if there is a paralithic contact between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

2. An aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Ustollic Calciorthis

FBEL. Other Calciorthis which have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year in 6 or more out of 10 years when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*
2. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22°C, a difference of 5°C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Xerochreptic Calciorthis

FBEM. Other Calciorthis which have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year in 6 or more out of 10 years when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*
2. An aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Ustochreptic Calciorthis

FBEN. Other Calciorthis which have reddish peds below the calcic horizon that either are weakly calcareous or noncalcareous but are coated with lime.

Argic Calciorthis

FBEO. Other Calciorthis.

Typic Calciorthis

Camborthids

Key to subgroups

FBFA. Camborthids which have:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface; *and*
2. A frigid or colder soil temperature regime, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime; *and*
3. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:
 - a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if the lithic contact is between 40 and 50 cm below the soil surface,
 - (1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

- (2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
- (3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if the lithic contact is between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

- (1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
- (2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
- (3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13.

Borollic Lithic Camborthids

FBFB. Other Camborthids which have:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface; *and*
2. A horizon within 100 cm of the soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist; *and*
3. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if the lithic contact is between 40 and 50 cm below the soil surface,

- (1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
- (2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
- (3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if the lithic contact is between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

- (1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
- (2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
- (3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

4. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22°C, a difference of 5°C or more between mean

summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Durixerollic Lithic Camborthids

FBFC. Other Camborthids which have:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface; *and*
2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:
 - a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if the lithic contact is between 40 and 50 cm below the soil surface,
 - (1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
 - (2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
 - (3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*
 - b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if the lithic contact is between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,
 - (1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
 - (2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
 - (3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*
3. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22°C, a difference of 5°C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Lithic Xerollic Camborthids

FBFD. Other Camborthids that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface.

Lithic Camborthids

FBFE. Other Camborthids that have an exchangeable sodium percentage of 40 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 45 or more) throughout the cambic horizon, and a low or very low saturated hydraulic conductivity.

Natric Camborthids

FBFF. Other Camborthids which have:

1. A frigid or colder temperature regime; *and*

2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, between the soil surface and a depth of 40 cm as follows:

- a. 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
- b. 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
- c. $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

3. *One or both* of the following:

- a. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*
- b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Borollic Vertic Camborthids

FBFG. Other Camborthids which have *both*:

1. A frigid or colder soil temperature regime, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime; *and*

2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:

- a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if there is no paralithic contact within 40 cm of the soil surface,
 - (1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
 - (2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
 - (3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*
- b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if there is a paralithic contact between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,
 - (1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
 - (2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13.

Borollic Camborthids

FBFH. Other Camborthids which have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22°C, a difference of 5°C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Xerertic Camborthids

FBFI. Other Camborthids which have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. An aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Ustertic Camborthids

FBFJ. Other Camborthids which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100

cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Camborthids

FBFK. Other Camborthids which have *both*:

1. A horizon within 100 cm of the soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist; *and*
2. In one or more horizons within 100 cm of the soil surface, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and one or more* of the following:
 - a. A chroma of 0, or a hue of 2.5Y or yellower and a chroma of 1; *or*
 - b. Redox concentrations and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less; *or*
 - c. Fifty percent or more chroma of 2 or less and, in horizons with a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the soil surface, a higher exchangeable sodium percentage (or sodium adsorption ratio) than in the zone with aquic conditions; *or*
 - d. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Duric Camborthids

FBFL. Other Camborthids that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the soil surface, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and one or more* of the following:

1. A chroma of 0, or a hue of 2.5Y or yellower and a chroma of 1; *or*
2. Redox concentrations and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less; *or*
3. Fifty percent or more chroma of 2 or less, and a higher exchangeable sodium percentage (or sodium adsorption ratio) in more than half the thickness of the horizons between the soil surface and a depth of 50 cm than in the saturated zone; *or*
4. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Camborthids

FBFM. Other Camborthids which have:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year in 6 or more out of 10 years when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*

2. An aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime; *and*
3. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:
 - a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
 - b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:

- (1) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*

- (2) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrixerandic Camborthids

FBFN. Other Camborthids which have:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year in 6 or more out of 10 years when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*
2. A hyperthermic, thermic, or mesic soil temperature regime, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime; *and*
3. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:
 - a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
 - b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - (1) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - (2) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Ustivitrandid Camborthids

FBFO. Other Camborthids which have:

1. A horizon within 100 cm of the soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist; *and*

2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if there is no paralithic contact within 40 cm of the soil surface,

(1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if there is a paralithic contact between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

3. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22°C, a difference of 5°C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Durixerollic Camborthids

FBFP. Other Camborthids which have a horizon within 100 cm of the soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist.

Duric Camborthids

FBFQ. Other Camborthids which have *either* 0.2 percent or more organic carbon at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm either to a depth of 125 cm, or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower.

Fluventic Camborthids

FBFR. Other Camborthids that have *both*:

1. An anthropic epipedon; *and*

2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if there is no paralithic contact within 40 cm of the soil surface,

(1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if there is a paralithic contact between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13.

Anthropic Camborthids

FBFS. Other Camborthids which have *both*:

1. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if there is no paralithic contact within 40 cm of the soil surface,

(1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if there is a paralithic contact between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

2. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22°C, a difference of 5°C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Xerollic Camborthids

FBFT. Other Camborthids which have *both*:

1. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if there is no paralithic contact within 40 cm of the soil surface,

(1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if there is a paralithic contact between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

2. An aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Ustollic Camborthids

FBFU. Other Camborthids which have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year in 6 or more out of 10 years when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*

2. An aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Xerochreptic Camborthids

FBFV. Other Camborthids which have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year in 6 or more out of 10 years when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*

2. A hyperthermic, thermic, or mesic soil temperature regime, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Ustochreptic Camborthids

FBFW. Other Camborthids.

Typic Camborthids

Durorthids

Key to subgroups

FBCA. Durorthids which have *both*:

1. A duripan that is not indurated in any subhorizon; *and*
2. In one or more horizons within 100 cm of the soil surface, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and one or more* of the following:
 - a. A chroma of 0, or a hue of 2.5Y or yellower and a chroma of 1; *or*
 - b. Redox concentrations and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less; *or*
 - c. Fifty percent or more chroma of 2 or less, and a higher exchangeable sodium percentage (or sodium adsorption ratio) in more than half the thickness of the horizons between the soil surface and 50 cm depth than in the saturated zone; *or*
 - d. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aqueptic Durorthids

FBCB. Other Durorthids that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the soil surface, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and one or more* of the following:

1. A chroma of 0, or a hue of 2.5Y or yellower and a chroma of 1; *or*
2. Redox concentrations and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less; *or*
3. Fifty percent or more chroma of 2 or less, and a higher exchangeable sodium percentage (or sodium adsorption ratio) in more than half the thickness of the horizons between the soil surface and 50 cm depth than in the saturated zone; *or*
4. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Durorthids

FBCC. Other Durorthids which have:

1. An aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime; *and*
2. A moisture control section that is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year in 6 or more out of 10 years when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*
3. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:
 - a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
 - b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - (1) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - (2) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrixerandic Durorthids

FBCD. Other Durorthids which have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year in 6 or more out of 10 years when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*
2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:
 - a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
 - b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - (1) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*

(2) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Ustivitrandid Durorthids

FBCE. Other Durorthids which have:

1. A duripan that is not indurated in any subhorizon; *and*
2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to noncarbonate clay, as follows:
 - a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if the upper boundary of the duripan is 40 cm or more below the soil surface,
 - (1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
 - (2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
 - (3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*
 - b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if the upper boundary of the duripan is between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,
 - (1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
 - (2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
 - (3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*
3. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22°C, a difference of 5°C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Haploxerollic Durorthids

FBCF. Other Durorthids which have:

1. A duripan that is not indurated in any subhorizon; *and*
2. An aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime; *and*

3. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to noncarbonate clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if the upper boundary of the duripan is 40 cm or more below the soil surface,

(1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if the upper boundary of the duripan is between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio between 1 and 13.

Haplustollic Durorthids

FBCG. Other Durorthids which have *both*:

1. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to noncarbonate clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if the upper boundary of the duripan is 40 cm or more below the soil surface,

(1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if the upper boundary of the duripan is between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio between 1 and 13; *and*

2. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22°C, a difference of 5°C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Xerollic Durorthids

FBCB. Other Durorthids which have *both*:

1. An aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year in 6 or more out of 10 years when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher.

Xerochreptic Durorthids

FBCI. Other Durorthids which have *both*:

1. An aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime; *and*

2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to noncarbonate clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if the upper boundary of the duripan is 40 cm or more below the soil surface,

(1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if the upper boundary of the duripan is between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio between 1 and 13.

Ustollic Durorthids

FBCJ. Other Durorthids which have a moisture control section that is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year in 6 or more out of 10 years when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher.

Ustochreptic Durorthids

FBCK. Other Durorthids which have a duripan that is not indurated in any subhorizon.

Entic Durorthids

FBCL. Other Durorthids.

Typic Durorthids

Gypsiorthids

Key to subgroups

FBDA. Gypsiorthids which have a petrogypsic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

Petrogypsic Gypsiorthids

FBDB. Other Gypsiorthids that have *both*:

1. A calcic horizon above the gypsic horizon; *and*
2. A gypsic horizon for which the product of its gypsum percentage multiplied by its thickness in centimeters, above a depth of 150 cm from the soil surface, is less than 3,000.

Calcic Gypsiorthids

FBDC. Other Gypsiorthids that have a gypsic horizon for which the product of its gypsum percentage multiplied by its thickness in centimeters, above a depth of 150 cm from the soil surface, is less than 3,000.

Cambic Gypsiorthids

FBDD. Other Gypsiorthids.

Typic Gypsiorthids

Paleorthids

Key to subgroups

FBBA. Paleorthids which have *both*:

1. A frigid or colder soil temperature regime, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime; *and*
2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to noncarbonate clay, as follows:
 - a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if the upper boundary of the petrocalcic horizon is 40 cm or more below the soil surface,
 - (1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
 - (2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
 - (3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*
 - b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if the upper boundary of the petrocalcic horizon is between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,
 - (1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
 - (2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
 - (3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio between 1 and 13.

Borollic Paleorthids

FBBB. Other Paleorthids that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the soil surface, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and one or more* of the following:

1. A chroma of 0, or a hue of 2.5Y or yellower and a chroma of 1; *or*
2. Redox concentrations and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less; *or*
3. Fifty percent or more chroma of 2 or less, and a higher exchangeable sodium percentage (or sodium adsorption ratio) in more than half the

thickness of the horizons between the soil surface and 50 cm depth than in the saturated zone; *or*

4. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Paleorthids

FBBC. Other Paleorthids which have *both*:

1. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22°C, a difference of 5°C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime; *and*

2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to noncarbonate clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if the upper boundary of the petrocalcic horizon is 40 cm or more below the soil surface,

(1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if the upper boundary of the petrocalcic horizon is between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio between 1 and 13.

Xerollic Paleorthids

FBBD. Other Paleorthids which have *both*:

1. An aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime; *and*

2. A weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to noncarbonate clay, as follows:

a. In the upper 40 cm of the soil, if the upper boundary of the petrocalcic horizon is 40 cm or more below the soil surface,

(1) 0.60 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.15 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio between 1 and 13; *or*

b. In the upper 18 cm of the soil, if the upper boundary of the petrocalcic horizon is between 18 and 40 cm from the soil surface,

(1) 0.72 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*

(2) 0.18 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*

(3) $0.77 - (0.046 \times \text{sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio between 1 and 13.

Ustollic Paleorthids

FBBE. Other Paleorthids which have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year in 6 or more out of 10 years when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*

2. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22°C, a difference of 5°C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Xerochreptic Paleorthids

FBBF. Other Paleorthids which have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year in 6 or more out of 10 years when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*

2. A mesic, thermic, or hyperthermic soil temperature regime, and an aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Ustochreptic Paleorthids

FBBG. Other Paleorthids.

Typic Paleorthids

Salorthids

Key to subgroups

FBAA. Salorthids that have a weighted average percentage of organic carbon, relative to the weighted average ratio of sand to noncarbonate clay, between the soil surface and a depth of 40 cm as follows:

1. 0.60 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 1.0 or less; *or*
2. 0.15 or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio of 13 or more; *or*
3. $0.64 - (0.038 \times \text{sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio})$, or more, with a sand/noncarbonate-clay ratio between 1 and 13.

Aquollic Salorthids

FBAB. Other Salorthids.

Typic Salorthids

Chapter 9

Entisols

KEY TO SUBORDERS

KA. Entisols that have *one or more* of the following:

1. Aquic conditions and sulfidic materials within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. Permanent saturation with water, and a reduced matrix in all horizons below a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface; *or*
3. In a layer between 40 and 50 cm from the mineral soil surface, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and one or more* of the following:
 - a. A texture finer than loamy fine sand *and*, in 50 percent or more of the matrix, *one or more* of the following:
 - (1) A chroma of 0; *or*
 - (2) A chroma of 1 or less and a color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
 - (3) A chroma of 2 or less, and redox concentrations; *or*
 - b. A texture of loamy fine sand or coarser *and*, in 50 percent or more of the matrix, *one or more* of the following:
 - (1) A chroma of 0; *or*
 - (2) A hue of 10YR or redder, a color value, moist, of 4 or more, and a chroma of 1; *or*
 - (3) A hue of 10YR or redder, a chroma of 2 or less, and redox concentrations; *or*
 - (4) A hue of 2.5Y or yellower, a chroma of 3 or less, and distinct or prominent redox concentrations; *or*
 - (5) A hue of 2.5Y or yellower and a chroma of 1; *or*
 - (6) A hue of 5GY, 5G, 5BG, or 5B; *or*
 - (7) Any color if it results from uncoated sand grains; *or*
 - c. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquents, p. 234

KB. Other Entisols which have, in one or more layers between 25 and 100 cm from the mineral soil surface, 3 percent or more (by volume) fragments of diagnostic horizons that are not arranged in any discernible order.

Arents, p. 241

KC. Other Entisols that have less than 35 percent (by volume) rock fragments and a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser, in all layers¹ between either an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic, paralithic, or petroferic contact, whichever is shallower.

Psamments, p. 262

KD. Other Entisols which do not have a lithic or paralithic contact within 25 cm of the mineral soil surface, and have:

1. A slope of less than 25 percent; *and*
2. *Either* 0.2 percent or more organic carbon² at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*
3. A mean annual soil temperature above 0°C.

Fluents, p. 242

KE. Other Entisols.

Orthents, p. 251

AQUENTS

Key to great groups

KAA. Aqents that have sulfidic materials within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Sulfaqents, p. 240

KAB. Other Aqents that have *both*:

1. An *n* value of more than 0.7, *and* 8 percent or more clay in the fine-earth fraction of all horizons between 20 and 50 cm from the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. A mean annual soil temperature above 0°C.

Hydraqents, p. 240

KAC. Other Aqents that have a cryic soil temperature regime.

Cryaqents, p. 235

¹ Lamellae that are either less than 1 cm thick or too few to meet the requirements for an argillic horizon may have a texture of sandy loam.

² The carbon should be of Holocene age, not fossil carbon from transported fragments of bedrock or from buried Pleistocene deposits. The mean residence time of the carbon should be less than 11,000 years B.P.

KAD. Other Aquents that have a sandy particle size in all horizons between either the Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Psammaquents, p. 240

KAE. Other Aquents that have *either* 0.2 percent or more organic carbon³ at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower.

Fluvaquents, p. 237

KAF. Other Aquents that have episaturation.

Epiaquents, p. 236

KAG. Other Aquents.

Endoaquents, p. 236

Cryaquents

Key to subgroups

KACA. Cryaquents which have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*
2. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
3. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Aquandic Cryaquents

KACB. Other Cryaquents.

Typic Cryaquents

³ See footnote 2.

Endoaquents

Key to subgroups

KAGA. Endoaquents which have, within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. Sulfidic materials; *or*
2. A horizon 15 cm or more thick that has all the characteristics of a sulfuric horizon, except that it has a pH value between 3.5 and 4.0.

Sulfic Endoaquents

KAGB. Other Endoaquents that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Endoaquents

KAGC. Other Endoaquents that have, in one or more horizons between either the Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 75 cm, colors in 50 percent or more of the matrix as follows:

1. A hue of 2.5Y or redder, a color value, moist, of 6 or more, and a chroma of 3 or more; *or*
2. A hue of 2.5Y or redder, a color value, moist, of 5 or less, and a chroma of 2 or more; *or*
3. A hue of 5Y and a chroma of 3 or more; *or*
4. A hue of 5Y or redder and a chroma of 2 or more if there are no redox concentrations.

Aeric Endoaquents

KAGD. Other Endoaquents which have *both*:

1. An Ap horizon, or an A horizon 15 cm or more thick, that has a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample); *and*
2. A base saturation (by NH_4OAc) of less than 50 percent at a depth of 100 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Humaqueptic Endoaquents

KAGE. Other Endoaquents which have either an Ap horizon, or an A horizon 15 cm or more thick, that has a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample).

Mollic Endoaquents

KAGF. Other Endoaquents.

Typic Endoaquents

Epiaquents

Key to subgroups

KAFA. Epiaquents that have, in one or more horizons between either the Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a

depth of 75 cm, colors in 50 percent or more of the matrix as follows:

1. A hue of 2.5Y or redder, a color value, moist, of 6 or more, and a chroma of 3 or more; *or*
2. A hue of 2.5Y or redder, a color value, moist, of 5 or less, and a chroma of 2 or more; *or*
3. A hue of 5Y and a chroma of 3 or more; *or*
4. A chroma of 2 or more if there are no redox concentrations.

Aeric Epiaquents

KAFB. Other Epiaquents which have *both*:

1. An Ap horizon, or an A horizon 15 cm or more thick, that has a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample); *and*
2. A base saturation (by NH₄OAc) of less than 50 percent at a depth of 100 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Humaqueptic Epiaquents

KAFC. Other Epiaquents which have either an Ap horizon, or an A horizon 15 cm or more thick, that has a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample).

Mollic Epiaquents

KAFD. Other Epiaquents.

Typic Epiaquents

Fluvaquents

Key to subgroups

KAEA. Fluvaquents which have, within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. Sulfidic materials; *or*
2. A horizon 15 cm or more thick that has all the characteristics of a sulfuric horizon, except that it has a pH value between 3.5 and 4.0.

Sulfic Fluvaquents

KAEB. Other Fluvaquents which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a

depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Fluvaquents

KAEC. Other Fluvaquents which have *both*:

1. A buried Histosol, or a buried histic epipedon, that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. A difference of less than 5°C between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures, either at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface or at a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Thapto-Histic Tropic Fluvaquents

KAED. Other Fluvaquents which have a buried Histosol, or a buried histic epipedon, that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Thapto-Histic Fluvaquents

KAEE. Other Fluvaquents which have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*
2. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
3. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Aquandic Fluvaquents

KAEF. Other Fluvaquents that have *both*:

1. A difference of less than 5°C between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures either at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface or at a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*
2. In one or more horizons between either the Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 75

cm, colors in 50 percent or more of the matrix as follows:

- a. A hue of 2.5Y or redder, a color value, moist, of 6 or more, and a chroma of 3 or more; *or*
- b. A hue of 2.5Y or redder, a color value, moist, of 5 or less, and a chroma of 2 or more; *or*
- c. A hue of 5Y and a chroma of 3 or more; *or*
- d. A chroma of 2 or more if there are no redox concentrations.

Aeric Tropic Fluvaquents

KAEG. Other Fluvaquents that have, in one or more horizons between either the Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 75 cm, colors in 50 percent or more of the matrix as follows:

1. A hue of 2.5Y or redder, a color value, moist, of 6 or more, and a chroma of 3 or more; *or*
2. A hue of 2.5Y or redder, a color value, moist, of 5 or less, and a chroma of 2 or more; *or*
3. A hue of 5Y and a chroma of 3 or more; *or*
4. A chroma of 2 or more if there are no redox concentrations.

Aeric Fluvaquents

KAEH. Other Fluvaquents that have a difference of less than 5°C between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures, either at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface or at a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Tropic Fluvaquents

KAEI. Other Fluvaquents which have *both*:

1. An Ap horizon, or an A horizon 15 cm or more thick, that has a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample); *and*
2. A base saturation (by NH₄OAc) of less than 50 percent at a depth of 100 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Humaqueptic Fluvaquents

KAEJ. Other Fluvaquents which have an Ap horizon, or an A horizon 15 cm or more thick, that has a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample).

Mollic Fluvaquents

KAEK. Other Fluvaquents.

Typic Fluvaquents

Hydraquents

Key to subgroups

KABA. All Hydraquents (provisionally).

Typic Hydraquents

Psammaquents

Key to subgroups

KADA. Psammaquents that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Psammaquents

KADB. Other Psammaquents which have a horizon 5 cm or more thick, either below an Ap horizon or at a depth of 18 cm or more from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, that has *one or more* of the following:

1. In 25 percent or more of each pedon, cementation by organic matter and aluminum, with or without iron; *or*
2. Aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.25 or more, and half that amount or less in an overlying horizon; *or*
3. An ODOE value of 0.12 or more, and a value half as high or lower in an overlying horizon.

Spodic Psammaquents

KADC. Other Psammaquents which have *both*:

1. An Ap horizon, or an A horizon 15 cm or more thick, that has a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample); *and*
2. A base saturation (by NH₄OAc) of less than 50 percent in horizons with a total thickness of 50 cm or more within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Humaqueptic Psammaquents

KADD. Other Psammaquents which have either an Ap horizon, or an A horizon 15 cm or more thick, that has a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample).

Mollic Psammaquents

KADE. Other Psammaquents.

Typic Psammaquents

Sulfaquents

Key to subgroups

KAAA. Sulfaquents that have a histic epipedon.

Histic Sulfaquents

KAAB. Other Sulfaquents which have *both*:

1. Sulfidic materials that have their upper boundary 30 cm or more below the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. An *n* value of 0.7 or less in one or more horizons between 20 and 50 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Haplic Sulfaquents

KAAC. Other Sulfaquents.

Typic Sulfaquents

ARENTS

Key to great groups

KBA. Arents that have an ustic moisture regime.

Ustarents, p. 242

KBB. Other Arents that have a xeric moisture regime.

Xerarents, p. 242

KBC. Other Arents that have a torric moisture regime.

Torriarents, p. 241

KBD. Other Arents.

Udarents, p. 241

Torriarents

Torriarents are the Arents that have a torric soil moisture regime.

**E
N
T**

Udarents

Key to subgroups

KBDA. Udarents that have fragments of an argillic horizon with a base saturation (by sum of cations) of 35 percent or more within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Alfic Udarents

KBDB. Other Udarents that have fragments of an argillic horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Ultic Udarents

KBDC. Other Udarents that have fragments of a mollic epipedon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Mollic Udarents

KBDD. Other Udarents.

Udarents

Ustarents

Ustarents are the Arents that have an ustic soil moisture regime.

Xerarents

Key to subgroups

KBBA. Xerarents that have fragments of an argillic horizon with a base saturation (by sum of cations) of 35 percent or more within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Alfic Xerarents

KBBB. Other Xerarents.

Xerarents

FLUVENTS

Key to great groups

KDA. Fluvents that have a cryic soil temperature regime.

Cryofluvents, p. 242

KDB. Other Fluvents that have a xeric moisture regime.

Xerofluvents, p. 249

KDC. Other Fluvents that have an ustic moisture regime.

Ustifluvents, p. 247

KDD. Other Fluvents that have a torric moisture regime.

Torrifluvents, p. 243

KDE. Other Fluvents that have an isomesic, isothermic, or isohyperthermic soil temperature regime.

Tropofluvents, p. 246

KDF. Other Fluvents.

Udifluvents, p. 246

Cryofluvents

Key to subgroups

KDAA. Cryofluvents that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Cryofluvents

KDAB. Other Cryofluvents that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more

within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandid Cryofluvents

KDAC. Other Cryofluvents that have, in one or more horizons within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Cryofluvents

KDAD. Other Cryofluvents that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Cryofluvents

KDAE. Other Cryofluvents which have an Ap horizon, or an A horizon 15 cm or more thick, that has a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample).

Mollic Cryofluvents

KDAF. Other Cryofluvents.

Typic Cryofluvents

Torrifluvents

Key to subgroups

KDDA. Torrifluvents which have:

1. *One or both* of the following:
 - a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
 - b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either

a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. A moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*

3. A hyperthermic, thermic, mesic, frigid, or an *iso* soil temperature regime, and a torric moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Ustertic Torrifuvents

KDDB. Other Torrifuvents which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Torrifuvents

KDDC. Other Torrifuvents which have:

1. A moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*

2. A thermic, mesic, or frigid soil temperature regime, and a torric moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime; *and*

3. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*

b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:

(1) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*

(2) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus

1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrixerandic Torrifuvents

KDDD. Other Torrifuvents that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both of* the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandidic Torrifuvents

KDDE. Other Torrifuvents that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Torrifuvents

KDDF. Other Torrifuvents that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 150 cm of the soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Torrifuvents

KDDG. Other Torrifuvents which have:

1. A horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist; *and*
2. A moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*
3. A thermic, mesic, or frigid soil temperature regime, and a torric moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Durorthidic Xeric Torrifuvents

KDDH. Other Torrifuvents which have a horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either contains 20 percent or more (by

volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist.

Durorthidic Torrifuvents

KDDI. Other Torrifuvents which have *both*:

1. A moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*
2. A torric moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Ustic Torrifuvents

KDDJ. Other Torrifuvents which have *both*:

1. A moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*
2. A thermic, mesic, or frigid soil temperature regime, and a torric moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Xeric Torrifuvents

KDDK. Other Torrifuvents that have an anthropic epipedon.

Anthropic Torrifuvents

KDDL. Other Torrifuvents.

Typic Torrifuvents

Tropofluvents

Key to subgroups

KDEA. All Tropofluvents (provisionally).

Typic Tropofluvents

Udifluvents

Key to subgroups

KDFA. Udifluvents that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Udifluvents

KDFB. Other Udifluvents that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:

a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*

b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandic Udifluvents

KDFC. Other Udifluvents that have *either*:

1. In one or more horizons within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *or*

2. In one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, a color value, moist, of 4 or more and either a chroma of 0 or a hue of 5GY, 5G, 5BG, or 5B, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Udifluvents

KDFD. Other Udifluvents that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Udifluvents

KDFE. Other Udifluvents which have an Ap horizon, or an A horizon 15 cm or more thick, that has a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample).

Mollic Udifluvents

KDFF. Other Udifluvents.

Typic Udifluvents

Ustifluvents

Key to subgroups

KDCA. Ustifluvents which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Ustifluents

KDCB. Other Ustifluents that have anthraquic conditions.

Anthraquic Ustifluents

KDCC. Other Ustifluents that have *either*:

1. In one or more horizons within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *or*
2. In one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, a color value, moist, of 4 or more and either a chroma of 0 or a hue of 5GY, 5G, 5BG, or 5B, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Ustifluents

KDCD. Other Ustifluents that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Ustifluents

KDCE. Other Ustifluents which, if neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *one* of the following:

1. A frigid soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in all parts for four tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
2. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
3. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is moist in some or all parts for less than 180 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Aridic Ustifluents

KDCF. Other Ustifluents which, if neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *one* of the following:

1. A frigid soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 105 cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*

2. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for less than four tenths of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*

3. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Udic Ustifluvents

KDCG. Other Ustifluvents which have an Ap horizon, or an A horizon 15 cm or more thick, that has a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample).

Mollic Ustifluvents

KDCH. Other Ustifluvents.

Typic Ustifluvents

Xerofluvents

Key to subgroups

KDBA. Xerofluvents which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Xerofluvents

KDBB. Other Xerofluvents which have:

1. In one or more horizons within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *or*

2. In one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, a color value, moist, of 4 or

more and either a chroma of 0 or a hue bluer than 10Y, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*

3. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

a. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*

b. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*

c. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:

(1) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*

(2) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Aquandic Xerofluents

KDBC. Other Xerofluents that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Xerofluents

KDBD. Other Xerofluents that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:

a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*

b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron

percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandid Xerofluvents

KDBE. Other Xerofluvents that have *either*:

1. In one or more horizons within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *or*
2. In one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, a color value, moist, of 4 or more and either a chroma of 0 or a hue of 5GY, 5G, 5BG, or 5B; and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Xerofluvents

KDBF. Other Xerofluvents that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Xerofluvents

KDBG. Other Xerofluvents which have a horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist.

Durorthidic Xerofluvents

KDBH. Other Xerofluvents which have an Ap horizon, or an A horizon 15 cm or more thick, that has a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample).

Mollic Xerofluvents

KDBI. Other Xerofluvents.

Typic Xerofluvents

ORTHENTS

Key to great groups

KEA. Orthents that have a cryic or pergelic soil temperature regime.

Cryorthents, p. 252

KEB. Other Orthents that have a torric moisture regime.

Torriorthents, p. 253

KEC. Other Orthents that have a xeric moisture regime.

Xerorthents, p. 260

KED. Other Orthents that have a udic moisture regime, and a difference of less than 5°C between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface.

Troporthents, p. 256

KEE. Other Orthents that have an ustic moisture regime.

Ustorthents, p. 258

KEF. Other Orthents.

Udorthents, p. 257

Cryorthents

Key to subgroups

KEAA. Cryorthents that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Cryorthents

KEAB. Other Cryorthents that have a mean annual soil temperature of 0°C or lower.

Pergelic Cryorthents

KEAC. Other Cryorthents that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:

a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*

b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandic Cryorthents

KEAD. Other Cryorthents that have, in one or more horizons within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Cryorthents

KEAE. Other Cryorthents that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Cryorthents

KEAF. Other Cryorthents which have lamellae within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface that meet all the requirements for an argillic horizon except thickness.⁴

Alfic Cryorthents

KEAG. Other Cryorthents.

Typic Cryorthents

Torriorthents

Key to subgroups

KEBA. Torriorthents which have:

1. *One or both* of the following:
 - a. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*
 - b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*
2. A moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*
3. A hyperthermic, thermic, mesic, frigid, or an *iso* soil temperature regime, and a torric moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Ustertic Torriorthents

KEBB. Other Torriorthents which have:

1. *One or both* of the following:
 - a. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*
 - b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

⁴ The clay content of very thin lamellae cannot be estimated with precision. The lamellae in soils of alfic subgroups are generally about 0.5 to 1 cm thick, but their total thickness is less than the 15 cm required for an argillic horizon.

2. A moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*
3. A thermic, mesic, or frigid soil temperature regime, and a torric moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Xerertic Torriorthents

KEBC. Other Torriorthents which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Torriorthents

KEBD. Other Torriorthents which have:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface; *and*
2. A moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*
3. A hyperthermic, thermic, mesic, frigid, or an *iso* soil temperature regime, and a torric moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Lithic Ustic Torriorthents

KEBE. Other Torriorthents which have:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface; *and*
2. A moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*
3. A thermic, mesic, or frigid soil temperature regime, and a torric moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Lithic Xeric Torriorthents

KEBF. Other Torriorthents that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface.

Lithic Torriorthents

KEBG. Other Torriorthents that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandic Torriorthents

KEBH. Other Torriorthents that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 100 cm of the soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*
2. A horizon within 100 cm of the soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist.

Aquic Durorthidic Torriorthents

KEBI. Other Torriorthents that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Torriorthents

KEBJ. Other Torriorthents that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 150 cm of the soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Torriorthents

KEBK. Other Torriorthents which have:

1. A horizon within 100 cm of the soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist; *and*
2. A moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*

3. A thermic, mesic, or frigid soil temperature regime, and a torric moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Durorthidic Xeric Torriorthents

KEBL. Other Torriorthents which have a horizon within 100 cm of the soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes, or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist.

Durorthidic Torriorthents

KEBM. Other Torriorthents which have *both*:

1. A moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*
2. A hyperthermic, thermic, mesic, frigid, or an *iso* soil temperature regime, and a torric moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Ustic Torriorthents

KEBN. Other Torriorthents which have *both*:

1. A moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*
2. A thermic, mesic, or frigid soil temperature regime, and a torric moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Xeric Torriorthents

KEBO. Other Torriorthents.

Typic Torriorthents

Troporthents

Key to subgroups

KEDA. Troporthents that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Troporthents

KEDB. Other Troporthents that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Troporthents

KEDC. Other Troporthents that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandic Troporthents

KEDD. Other Troporthents.

Typic Troporthents

Udorthents

Key to subgroups

KEFA. Udorthents that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Udorthents

KEFB. Other Udorthents that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Udorthents

KEFC. Other Udorthents that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandic Udorthents

KEFD. Other Udorthents that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Udorthents

KEFE. Other Udorthents that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Udorthents

KEFF. Other Udorthents that have 50 percent or more (by volume) wormholes, worm casts, and filled animal burrows between either the Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact, whichever is shallower.

Vermic Udorthents

KEFG. Other Udorthents.

Typic Udorthents

Ustorthents

Key to subgroups

KEEA. Ustorthents that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Ustorthents

KEEB. Other Ustorthents which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Ustorthents

KEEC. Other Ustorthents that have anthraquic conditions.

Anthraquic Ustorthents

KEED. Other Ustorthents that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Ustorthents

KEEF. Other Ustorthents that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Ustorthents

KEEF. Other Ustorthents which have a horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist.

Durorthidic Ustorthents

KEEG. Other Ustorthents which, if neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *one* of the following:

1. A frigid soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in all parts for four tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
2. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
3. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is moist in some or all parts for less than 180 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Aridic Ustorthents

KEEH. Other Ustorthents which, if neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *one* of the following:

1. A frigid soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 105 cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
2. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for less than four tenths of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
3. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative

days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Udic Ustorthents

KEEI. Other Ustorthents that have 50 percent or more (by volume) wormholes, worm casts, and filled animal burrows between either the Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic, paralithic, or petroferic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vermic Ustorthents

KEEJ. Other Ustorthents.

Typic Ustorthents

Xerorthents

Key to subgroups

KECA. Xerorthents that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Xerorthents

KECB. Other Xerorthents which have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*
2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:
 - a. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*
 - b. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
 - c. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - (1) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - (2) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Aquandic Xerorthents

KECC. Other Xerorthents that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Xerorthents

KECD. Other Xerorthents that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandic Xerorthents

KECE. Other Xerorthents that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*
2. A horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist.

Aquic Durorthidic Xerorthents

KECF. Other Xerorthents that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Xerorthents

KECG. Other Xerorthents that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Xerorthents

KECH. Other Xerorthents which have a horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist.

Durorthidic Xerorthents

KECI. Other Xerorthents that have a base saturation (by NH_4OAc) of less than 60 percent in all horizons between 25 and 75 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Dystric Xerorthents

KECJ. Other Xerorthents.

Typic Xerorthents

PSAMMENTS

Key to great groups

KCA. Psamments that have a cryic or pergelic soil temperature regime.

Cryopsamments, p. 262

KCB. Other Psamments that have a torric moisture regime.

Torripsamments, p. 265

KCC. Other Psamments that have, within the particle-size control section, more than 90 percent silica and other extremely durable minerals in the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction.

Quartzipsamments, p. 263

KCD. Other Psamments that have a udic moisture regime, and a difference of less than 5°C between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface.

Tropopsamments, p. 266

KCE. Other Psamments that have an ustic moisture regime.

Ustipsamments, p. 268

KCF. Other Psamments that have a xeric moisture regime.

Xeropsamments, p. 268

KCG. Other Psamments.

Udipsamments, p. 267

Cryopsamments

Key to subgroups

KCAA. Cryopsamments that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Cryopsamments

KCAB. Other Cryopsamments that have a mean annual soil temperature of 0°C or lower.

Pergelic Cryopsamments

KCAC. Other Cryopsamments that have, in one or more horizons within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Cryopsamments

KCAD. Other Cryopsamments that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Cryopsamments

KCAE. Other Cryopsamments which have a horizon 5 cm or more thick that has *one or more* of the following:

1. In 25 percent or more of each pedon, cementation by organic matter and aluminum, with or without iron; *or*
2. Aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.25 or more, and half that amount or less in an overlying horizon; *or*
3. An ODOE value of 0.12 or more, and a value half as high or lower in an overlying horizon.

Spodic Cryopsamments

KCAF. Other Cryopsamments which have lamellae within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface that meet all the requirements for an argillic horizon except thickness.

Argic Cryopsamments

KCAG. Other Cryopsamments.

Typic Cryopsamments

Quartzipsamments

Key to subgroups

KCCA. Quartzipsamments that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Quartzipsamments

KCCB. Other Quartzipsamments which have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*
2. A horizon 5 cm or more thick, either below an Ap horizon or at a depth of 18 cm or more from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, that has *one or more* of the following:

- a. In 25 percent or more of each pedon, cementation by organic matter and aluminum, with or without iron; *or*
- b. Aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.25 or more, and half that amount or less in an overlying horizon; *or*
- c. An ODOE value of 0.12 or more, and a value half as high or lower in an overlying horizon.

Aquodic Quartzipsamments

KCCC. Other Quartzipsamments that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Quartzipsamments

KCCD. Other Quartzipsamments that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Quartzipsamments

KCCE. Other Quartzipsamments which have *both*:

1. An ustic moisture regime; *and*
2. A clay fraction with a CEC equal to that of the clay of an oxic horizon, and enough clay to coat 75 percent or more of the sand-grain surfaces.

Ustoxic Quartzipsamments

KCCF. Other Quartzipsamments which have *both*:

1. A udic moisture regime; *and*
2. A clay fraction with a CEC equal to that of the clay of an oxic horizon, and enough clay to coat 75 percent or more of the sand-grain surfaces.

Udoxic Quartzipsamments

KCCG. Other Quartzipsamments that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Quartzipsamments

KCCH. Other Quartzipsamments which have *both*:

1. Lamellae within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface that meet all the requirements for an argillic horizon except thickness⁵ or clay content; *and*
2. An ustic moisture regime.

Argic Ustic Quartzipsamments

⁵ The clay content of very thin lamellae cannot be estimated with precision. The lamellae in soils of argic subgroups are generally about 0.5 to 1 cm thick, but their total thickness is less than the 15 cm required for an argillic horizon.

KCCI. Other Quartzipsamments which have lamellae within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface that meet all the requirements for an argillic horizon except thickness⁶ or clay content.

Argic Quartzipsamments

KCCJ. Other Quartzipsamments that have an ustic moisture regime.

Ustic Quartzipsamments

KCCK. Other Quartzipsamments that have a xeric moisture regime.

Xeric Quartzipsamments

KCCL. Other Quartzipsamments which have a horizon 5 cm or more thick, either below an Ap horizon or at a depth of 18 cm or more from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, that has *one or more* of the following:

1. In 25 percent or more of each pedon, cementation by organic matter and aluminum, with or without iron; *or*
2. Aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.25 or more, and half that amount or less in an overlying horizon; *or*
3. An ODOE value of 0.12 or more, and a value half as high *or* lower in an overlying horizon.

Spodic Quartzipsamments

KCCM. Other Quartzipsamments.

Typic Quartzipsamments

Torripsamments

Key to subgroups

KCBA. Torripsamments that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface.

Lithic Torripsamments

KCBB. Other Torripsamments which have:

1. A horizon within 100 cm of the soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist; *and*
2. A moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*

⁶ See footnote 5.

3. A thermic, mesic, or frigid soil temperature regime, and a torric moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Durorthidic Xeric Torripsamments

KCBC. Other Torripsamments which have a horizon within 100 cm of the soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist.

Durorthidic Torripsamments

KCBD. Other Torripsamments which have *both*:

1. A moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*
2. A torric moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Ustic Torripsamments

KCBE. Other Torripsamments which have *both*:

1. A moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in all its parts for less than three fourths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*
2. A thermic, mesic, or frigid soil temperature regime, and a torric moisture regime that borders on a xeric regime.

Xeric Torripsamments

KCBF. Other Torripsamments.

Typic Torripsamments

Tropopsamments

Key to subgroups

KCDA. Tropopsamments that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Tropopsamments

KCDB. Tropopsamments that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Tropopsamments

KCDC. Other Tropopsamments that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Tropopsamments

KCDD. Other Tropopsamments.

Typic Tropopsamments

Udipsamments

Key to subgroups

KCGA. Udipsamments that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Udipsamments

KCGB. Other Udipsamments that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Udipsamments

KCGC. Other Udipsamments that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Udipsamments

KCGD. Other Udipsamments which have a horizon 5 cm or more thick, either below an Ap horizon or at a depth of 18 cm or more from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, that has *one or more* of the following:

1. In 25 percent or more of each pedon, cementation by organic matter and aluminum, with or without iron; *or*
2. Aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.25 or more, and half that amount or less in an overlying horizon; *or*
3. An ODOE value of 0.12 or more, and a value half as high or lower in an overlying horizon.

Spodic Udipsamments

KCGE. Other Udipsamments which have lamellae within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface that meet all the requirements for an argillic horizon except thickness⁷ or clay content.

Argic Udipsamments

KCGF. Other Udipsamments which have a surface horizon between 25 and 50 cm thick that meets all the requirements for a plaggen epipedon except thickness.

Plaggeptic Udipsamments

KCGG. Other Udipsamments.

Typic Udipsamments

⁷ The clay content of very thin lamellae cannot be estimated with precision. The lamellae in soils of argic subgroups are generally about 0.5 to 1 cm thick, but their total thickness is less than the 15 cm required for an argillic horizon.

Ustipsamments

Key to subgroups

KCEA. Ustipsamments that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Ustipsamments

KCEB. Other Ustipsamments that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, distinct or prominent redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Ustipsamments

KCEC. Other Ustipsamments that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Ustipsamments

KCED. Other Ustipsamments which have lamellae within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface that meet all the requirements for an argillic horizon except thickness⁸ or clay content.

Argic Ustipsamments

KCEE. Other Ustipsamments.

Typic Ustipsamments

Xeropsamments

Key to subgroups

KCFA. Xeropsamments that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Xeropsamments

KCFB. Other Xeropsamments that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, distinct or prominent redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*
2. A horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist.

Aquic Durorthidic Xeropsamments

KCFC. Other Xeropsamments that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, distinct or prominent redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Xeropsamments

⁸ See footnote 7.

KCFD. Other Xeropsamments that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Xeropsamments

KCFE. Other Xeropsamments which have a horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist.

Durorthidic Xeropsamments

KCFF. Other Xeropsamments which have lamellae within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface that meet all the requirements for an argillic horizon except thickness⁹ or clay content.

Argic Xeropsamments

KCFG. Other Xeropsamments that have a base saturation (by NH_4OAc) of less than 60 percent in all horizons between 25 and 75 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Dystric Xeropsamments

KCFH. Other Xeropsamments.

Typic Xeropsamments

⁹ See footnote 7.

Chapter 10

Histosols

KEY TO SUBORDERS

AA. Histosols which are never saturated with water except for a few days following heavy rains, *and* which have *both*:

1. A lithic or paralithic contact within 100 cm of the soil surface, and/or fragmental materials resting on a lithic or paralithic contact; *and*
2. Less than three fourths (by volume) *Sphagnum* fibers in the organic soil materials.

Folists, p. 278

AB. Other Histosols which *either*:

1. Are dominantly¹ fibric *either*
 - a. In the subsurface tier if that tier is wholly organic except for one or more thin mineral layers; *or*
 - b. In the organic parts of the surface and subsurface tiers if there is a continuous mineral layer 40 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the subsurface tier; *or*
2. Have a surface mantle in which *Sphagnum* fibers constitute three fourths or more of the volume, and which rests on a lithic or paralithic contact, fragmental materials, mineral soil, or frozen² materials within the surface or subsurface tier.

Fibrists, p. 272

AC. Other Histosols that are dominantly³ hemic *either*:

1. In the subsurface tier if that tier is wholly organic except for one or more thin mineral layers; *or*

¹ *Dominant*, in this context, means "the most abundant." If only two kinds of organic materials are present, the fibric materials, if dominant, constitute half or more of the volume. If there are both hemic and sapric materials as well as fibric, the fibric materials, if dominant, may constitute less than half of the volume but have more volume than either the hemic or the sapric materials.

² Frozen 2 months after the summer solstice.

³ *Dominant*, in this context, means the most abundant of the three different kinds of organic soil materials (fibric, hemic, or sapric).

2. In the organic parts of the surface and subsurface tiers if there is a continuous mineral layer 40 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the subsurface tier.

Hemists, p. 279

AD. Other Histosols.

Saprists, p. 284

FIBRISTS

Key to great groups

ABA. Fibrists that have a surface mantle in which fibric *Sphagnum* constitutes three fourths or more of the volume and which is *either* 90 cm or more thick, *or* extends 10 cm or more below the upper boundary of frozen⁴ soil materials, *or* rests on a lithic or paralithic contact, fragmental materials, or mineral soil materials.

Sphagnofibrists, p. 276

ABB. Other Fibrists which, in most years, *either*:

1. Are frozen in one or more layers within the control section 2 months after the summer solstice; *or*

2. Never freeze below a depth of 5 cm from the soil surface but have a mean annual soil temperature lower than 8°C.

Cryofibrists, p. 274

ABC. Other Fibrists that have a mean annual soil temperature lower than 8°C.

Borofibrists, p. 272

ABD. Other Fibrists that have a difference of less than 5°C between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 30 cm from the soil surface.

Tropofibrists, p. 277

ABE. Other Fibrists that have a horizon 2 cm or more thick in which humillic materials constitute one half or more of the volume.

Luvifibrists, p. 274

ABF. Other Fibrists.

Medifibrists, p. 275

Borofibrists

Key to subgroups

ABCA. Borofibrists that have a layer of water within the control section below the surface tier.

Hydric Borofibrists

⁴ Frozen 2 months after the summer solstice.

ABCB. Other Borofibrists that have a lithic contact within the control section.

Lithic Borofibrists

ABCC. Other Borofibrists which have *both*:

1. Three fourths or more of the fiber volume in the surface tier derived from *Sphagnum*; and
2. A mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Sphaginic Terric Borofibrists

ABCD. Other Borofibrists which have *both*:

1. One or more layers, with a total thickness of 25 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of hemic materials; and
2. A mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Hemic Terric Borofibrists

ABCE. Other Borofibrists which have *both*:

1. One or more layers, with a total thickness of 12.5 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of sapric materials; and
2. A mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Sapric Terric Borofibrists

ABCF. Other Borofibrists which have a mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Terric Borofibrists

ABCG. Other Borofibrists that have one or more limnic layers with a total thickness of 5 cm or more within the control section.

Limnic Borofibrists

ABCH. Other Borofibrists that have, within organic materials, either one mineral layer 5 cm or more thick, or two or more mineral layers of any thickness, in the control section below the surface tier.

Fluvaquentic Borofibrists

ABCI. Other Borofibrists that have three fourths or more of the fiber volume in the surface tier derived from *Sphagnum*.

Sphaginic Borofibrists

ABCJ. Other Borofibrists that have one or more layers, with a total thickness of 25 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of hemic materials.

Hemic Borofibrists

ABCK. Other Borofibrists that have one or more layers, with a total thickness of 12.5 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of sapric materials.

Sapric Borofibrists

ABCL. Other Borofibrists.

Typic Borofibrists

Cryofibrists

Key to subgroups

ABBA. Cryofibrists that have a lithic contact within the control section.

Lithic Cryofibrists

ABBB. Other Cryofibrists that have a mean annual soil temperature of 0°C or lower.

Pergelic Cryofibrists

ABBC. Other Cryofibrists which have a mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Terric Cryofibrists

ABBD. Other Cryofibrists that have, within organic materials, either one mineral layer 5 cm or more thick, or two or more mineral layers of any thickness, in the control section below the surface tier.

Fluvaquentic Cryofibrists

ABBE. Other Cryofibrists that have three fourths or more of the fiber volume in the surface tier derived from *Sphagnum*.

Sphagnic Cryofibrists

ABBF. Other Cryofibrists.

Typic Cryofibrists

Luvifibrists

Luvifibrists are not known to occur in the United States, but the great group is provided tentatively for use in other countries if needed. These soils are the Fibrists which have a horizon within the control section that is 2 cm or more thick and contains one half or more (by volume) humilluvic materials. Because these soils cannot be studied in the United States, a precise definition is not attempted here. It should be noted, however, that the soils are normally acid and that they have been cultivated for a long time.

Medifibrists

Key to subgroups

ABFA. Medifibrists that have a layer of water within the control section below the surface tier.

Hydric Medifibrists

ABFB. Other Medifibrists that have a lithic contact within the control section.

Lithic Medifibrists

ABFC. Other Medifibrists which have *both*:

1. Three fourths or more of the fiber volume in the surface tier derived from *Sphagnum*; and
2. A mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Sphagnic Terric Medifibrists

ABFD. Other Medifibrists which have *both*:

1. One or more layers, with a total thickness of 25 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of hemic materials; and
2. A mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Hemic Terric Medifibrists

ABFE. Other Medifibrists which have *both*:

1. One or more layers, with a total thickness of 12.5 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of sapric materials; and
2. A mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Sapric Terric Medifibrists

ABFF. Other Medifibrists which have a mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Terric Medifibrists

ABFG. Other Medifibrists that have one or more limnic layers with a total thickness of 5 cm or more within the control section.

Limnic Medifibrists

ABFH. Other Medifibrists that have, within organic materials, either one mineral layer 5 cm or more thick, or two or more mineral layers of any thickness, in the control section below the surface tier.

Fluvaquentic Medifibrists

ABFI. Other Medifibrists that have three fourths or more of the fiber volume in the surface tier derived from *Sphagnum*.

Sphagnic Medifibrists

ABFJ. Other Medifibrists that have one or more layers, with a total thickness of 25 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of hemic materials.

Hemic Medifibrists

ABFK. Other Medifibrists that have one or more layers, with a total thickness of 12.5 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of sapric materials.

Sapric Medifibrists

ABFL. Other Medifibrists.

Typic Medifibrists

Sphagnofibrists

Key to subgroups

ABAA. Sphagnofibrists which:

1. Have a mean annual soil temperature of 0°C or less; *and*
2. In most years, are *either* frozen in one or more layers within the control section 2 months after the summer solstice, *or* freeze to a depth of 5 cm or more below the soil surface.

Pergelic Sphagnofibrists

ABAB. Other Sphagnofibrists that have a layer of water within the control section below the surface tier.

Hydric Sphagnofibrists

ABAC. Other Sphagnofibrists that have a lithic contact within the control section.

Lithic Sphagnofibrists

ABAD. Other Sphagnofibrists which:

1. Have a mean annual soil temperature between 0°C and 8°C; *and*
2. In most years, are *either* frozen in one or more layers within the control section 2 months after the summer solstice, *or* freeze to a depth of 5 cm or more below the soil surface.

Cryic Sphagnofibrists

ABAE. Other Sphagnofibrists which have a mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Terric Sphagnofibrists

ABAF. Other Sphagnofibrists that have one or more limnic layers with a total thickness of 5 cm or more within the control section.

Limnic Sphagnofibrists

ABAG. Other Sphagnofibrists that have, within organic materials, either one mineral layer 5 cm or more thick, or two or more mineral layers of any thickness, in the control section below the surface tier.

Fluvaquentic Sphagnofibrists

ABAH. Other Sphagnofibrists that have one or more layers, with a total thickness of 25 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of hemic materials.

Hemic Sphagnofibrists

ABAI. Other Sphagnofibrists that have one or more layers, with a total thickness of 12.5 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of sapric materials.

Sapric Sphagnofibrists

ABAJ. Other Sphagnofibrists.

Typic Sphagnofibrists

Tropofibrists

Key to subgroups

ABDA. Tropofibrists that have a layer of water within the control section below the surface tier.

Hydric Tropofibrists

ABDB. Other Tropofibrists that have a lithic contact within the control section.

Lithic Tropofibrists

ABDC. Other Tropofibrists which have *both*:

1. One or more layers, with a total thickness of 25 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of hemic materials; *and*
2. A mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Hemic Terric Tropofibrists

ABDD. Other Tropofibrists which have *both*:

1. One or more layers, with a total thickness of 12.5 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of sapric materials; *and*
2. A mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Sapric Terric Tropofibrists

ABDE. Other Tropofibrists which have a mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Terric Tropofibrists

ABDF. Other Tropofibrists that have one or more limnic layers with a total thickness of 5 cm or more within the control section.

Limnic Tropofibrists

ABDG. Other Tropofibrists that have, within organic materials, either one mineral layer 5 cm or more thick, or two or more mineral layers of any thickness, in the control section below the surface tier.

Fluvaquentic Tropofibrists

ABDH. Other Tropofibrists that have one or more layers, with a total thickness of 25 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of hemic materials.

Hemic Tropofibrists

ABDI. Other Tropofibrists that have one or more layers, with a total thickness of 12.5 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of sapric materials.

Sapric Tropofibrists

ABDJ. Other Tropofibrists.

Typic Tropofibrists

FOLISTS

Key to great groups

AAA. Folists that have a cryic or colder soil temperature regime.

Cryofolists, p. 279

AAB. Other Folists that have an isomesic or warmer soil temperature regime.

Tropofolists, p. 279

AAC. Other Folists that have a frigid soil temperature regime.

Borofolists, p. 278

AAD. Other Folists.

Medifolists, p. 279

Borofolists

Key to subgroups

AACA. Borofolists that have a lithic contact within 100 cm of the soil surface.

Lithic Borofolists

AACB. Other Borofolists.

Typic Borofolists

Cryofolists

Key to subgroups

AAAA. Cryofolists that have a lithic contact within 100 cm of the soil surface.

Lithic Cryofolists

AAAB. Other Cryofolists.

Typic Cryofolists

Medifolists

Key to subgroups

AADA. Medifolists that have a lithic contact within 100 cm of the soil surface.

Lithic Medifolists

AADB. Other Medifolists.

Typic Medifolists

Tropofolists

Key to subgroups

AABA. Tropofolists that have a lithic contact within 100 cm of the soil surface.

Lithic Tropofolists

AABB. Other Tropofolists.

Typic Tropofolists

HEMISTS

H
I
S

Key to great groups

ACA. Hemists which have a sulfuric horizon that has its upper boundary within 50 cm of the soil surface.

Sulfohemists, p. 283

ACB. Other Hemists that have sulfidic materials within 100 cm of the soil surface.

Sulfihemists, p. 283

ACC. Other Hemists that have a horizon 2 cm or more thick in which humilluvic materials constitute one half or more of the volume.

Luvihemists, p. 281

ACD. Other Hemists which, in most years, *either*:

1. Are frozen in one or more layers within the control section 2 months after the summer solstice; *or*

2. Never freeze below a depth of 5 cm from the soil surface but have a mean annual soil temperature lower than 8°C.

Cryohemists, p. 281

ACE. Other Hemists that have a mean annual soil temperature lower than 8°C.

Borohemists, p. 280

ACF. Other Hemists that have a difference of less than 5°C between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 30 cm below the soil surface.

Tropohemists, p. 283

ACG. Other Hemists.

Medihemists, p. 282

Borohemists

Key to subgroups

ACEA. Borohemists that have a layer of water within the control section below the surface tier.

Hydric Borohemists

ACEB. Other Borohemists that have a lithic contact within the control section.

Lithic Borohemists

ACEC. Other Borohemists which have *both*:

1. One or more layers, with a total thickness of 25 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of fibric materials; *and*
2. A mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Fibric Terric Borohemists

ACED. Other Borohemists which have *both*:

1. One or more layers, with a total thickness of 12.5 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of sapric materials; *and*
2. A mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Sapric Terric Borohemists

ACEE. Other Borohemists which have a mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Terric Borohemists

ACEF. Other Borohemists that have one or more limnic layers with a total thickness of 5 cm or more within the control section.

Limnic Borohemists

ACEG. Other Borohemists that have, within organic materials, either one mineral layer 5 cm or more thick,

or two or more mineral layers of any thickness, in the control section below the surface tier.

Fluvaquentic Borohemists

ACEH. Other Borohemists that have one or more layers, with a total thickness of 25 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of fibric materials.

Fibric Borohemists

ACEI. Other Borohemists that have one or more layers, with a total thickness of 12.5 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of sapric materials.

Sapric Borohemists

ACEJ. Other Borohemists.

Typic Borohemists

Cryohemists

Key to subgroups

ACDA. Cryohemists that have a lithic contact within the control section.

Lithic Cryohemists

ACDB. Other Cryohemists that have a mean annual soil temperature of 0°C or lower.

Pergelic Cryohemists

ACDC. Other Cryohemists which have a mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Terric Cryohemists

ACDD. Other Cryohemists that have, within organic materials, either one mineral layer 5 cm or more thick, or two or more mineral layers of any thickness, in the control section below the surface tier.

Fluvaquentic Cryohemists

ACDE. Other Cryohemists.

Typic Cryohemists

Luvihemists

Luvihemists are not known to occur in the United States, but the great group is provided tentatively for use in other countries if needed. These are the Hemists which have, within the control section, a horizon 2 cm or more thick in which humilluvic materials constitute one half or more of the volume. Because Luvihemists cannot be studied in the United States, a precise definition of these soils is not attempted here. It should be noted, however, that they are normally acid and have been cultivated for a long time.

Medihemists

Key to subgroups

ACGA. Medihemists that have a layer of water within the control section below the surface tier.

Hydric Medihemists

ACGB. Other Medihemists that have a lithic contact within the control section.

Lithic Medihemists

ACGC. Other Medihemists which have *both*:

1. One or more layers, with a total thickness of 25 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of fibric materials; *and*
2. A mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Fibric Terric Medihemists

ACGD. Other Medihemists which have *both*:

1. One or more layers, with a total thickness of 12.5 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of sapric materials; *and*
2. A mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Sapric Terric Medihemists

ACGE. Other Medihemists which have a mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Terric Medihemists

ACGF. Other Medihemists that have one or more limnic layers with a total thickness of 5 cm or more within the control section.

Limnic Medihemists

ACGG. Other Medihemists that have, within organic materials, either one mineral layer 5 cm or more thick, or two or more mineral layers of any thickness, in the control section below the surface tier.

Fluvaquentic Medihemists

ACGH. Other Medihemists that have one or more layers, with a total thickness of 25 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of fibric materials.

Fibric Medihemists

ACGI. Other Medihemists that have one or more layers, with a total thickness of 12.5 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of sapric materials.

Sapric Medihemists

ACGJ. Other Medihemists.

Typic Medihemists

Sulfihemists

Key to subgroups

ACBA. Sulfihemists which have a mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Terric Sulfihemists

ACBB. Other Sulfihemists.

Typic Sulfihemists

Sulfohemists

Key to subgroups

ACAA. All Sulfohemists (provisionally).

Typic Sulfohemists

Tropohemists

Key to subgroups

ACFA. Tropohemists that have a layer of water within the control section below the surface tier.

Hydic Tropohemists

ACFB. Other Tropohemists that have a lithic contact within the control section.

Lithic Tropohemists

ACFC. Other Tropohemists which have *both*:

1. One or more layers, with a total thickness of 25 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of fibric materials; *and*
2. A mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Fibric Terric Tropohemists

ACFD. Other Tropohemists which have *both*:

1. One or more layers, with a total thickness of 12.5 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of sapric materials; *and*
2. A mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Sapric Terric Tropohemists

ACFE. Other Tropohemists which have a mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Terric Tropohemists

ACFF. Other Tropohemists that have one or more limnic layers with a total thickness of 5 cm or more within the control section.

Limnic Tropohemists

ACFG. Other Trophemists that have, within organic materials, either one mineral layer 5 cm or more thick, or two or more mineral layers of any thickness, in the control section below the surface tier.

Fluvaquentic Trophemists

ACFH. Other Trophemists that have one or more layers, with a total thickness of 25 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of fibric materials.

Fibric Trophemists

ACFI. Other Trophemists that have one or more layers, with a total thickness of 12.5 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of sapric materials.

Sapric Trophemists

ACFJ. Other Trophemists.

Typic Trophemists

SAPRISTS

Key to great groups

ADA. Saprists which have a sulfuric horizon that has its upper boundary within 50 cm of the soil surface.

Sulfosaprists, p. 287

ADB. Other Saprists that have sulfidic materials within 100 cm of the soil surface.

Sulfisaprists, p. 287

ADC. Other Saprists which, in most years, *either*:

1. Are frozen in one or more layers within the control section 2 months after the summer solstice; *or*

2. Never freeze below a depth of 5 cm from the soil surface but have a mean annual soil temperature lower than 8°C.

Cryosaprists, p. 286

ADD. Other Saprists that have a mean annual soil temperature lower than 8°C.

Borosaprists, p. 285

ADE. Other Saprists that have less than 5°C difference between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 30 cm from the soil surface.

Troposaprists, p. 287

ADF. Other Saprists.

Medisaprists, p. 286

Borosaprists

Key to subgroups

ADDA. Borosaprists that have a lithic contact within the control section.

Lithic Borosaprists

ADDB. Other Borosaprists which have *both*:

1. One or more layers, with a total thickness of 12.5 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of fibric materials; *and*
2. A mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Fibric Terric Borosaprists

ADDC. Other Borosaprists which have *both*:

1. One or more layers, with a total thickness of 25 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of hemic materials; *and*
2. A mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Hemic Terric Borosaprists

ADDD. Other Borosaprists which have a mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Terric Borosaprists

ADDE. Other Borosaprists that have one or more limnic layers with a total thickness of 5 cm or more within the control section.

Limnic Borosaprists

ADDF. Other Borosaprists that have, within organic materials, either one mineral layer 5 cm or more thick, or two or more mineral layers of any thickness, in the control section below the surface tier.

Fluvaquentic Borosaprists

ADDG. Other Borosaprists that have one or more layers, with a total thickness of 12.5 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of fibric materials.

Fibric Borosaprists

ADDH. Other Borosaprists that have one or more layers, with a total thickness of 25 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of hemic materials.

Hemic Borosaprists

ADDI. Other Borosaprists.

Typic Borosaprists

Cryosaprists

Key to subgroups

ADCA. Cryosaprists that have a lithic contact within the control section.

Lithic Cryosaprists

ADCB. Other Cryosaprists that have a mean annual soil temperature of 0°C or lower.

Pergelic Cryosaprists

ADCC. Other Cryosaprists which have a mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Terric Cryosaprists

ADCD. Other Cryosaprists that have, within organic materials, either one mineral layer 5 cm or more thick, or two or more mineral layers of any thickness, in the control section below the surface tier.

Fluvaquentic Cryosaprists

ADCE. Other Cryosaprists.

Typic Cryosaprists

Medisaprists

Key to subgroups

ADDA. Medisaprists that have a lithic contact within the control section.

Lithic Medisaprists

ADFB. Other Medisaprists which have *both*:

1. One or more layers, with a total thickness of 12.5 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of fibric materials; *and*
2. A mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Fibric Terric Medisaprists

ADFC. Other Medisaprists which have *both*:

1. One or more layers, with a total thickness of 25 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of hemic materials; *and*
2. A mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Hemic Terric Medisaprists

ADFD. Other Medisaprists which have a mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Terric Medisaprists

ADFE. Other Medisaprists that have one or more limnic layers with a total thickness of 5 cm or more within the control section.

Limnic Medisaprists

ADFF. Other Medisaprists that have, within organic materials, either one mineral layer 5 cm or more thick, or two or more mineral layers of any thickness, in the control section below the surface tier.

Fluvaquentic Medisaprists

ADFG. Other Medisaprists that have one or more layers, with a total thickness of 12.5 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of fibric materials.

Fibric Medisaprists

ADFH. Other Medisaprists that have one or more layers, with a total thickness of 25 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of hemic materials.

Hemic Medisaprists

ADFI. Other Medisaprists.

Typic Medisaprists

Sulfisaprists

Key to subgroups

ADBA. Sulfisaprists which have a mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Terric Sulfisaprists

ADBB. Other Sulfisaprists.

Typic Sulfisaprists

Sulfosaprists

Key to subgroups

ADAA. All Sulfosaprists (provisionally).

Typic Sulfosaprists

Troposaprists

Key to subgroups

ADEA. Troposaprists that have a lithic contact within the control section.

Lithic Troposaprists

ADEB. Other Troposaprists which have *both*:

1. One or more layers, with a total thickness of 12.5 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of fibric materials; *and*

2. A mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Fibric Terric Troposaprists

ADEC. Other Troposaprists which have *both*:

1. One or more layers, with a total thickness of 25 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of hemic materials; *and*
2. A mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Hemic Terric Troposaprists

ADED. Other Troposaprists which have a mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section below the surface tier.

Terric Troposaprists

ADEE. Other Troposaprists that have one or more limnic layers with a total thickness of 5 cm or more within the control section.

Limnic Troposaprists

ADEF. Other Troposaprists that have, within organic materials, either one mineral layer 5 cm or more thick, or two or more mineral layers of any thickness, in the control section below the surface tier.

Fluvaquentic Troposaprists

ADEG. Other Troposaprists that have one or more layers, with a total thickness of 12.5 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of fibric materials.

Fibric Troposaprists

ADEH. Other Troposaprists that have one or more layers, with a total thickness of 25 cm or more, of the subsurface and bottom tiers consisting of hemic materials.

Hemic Troposaprists

ADEI. Other Troposaprists.

Typic Troposaprists

Chapter 11

Inceptisols

KEY TO SUBORDERS

JA. Inceptisols which have:

1. Aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) in a layer between 40 and 50 cm from the mineral soil surface, *and one or more* of the following:

a. A histic epipedon; *or*

b. A sulfuric horizon that has its upper boundary within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

c. A mollic, an ochric, or an umbric epipedon that is underlain directly, or within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, by a horizon that has, on faces of peds or in the matrix if peds are absent, 50 percent or more chroma of *either*:

(1) Two or less if there are redox concentrations; *or*

(2) One or less; *or*

2. An exchangeable sodium percentage (ESP) of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio, SAR, of 13 or more) in half or more of the soil volume within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, and a decrease in ESP (or SAR) values with increasing depth below 50 cm, *and* ground water within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for some time during the year; *or*

3. Within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquepts, p. 290

JB. Other Inceptisols that have a plaggen epipedon.

Plaggepts, p. 320

JC. Other Inceptisols that have an isomesic or a warmer *iso* temperature regime.

Tropepts, p. 320

JD. Other Inceptisols that have *either*:

1. An ochric epipedon; *or*

2. A mesic or warmer soil temperature regime and an umbric or a mollic epipedon less than 25 cm thick.

Ochrepts, p. 301

JE. Other Inceptisols.

Umbrepts, p. 328

AQUEPTS

Key to great groups

JAA. Aquepts which have a sulfuric horizon that has its upper boundary within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Sulfaquepts, p. 299

JAB. Other Aquepts that have, in half or more of each pedon, a placic horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Placaquepts, p. 298

JAC. Other Aquepts that have, in one or more horizons with a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, either an exchangeable sodium percentage (ESP) of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio, SAR, of 13 or more), and a decrease in ESP (or SAR) values with increasing depth below 50 cm.

Halaquepts, p. 296

JAD. Other Aquepts that have a fragipan.

Fragiaquepts, p. 295

JAE. Other Aquepts that have a cryic or pergelic soil temperature regime.

Cryaquepts, p. 291

JAF. Other Aquepts that have one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface in which plinthite either forms a continuous phase or constitutes one half or more of the volume.

Plinthaquepts, p. 299

JAG. Other Aquepts that have a difference of less than 5°C between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures either at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, or at a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Tropaquepts, p. 299

JAH. Other Aquepts that have a histic, a mollic, or an umbric epipedon.

Humaquepts, p. 297

JAI. Other Aquepts that have episaturation.

Epiaquepts, p. 294

JAJ. Other Aquepts.

Endoaquepts, p. 293

Cryaquepts

Key to subgroups

JAEA. Cryaquepts which have, within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A sulfuric horizon; *or*
2. A horizon 15 cm or more thick that has all the characteristics of a sulfuric horizon, except that it has a pH value between 3.5 and 4.0; *or*
3. Sulfidic materials.

Sulfic Cryaquepts

JAEB. Other Cryaquepts that have *both* a histic epipedon *and* a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Histic Lithic Cryaquepts

JAEC. Other Cryaquepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Cryaquepts

JAED. Other Cryaquepts which have *both*:

1. A histic epipedon that is continuous in each pedon; *and*
2. A mean annual soil temperature of 0°C or lower.

Histic Pergelic Cryaquepts

JAEE. Other Cryaquepts which have *both*:

1. A histic epipedon that is discontinuous in each pedon; *and*
2. A mean annual soil temperature of 0°C or lower.

Pergelic Ruptic-Histic Cryaquepts

JAEF. Other Cryaquepts which have *both*:

1. An umbric epipedon; *and*
2. A mean annual soil temperature of 0°C or lower.

Humic Pergelic Cryaquepts

JAEG. Other Cryaquepts that have a mean annual soil temperature of 0°C or lower.

Pergelic Cryaquepts

JAEH. Other Cryaquepts which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Cryaquepts

JAEI. Other Cryaquepts that have a histic epipedon.

Histic Cryaquepts

JAEJ. Other Cryaquepts which have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*
2. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
3. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Aquandic Cryaquepts

JAEK. Other Cryaquepts that have *both*:

1. A chroma of 3 or more in 40 percent or more of the matrix of one or more horizons between 15 and 50 cm from the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. An umbric epipedon:

Aeric Humic Cryaquepts

JAEL. Other Cryaquepts that have a chroma of 3 or more in 40 percent or more of the matrix of one or more horizons between 15 and 50 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Aeric Cryaquepts

JAEM. Other Cryaquepts that have an umbric epipedon.

Humic Cryaquepts

JAEN. Other Cryaquepts.

Typic Cryaquepts

Endoaquepts

Key to subgroups

JAJA. Endoaquepts which have, within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A sulfuric horizon; *or*
2. A horizon 15 cm or more thick that has all the characteristics of a sulfuric horizon, except that it has a pH value between 3.5 and 4.0; *or*
3. Sulfidic materials.

Sulfic Endoaquepts

JAJB. Other Endoaquepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Endoaquepts

JAJC. Other Endoaquepts which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Endoaquepts

JAJD. Other Endoaquepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*
2. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
3. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*

- b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Aquandic Endoaquepts

JAJE. Other Endoaquepts that have, in one or more horizons between the A or Ap horizon and a depth of 75 cm below the mineral soil surface, *one* of the following colors:

1. A hue of 7.5YR or redder in 50 percent or more of the matrix, *and*
 - a. If peds are present, either a chroma of 2 or more on 50 percent or more of ped exteriors, or no redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less in ped interiors; *or*
 - b. If peds are absent, a chroma of 2 or more in 50 percent or more of the matrix; *or*
2. In 50 percent or more of the matrix, a hue of 10YR or yellower *and either*
 - a. Both a color value, moist, and chroma of 3 or more; *or*
 - b. A chroma of 2 or more if there are no redox concentrations.

Aeric Endoaquepts

JAJF. Other Endoaquepts which have:

1. An Ap horizon, or an A horizon 15 cm or more thick, with a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample); *and*
2. A base saturation (by NH₄OAc) of less than 50 percent that does not increase with depth to 50 percent or more within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Humic Endoaquepts

JAJG. Other Endoaquepts that have an Ap horizon, or an A horizon 15 cm or more thick, with a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample).

Mollic Endoaquepts

JAJH. Other Endoaquepts.

Typic Endoaquepts

Epiaquepts

Key to subgroups

JAIA. Epiaquepts which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Epiaquepts

JAIB. Other Epiaquepts that have, in one or more horizons between the A or Ap horizon and a depth of 75 cm below the mineral soil surface, *one* of the following colors:

1. A hue of 7.5YR or redder in 50 percent or more of the matrix, *and*

a. If peds are present, either a chroma of 2 or more on 50 percent or more of ped exteriors, or no redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less in ped interiors; *or*

b. If peds are absent, a chroma of 2 or more in 50 percent or more of the matrix; *or*

2. In 50 percent or more of the matrix, a hue of 10YR or yellower *and either*

a. Both a color value, moist, and chroma of 3 or more; *or*

b. A chroma of 2 or more if there are no redox concentrations.

Aeric Epiaquepts

JAIC. Other Epiaquepts.

Typic Epiaquepts

Fragiaquepts

Key to subgroups

JADA. Fragiaquepts that have, in 50 percent or more of the matrix of one or more horizons, either between the plow layer and a depth of 75 cm below the mineral soil surface or, if there is no plow layer, between 15 and 75 cm depth, a chroma of *either*

1. Three or more; *or*

2. Two or more if there are no redox concentrations.

Aeric Fragiaquepts

JADB. Other Fragiaquepts that have a histic, a mollic, or an umbric epipedon.

Humic Fragiaquepts

JADC. Other Fragiaquepts.

Typic Fragiaquepts

Halaquepts

Key to subgroups

JACA. Halaquepts which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Halaquepts

JACB. Other Halaquepts which have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*
2. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
3. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Aquandic Halaquepts

JACC. Other Halaquepts that have a chroma of 3 or more in 40 percent or more of the matrix of one or more horizons between 15 and 75 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Aeric Halaquepts

JACD. Other Halaquepts that have a mollic epipedon.

Mollic Halaquepts

JACE. Other Halaquepts.

Typic Halaquepts

Humaquepts

Key to subgroups

JAHA. Humaquepts that have an *n* value *either* of 0.7 or more in one or more layers between 20 and 50 cm from the mineral soil surface, *or* of 0.9 or more in one or more layers between 50 and 80 cm.

Hydraqueptic Humaquepts

JAHB. Other Humaquepts which have a histic epipedon.

Histic Humaquepts

JAHC. Other Humaquepts which have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*
2. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
3. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Aquandic Humaquepts

JAHD. Other Humaquepts which have *both*:

1. An epipedon 60 cm or more thick; *and*
2. *Either* 0.2 percent or more organic carbon at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, *or* to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower.

Cumulic Humaquepts

JAHE. Other Humaquepts that have *either* 0.2 percent or more organic carbon at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, *or* to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower.

Fluvaqueptic Humaquepts

JAHF. Other Humaquepts that have a hue of 5Y or redder and a chroma of 3 or more in more than 40 percent of the matrix of one or more subhorizons between 15 and 75 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Aeric Humaquepts

JAHG. Other Humaquepts.

Typic Humaquepts

Placaquepts

Key to subgroups

JABA. Placaquepts that have a histic epipedon.

Histic Placaquepts

JABB. Other Placaquepts which have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*
2. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
3. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Aquandic Placaquepts

JABC. Other Placaquepts that do not, within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, have a continuous placic horizon in each pedon.

Haplic Placaquepts

JABD. Other Placaquepts.

Typic Placaquepts

Plinthaquepts

Plinthaquepts occur mainly in tropical regions. They have one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface in which plinthite either forms a continuous phase or constitutes one half or more of the volume. These are soils in which the groundwater table fluctuates considerably during the year, between a level at or near the soil surface during the rainy season and a much lower level during the dry season. Most of the soils have developed in relatively recent alluvial deposits, probably of late-Pleistocene or Holocene age, and contain appreciable amounts of weatherable minerals. Plinthaquepts are not known to occur in the United States, but the great group is provided because these soils are thought to be extensive in parts of the Amazon Basin.

Sulfaquepts

Key to subgroups

JAAA. Sulfaquepts that have a salic horizon within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Salorthidic Sulfaquepts

JAAB. Other Sulfaquepts that have *both*:

1. An n value of more than 0.7; *and*
2. Eight percent or more clay in the fine-earth fraction of all horizons between 20 and 50 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Hydraqueptic Sulfaquepts

JAAC. Other Sulfaquepts.

Typic Sulfaquepts

Tropaquepts

Key to subgroups

JAGA. Tropaquepts which have, within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A sulfuric horizon; *or*
2. A horizon 15 cm or more thick that has all the characteristics of a sulfuric horizon, except that it has a pH value between 3.5 and 4.0; *or*
3. Sulfidic materials.

Sulfic Tropaquepts

JAGB. Other Tropaquepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Tropaquepts

JAGC. Other Tropaquepts which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Tropaquepts

JAGD. Other Tropaquepts that have a histic epipedon.

Histic Tropaquepts

JAGE. Other Tropaquepts which have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*
2. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
3. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Aquandic Tropaquepts

JAGF. Other Tropaquepts that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Tropaquepts

JAGG. Other Tropaquepts that have, in 50 percent or more of the matrix of one or more horizons between either the Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 75 cm, colors as follows:

1. A hue of 2.5Y or redder, a color value, moist, of 6 or more, and a chroma of 3 or more; *or*

2. A hue of 2.5Y or redder, a color value, moist, of 5 or less, and a chroma of 2 or more; *or*
3. A hue of 5Y and a chroma of 3 or more; *or*
4. A chroma of 2 or more if there are no redox concentrations.

Aeric Tropaquepts

JAGH. Other Tropaquepts.

Typic Tropaquepts

OCHREPTS

Key to great groups

JDA. Ochrepts that have a sulfuric horizon within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Sulfochrepts, p. 311

JDB. Other Ochrepts that have a fragipan.

Fragiochrepts, p. 310

JDC. Other Ochrepts which have a duripan that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Durochrepts, p. 303

JDD. Other Ochrepts that have a cryic or pergelic soil temperature regime.

Cryochrepts, p. 301

JDE. Other Ochrepts that have an ustic moisture regime.

Ustochrepts, p. 311

JDF. Other Ochrepts that have a xeric moisture regime.

Xerochrepts, p. 317

JDG. Other Ochrepts that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Carbonates within the soil; *or*
2. A base saturation (by NH_4OAc) of 60 percent or more in one or more horizons between 25 and 75 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Eutrochrepts, p. 307

JDH. Other Ochrepts.

Dystrochrepts, p. 304

Cryochrepts

Key to subgroups

JDDA. Cryochrepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Cryochrepts

JDDB. Other Cryochrepts that have a mean annual soil temperature of 0°C or lower.

Pergelic Cryochrepts

JDDC. Other Cryochrepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Cryochrepts

JDDD. Other Cryochrepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandic Cryochrepts

JDDE. Other Cryochrepts that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Cryochrepts

JDDF. Other Cryochrepts that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Cryochrepts

JDDG. Other Cryochrepts which have lamellae within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface that meet all the requirements for an argillic horizon except thickness.

Alfic Cryochrepts

JDDH. Other Cryochrepts that have a base saturation (by NH₄OAc) of less than 60 percent in all horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Dystric Cryochrepts

JDDI. Other Cryochrepts.

Typic Cryochrepts

Durochrepts

Key to subgroups

JDCA. Durochrepts which have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, distinct or prominent redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

a. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*

b. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*

c. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:

(1) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*

(2) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Aquandic Durochrepts

JDCB. Other Durochrepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Durochrepts

JDCC. Other Durochrepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:

a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*

b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandic Durochrepts

JDCD. Other Durochrepts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, distinct or prominent redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Durochrepts

JDCE. Other Durochrepts that do not have a xeric moisture regime.

Ustic Durochrepts

JDCF. Other Durochrepts which have *both*:

1. A duripan that is not indurated in any subhorizon; *and*
2. A base saturation (by NH_4OAc) of less than 60 percent in all horizons between 25 and 75 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Dystric Entic Durochrepts

JDCG. Other Durochrepts which have a duripan that is not indurated in any subhorizon.

Entic Durochrepts

JDCH. Other Durochrepts that have a base saturation (by NH_4OAc) of less than 60 percent in all horizons between 25 and 75 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Dystric Durochrepts

JDCI. Other Durochrepts.

Typic Durochrepts

Dystrochrepts

Key to subgroups

JDHA. Dystrochrepts that have:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. An argillic horizon in less than half of each pedon; *and*
3. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of 35 percent or more in the horizon directly above the lithic contact.

Lithic Ruptic-Alfic Dystrochrepts

JDHB. Other Dystrochrepts that have *both*:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. An argillic horizon in less than half of each pedon.

Lithic Ruptic-Ultic Dystrochrepts

JDHC. Other Dystrochrepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Dystrochrepts

JDHD. Other Dystrochrepts which have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 60 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*
2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:
 - a. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*
 - b. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
 - c. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - (1) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - (2) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Aquandic Dystrochrepts

JDHE. Other Dystrochrepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Dystrochrepts

JDHF. Other Dystrochrepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66

percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:

a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*

b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandic Dystrochrepts

JDHG. Other Dystrochrepts which have:

1. In one or more horizons within 60 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. *Either* 0.2 percent or more organic carbon at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*

3. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Fluvaquentic Dystrochrepts

JDHH. Other Dystrochrepts that have, in one or more horizons within 60 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Dystrochrepts

JDHI. Other Dystrochrepts that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Dystrochrepts

JDHJ. Other Dystrochrepts which have:

1. *Either* 0.2 percent or more organic carbon at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*

2. A slope of less than 25 percent; *and*

3. An Ap horizon with a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample), or materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm which have these color values after mixing.

Fluventic Umbric Dystrochrepts

JDHK. Other Dystrochrepts which have *both*:

1. *Either* 0.2 percent or more organic carbon at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, *or* to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*
2. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Fluventic Dystrochrepts

JDHL. Other Dystrochrepts that have an Ap horizon with a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample), *or* materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm which have these color values after mixing.

Umbric Dystrochrepts

JDHM. Other Dystrochrepts that have *both*:

1. An argillic horizon in less than half of each pedon; *and*
2. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of 35 percent or more either at a depth of 125 cm from the top of the argillic horizon, *or* directly above a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower.

Ruptic-Alfic Dystrochrepts

JDHN. Other Dystrochrepts that have an argillic horizon in less than half of each pedon.

Ruptic-Ultic Dystrochrepts

JDHO. Other Dystrochrepts.

Typic Dystrochrepts

Eutrochrepts

Key to subgroups

JDGA. Eutrochrepts that have *both*:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. An argillic horizon in less than half of each pedon.

Lithic Ruptic-Alfic Eutrochrepts

JDGB. Other Eutrochrepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Eutrochrepts

JDGC. Other Eutrochrepts which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, *and* slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Eutrochrepts

JDGD. Other Eutrochrepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Eutrochrepts

JDGE. Other Eutrochrepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both of* the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandic Eutrochrepts

JDGF. Other Eutrochrepts that have anthraquic conditions.

Anthraquic Eutrochrepts

JDGG. Other Eutrochrepts that have:

1. In one or more horizons within 60 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*
2. *Either* 0.2 percent or more organic carbon at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*
3. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Fluvaquentic Eutrochrepts

JDGH. Other Eutrochrepts which:

1. Have, in one or more horizons within 60 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. Do not, in each pedon, have carbonates in all horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Aquic Dystric Eutrochrepts

JDGI. Other Eutrochrepts that have, in one or more horizons within 60 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Eutrochrepts

JDGJ. Other Eutrochrepts that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Eutrochrepts

JDGK. Other Eutrochrepts which:

1. Do not, in each pedon, have carbonates in all horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. Have *either* 0.2 percent or more organic carbon at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*

3. Have a slope of less than 25 percent.

Dystric Fluventic Eutrochrepts

JDGL. Other Eutrochrepts which have *both*:

1. *Either* 0.2 percent or more organic carbon at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*

2. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Fluventic Eutrochrepts

JDGM. Other Eutrochrepts that have a sandy particle size in all horizons within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Arenic Eutrochrepts

JDGN. Other Eutrochrepts that do not, in each pedon, have carbonates in all horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Dystric Eutrochrepts

JDGO. Other Eutrochrepts that have 40 percent or more carbonates, including coarse fragments up to 75 mm in

diameter, in all horizons between the top of the cambic horizon and either a depth of 100 cm from the mineral soil surface, or a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower.

Rendollic Eutrochrepts

JDGP. Other Eutrochrepts that have an argillic horizon in less than half of each pedon.

Ruptic-Alfic Eutrochrepts

JDGQ. Other Eutrochrepts.

Typic Eutrochrepts

Fragiochrepts

Key to subgroups

JDBA. Fragiochrepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Fragiochrepts

JDBB. Other Fragiochrepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both of* the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandic Fragiochrepts

JDBC. Other Fragiochrepts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, distinct or prominent redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Fragiochrepts

JDBD. Other Fragiochrepts that do not have an ochric epipedon.

Umbric Fragiochrepts

JDBE. Other Fragiochrepts.

Typic Fragiochrepts

Sulfochrepts

Key to subgroups

JDAA. All Sulfochrepts (provisionally).

Typic Sulfochrepts

Ustochrepts

Key to subgroups

JDEA. Ustochrepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Ustochrepts

JDEB. Other Ustochrepts which have *both*:

1. If neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

a. A frigid soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 105 cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for less than four tenths of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C; *and*

2. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Udertic Ustochrepts

JDEC. Other Ustochrepts which have *both*:

1. If neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

a. A frigid soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in all parts for four tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is moist in some or all parts for less than 180 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C; *and*

2. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Torrertic Ustochrepts

JDED. Other Ustochrepts which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Ustochrepts

JDEE. Other Ustochrepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more

within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Ustochrepts

JDEF. Other Ustochrepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandic Ustochrepts

JDEG. Other Ustochrepts that have anthraquic conditions.

Anthraquic Ustochrepts

JDEH. Other Ustochrepts that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Ustochrepts

JDEI. Other Ustochrepts which have:

1. *Either* 0.2 percent or more organic carbon at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, *or* to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*
2. A slope of less than 25 percent; *and*
3. If neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:
 - a. A frigid soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in all parts for four tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is moist in some or all parts for less than 180 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Torrifluventic Ustochrepts

JDEJ. Other Ustochrepts which have:

1. *Either* 0.2 percent or more organic carbon at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*

2. A slope of less than 25 percent; *and*

3. If neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

a. A frigid soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 105 cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for less than four tenths of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Udifluventic Ustochrepts

JDEK. Other Ustochrepts which have *both*:

1. *Either* 0.2 percent or more organic carbon at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*

2. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Fluventic Ustochrepts

JDEL. Other Ustochrepts which have *both*:

1. A calcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. If neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:
 - a. A frigid soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in all parts for four tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
 - b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
 - c. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is moist in some or all parts for less than 180 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Calciorthidic Ustochrepts

JDEM. Other Ustochrepts which have *both*:

1. A calcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. If neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:
 - a. A frigid soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 105 cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
 - b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for less than four tenths of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
 - c. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10

years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Calcic Udic Ustochrepts

JDEN. Other Ustochrepts which have a calcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Calcic Ustochrepts

JDEO. Other Ustochrepts which, if neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *one* of the following:

1. A frigid soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in all parts for four tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
2. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
3. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is moist in some or all parts for less than 180 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Aridic Ustochrepts

JDEP. Other Ustochrepts that have a base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 60 percent in all horizons between either an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and either a depth of 75 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Dystric Ustochrepts

JDEQ. Other Ustochrepts which, if neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *one* of the following:

1. A frigid soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 105 cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
2. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for less than four tenths of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*

3. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Udic Ustochrepts

JDER. Other Ustochrepts.

Typic Ustochrepts

Xerochrepts

Key to subgroups

JDFA. Xerochrepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface in less than half of each pedon.

Ruptic-Lithic Xerochrepts

JDFB. Other Xerochrepts that have *both*:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface; *and*
2. A base saturation (by NH_4OAc) of less than 60 percent in all horizons between 25 cm from the mineral soil surface and the lithic contact.

Dystric Lithic Xerochrepts

JDFC. Other Xerochrepts that have *both*:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. A discontinuous cambic horizon in each pedon.

Lithic Ruptic-Xerorthentic Xerochrepts

JDFD. Other Xerochrepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Xerochrepts

JDFE. Other Xerochrepts that have a petrocalcic horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Pe^{*}rocalcic Xerochrepts

JDFF. Other Xerochrepts which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Xerochrepts

JDFG. Other Xerochrepts which have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*
2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:
 - a. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*
 - b. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
 - c. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - (1) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - (2) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Aquandic Xerochrepts

JDGH. Other Xerochrepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Xerochrepts

JDFI. Other Xerochrepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*

- b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrantic Xerochrepts

JDFJ. Other Xerochrepts that have a gypsic horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Gypsic Xerochrepts

JDFK. Other Xerochrepts that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*
2. A base saturation (by NH_4OAc) of less than 60 percent in all horizons between 25 and 75 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Aquic Dystric Xerochrepts

JDFL. Other Xerochrepts that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Xerochrepts

JDFM. Other Xerochrepts which have:

1. A base saturation (by NH_4OAc) of less than 60 percent in all horizons between 25 and 75 cm from the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. *Either* 0.2 percent or more organic carbon at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, *or* to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*
3. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Dystric Fluventic Xerochrepts

JDFN. Other Xerochrepts which have *both*:

1. *Either* 0.2 percent or more organic carbon at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, *or* to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*
2. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Fluventic Xerochrepts

JDFO. Other Xerochrepts that have a base saturation (by NH_4OAc) of less than 60 percent in all horizons between 25 and 75 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Dystric Xerochrepts

JDFP. Other Xerochrepts that have a calcic horizon or soft powdery lime, either within the following depths or

above a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower, if the particle-size control section is

1. Sandy: within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. Loamy: within 110 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
3. Clayey: within 90 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Calcixerollic Xerochrepts

JDFQ. Other Xerochrepts.

Typic Xerochrepts

PLAGGEPTS

Plaggepts are the soils that have a *plaggen* epipedon. Because Plaggepts are not known to occur in the United States, their classification has not been developed beyond the idea that they should be grouped into a single suborder.

TROPEPTS

Key to great groups

JCA. Tropepts which:

1. Have a base saturation of less than 50 percent (by NH_4OAc) in one or more horizons between 25 and 100 cm from the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. Have 12 kg/m^2 or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact, whichever is shallower; *and*
3. Do not have a sombric horizon.

Humitropepts, p. 325

JCB. Other Tropepts that have a sombric horizon.

Sombritropepts, p. 327

JCC. Other Tropepts that have *both*:

1. An ustic moisture regime; *and*
2. A base saturation (by NH_4OAc) of 50 percent or more in all horizons between a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm, or a lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact if shallower.

Ustropepts, p. 327

JCD. Other Tropepts that have a base saturation (by NH_4OAc) of 50 percent or more in all horizons between a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface and

either a depth of 100 cm, or a lithic, paralithic, or petroferrous contact if shallower.

Eutropepts, p. 323

JCE. Other Tropepts.

Dystropepts, p. 321

Dystropepts

Key to subgroups

JCEA. Dystropepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Dystropepts

JCEB. Other Dystropepts that have a petroferrous contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petroferrous Dystropepts

JCEC. Other Dystropepts which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Dystropepts

JCED. Other Dystropepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Dystropepts

JCEE. Other Dystropepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*

- b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandic Dystropepts

JCEF. Other Dystropepts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Dystropepts

JCEG. Other Dystropepts that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Dystropepts

JCEH. Other Dystropepts which have *both*:

1. *Either* 0.2 percent or more organic carbon at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, or an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*
2. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Fluventic Dystropepts

JCEI. Other Dystropepts that have *both*:

1. An ustic moisture regime; *and*
2. A CEC (by 1N NH₄OAc pH 7) of less than 24 cmol(+)/kg clay¹ in 50 percent or more of the soil volume between a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm, or a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower.

Ustoxic Dystropepts

JCEJ. Other Dystropepts that have a CEC (by 1N NH₄OAc pH 7) of less than 24 cmol(+)/kg clay² in 50 percent or more of the soil volume between a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm, or a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower.

Oxic Dystropepts

JCEK. Other Dystropepts that have an ustic moisture regime.

Ustic Dystropepts

¹ Some cambic horizons with properties that approach those of an oxic horizon do not disperse well. If the ratio of (percent water retained at 1500 kPa tension minus percent organic carbon) to the percentage of measured clay in the fine-earth fraction is 0.6 or more, then the percentage of clay is considered to equal either (1) the measured percentage of clay, or (2) three times (percent water retained at 1500 kPa tension minus percent organic carbon), whichever value is higher, but no more than 100.

² See footnote 1.

JCEL. Other Dystropepts.

Typic Dystropepts

Eutropepts

Key to subgroups

JCDA. Eutropepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Eutropepts

JCDB. Other Eutropepts which have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:
 - a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
 - b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*
2. In one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquertic Eutropepts

JCDC. Other Eutropepts which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Eutropepts

JCDD. Other Eutropepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Eutropepts

JCDE. Other Eutropepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more

within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandid Eutropepts

JCDF. Other Eutropepts that have:

1. In one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*
2. *Either* 0.2 percent or more organic carbon at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, *or* to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*
3. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Fluvaquentic Eutropepts

JCDG. Other Eutropepts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Eutropepts

JCDH. Other Eutropepts that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Eutropepts

JCDI. Other Eutropepts which have *both*:

1. *Either* 0.2 percent or more organic carbon at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, *or* to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*
2. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Fluventic Eutropepts

JCDJ. Other Eutropepts.

Typic Eutropepts

Humitropepts

Key to subgroups

JCAA. Humitropepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Humitropepts

JCAB. Other Humitropepts which have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:
 - a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
 - b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*
2. In one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquertic Humitropepts

JCAC. Other Humitropepts which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Humitropepts

JCAD. Other Humitropepts that have *both*:

1. An ustic moisture regime; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Ustandic Humitropepts

JCAE. Other Humitropepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Humitropepts

JCAF. Other Humitropepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandid Humitropepts

JCAG. Other Humitropepts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Humitropepts

JCAH. Other Humitropepts that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Humitropepts

JCAI. Other Humitropepts which have *both*:

1. An organic-carbon content that decreases irregularly with increasing depth to the lower boundary of the cambic horizon; *and*

2. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Fluventic Humitropepts

JCAJ. Other Humitropepts that have *both*:

1. An ustic moisture regime; *and*
2. A CEC (by 1N NH₄OAc pH 7) of less than 24 cmol(+)/kg clay³ in 50 percent or more of the soil volume between a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm, or a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower.

Ustoxic Humitropepts

JCAK. Other Humitropepts that have a CEC (by 1N NH₄OAc pH 7) of less than 24 cmol(+)/kg clay⁴ in 50 percent or more of the soil volume between a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm, or a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower.

Oxic Humitropepts

JCAL. Other Humitropepts that have an ustic moisture regime.

Ustic Humitropepts

JCAM. Other Humitropepts.

Typic Humitropepts

Sombritropepts

These soils are the dark, humus-rich Tropepts of perhumid, cool, hilly or mountainous regions. They have a sombric horizon within or below a cambic horizon. Most of them have an umbric epipedon, a perudic soil moisture regime, and an isomesic soil temperature regime. They are not known to occur in the United States, and their classification has not been developed.

Ustropepts

Key to subgroups

JCCA. Ustropepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Ustropepts

JCCB. Other Ustropepts which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most

³ Some cambic horizons with properties that approach those of an oxic horizon do not disperse well. If the ratio of (percent water retained at 1500 kPa tension minus percent organic carbon) to the percentage of measured clay in the fine-earth fraction is 0.6 or more, then the percentage of clay is considered to equal either (1) the measured percentage of clay, or (2) three times (percent water retained at 1500 kPa tension minus percent organic carbon), whichever value is higher, but no more than 100.

⁴ See footnote 3.

years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Ustropepts

JCCC. Other Ustropepts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Ustropepts

JCCD. Other Ustropepts that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Ustropepts

JCCE. Other Ustropepts that have a CEC (by 1N NH_4OAc pH 7) of less than 24 cmol(+)/kg clay⁵ in 50 percent or more of the soil volume between a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm, or a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower.

Oxic Ustropepts

JCCF. Other Ustropepts which have *both*:

1. *Either* 0.2 percent or more organic carbon at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*
2. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Fluventic Ustropepts

JCCG. Other Ustropepts.

Typic Ustropepts

UMBREPTS

Key to great groups

JEA. Umbrepts that have a fragipan.

Fragiumbrepts, p. 330

JEB. Other Umbrepts that have a cryic or pergelic soil temperature regime.

Cryumbrepts, p. 329

⁵ See footnote 3.

JEC. Other Umbrepts that have a xeric moisture regime.
Xerumbrepts, p. 333

JED. Other Umbrepts.
Hapumbrepts, p. 331

Cryumbrepts

Key to subgroups

JEBA. Cryumbrepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface in less than half of each pedon.

Ruptic-Lithic Cryumbrepts

JEBB. Other Cryumbrepts which have *both*:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. An umbric epipedon that is discontinuous in each pedon.

Lithic Ruptic-Entic Cryumbrepts

JEBC. Other Cryumbrepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Cryumbrepts

JEBD. Other Cryumbrepts that have a mean annual soil temperature of 0°C or lower.

Pergelic Cryumbrepts

JEBE. Other Cryumbrepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Cryumbrepts

JEBF. Other Cryumbrepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*

b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandic Cryumbrepts

JEBG. Other Cryumbrepts that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Cryumbrepts

JEBH. Other Cryumbrepts that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Cryumbrepts

JEBI. Other Cryumbrepts that do not have a cambic horizon.

Entic Cryumbrepts

JEBJ. Other Cryumbrepts.

Typic Cryumbrepts

Fragiumbrepts

Key to subgroups

JEAA. Fragiumbrepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Fragiumbrepts

JEAB. Other Fragiumbrepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron

percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandic Fragiumbrepts

JEAC. Other Fragiumbrepts that have, in one or more horizons within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Fragiumbrepts

JEAD. Other Fragiumbrepts.

Typic Fragiumbrepts

Haplumbrepts

Key to subgroups

JEDA. Haplumbrepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Haplumbrepts

JEDB. Other Haplumbrepts that have *both*:

1. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *and*
2. In one or more horizons within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquandic Haplumbrepts

JEDC. Other Haplumbrepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Haplumbrepts

JEDD. Other Haplumbrepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:

- a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
- b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandid Haplumbrepts

JEDE. Other Haplumbrepts that have, in all horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A sandy particle size; *and*
2. More than 90 percent silica and other extremely durable minerals in the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction.

Quartzipsammentic Haplumbrepts

JEDF. Other Haplumbrepts that have a sandy particle size in all horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Psammentic Haplumbrepts

JEDG. Other Haplumbrepts which have:

1. An umbric or a mollic epipedon that is 50 cm or more thick; *and*
2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*
3. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Cumulic Haplumbrepts

JEDH. Other Haplumbrepts that have an umbric or a mollic epipedon that is 50 cm or more thick.

Pachic Haplumbrepts

JEDI. Other Haplumbrepts that have, in one or more horizons within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Haplumbrepts

JEDJ. Other Haplumbrepts that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Haplumbrepts

JEDK. Other Haplumbrepts which have *both*:

1. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*
2. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Fluventic Haplumbrepts

JEDL. Other Haplumbrepts that do not have a cambic horizon.

Entic Haplumbrepts

JEDM. Other Haplumbrepts.

Typic Haplumbrepts

Xerumbrepts

Key to subgroups

JECA. Xerumbrepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Xerumbrepts

JECB. Other Xerumbrepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Xerumbrepts

JECC. Other Xerumbrepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both of* the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandic Xerumbrepts

JECD. Other Xerumbrepts that have an umbric or a mollic epipedon that is 50 cm or more thick.

Pachic Xerumbrepts

JECE. Other Xerumbrepts that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Xerumbrepts

JECF. Other Xerumbrepts which have *both*:

1. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*
2. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Fluventic Xerumbrepts

JECG. Other Xerumbrepts that do not have a cambic horizon.

Entic Xerumbrepts

JECH. Other Xerumbrepts.

Typic Xerumbrepts

Chapter 12

Mollisols

KEY TO SUBORDERS

HA. Mollisols that have:

1. An argillic or a natric horizon; *and*
2. An albic horizon with a chroma of 2 or less that is 2.5 cm or more thick, has its lower boundary 18 cm or more below the mineral soil surface, and either lies directly below the mollic epipedon or separates horizons that together meet all the requirements for a mollic epipedon; *and*
3. In one or more subhorizons of the albic and/or the argillic or natric horizon and within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox concentrations in the form of masses or concretions or both, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Albolls, p. 337

HB. Other Mollisols which have aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) between 40 and 50 cm from the mineral soil surface, *and one or more* of the following:

1. A histic epipedon overlying the mollic epipedon; *or*
2. An exchangeable sodium percentage (ESP) of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio, SAR, of 13 or more) in the upper part of the mollic epipedon, and a decrease in ESP (or SAR) values with increasing depth below 50 cm from the mineral soil surface; *or*
3. A calcic or petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
4. *One* of the following colors:
 - a. A chroma of 1 or less in the lower part of the mollic epipedon¹, *and either*
 - (1) Distinct or prominent redox concentrations in the lower part of the mollic epipedon; *or*
 - (2) Either directly below the mollic epipedon, or within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface if a calcic horizon

M
O
L

¹ If the mollic epipedon extends to a lithic contact within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, the requirement for redoximorphic features is waived.

intervenes, a color value, moist, of 4 or more *and one* of the following:

- (a) Fifty percent or more chroma of 1 on faces of peds or in the matrix, a hue of 10YR or redder, and redox concentrations; *or*
- (b) Fifty percent or more chroma of 2 or less on faces of peds or in the matrix, a hue of 2.5Y, and redox concentrations; *or*
- (c) Fifty percent or more chroma of 1 on faces of peds or in the matrix, and a hue of 2.5Y or yellower; *or*
- (d) Fifty percent or more chroma of 3 or less on faces of peds or in the matrix, a hue of 5Y, and redox concentrations; *or*
- (e) Fifty percent or more chroma of 0 on faces of peds or in the matrix; *or*
- (f) A hue of 5GY, 5G, 5BG, or 5B; *or*
- (g) Any color if it results from uncoated sand grains; *or*

b. A chroma of 2 in the lower part of the mollic epipedon, *and either*

- (1) Distinct or prominent redox concentrations in the lower part of the mollic epipedon; *or*
- (2) Directly below the mollic epipedon, *one* of the following matrix colors:
 - (a) A color value, moist, of 4, a chroma of 2, and some redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 1 or less; *or*
 - (b) A color value, moist, of 5 or more, a chroma of 2 or less, and redox concentrations; *or*
 - (c) A color value, moist, of 4 and a chroma of 1 or less; *or*

5. Between 40 and 50 cm from the mineral soil surface, enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

HC. Other Mollisols which:

1. Have a mollic epipedon less than 50 cm thick; *and*
2. Do not have an argillic or a calcic horizon; *and*
3. Have, either within or directly below the mollic epipedon, mineral soil materials less than 7.5 cm in diameter that have a CaCO₃ equivalent of 40 percent or more; *and*
4. Have either a udic moisture regime or a cryic soil temperature regime.

Rendolls, p. 363

HD. Other Mollisols that have either a xeric moisture regime or an aridic moisture regime bordering on a xeric regime, but do not have a cryic soil temperature regime.

Xerolls, p. 394

HE. Other Mollisols that have a frigid, cryic, or pergelic soil temperature regime.

Borolls, p. 346

HF. Other Mollisols that have either an ustic moisture regime, or an aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Ustolls, p. 373

HG. Other Mollisols.

Udolls, p. 364**ALBOLLS****Key to great groups**

HAA. Albolls that have a natric horizon.

Natralbolls, p. 339

HAB. Other Albolls.

Argialbolls, p. 337**Argialbolls**Key to subgroups

HABA. Argialbolls which have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:
 - a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
 - b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either

a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. If not irrigated, a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in all parts for 45 or more consecutive days during the 120 days following the summer solstice.

Xerertic Argialbolls

HABB. Other Argialbolls which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Argialbolls

HABC. Other Argialbolls which:

1. Do not have an abrupt textural change from the albic to the argillic horizon; *and*
2. If not irrigated, have a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in all parts for 45 or more consecutive days during the 120 days following the summer solstice.

Argiaquic Xeric Argialbolls

HABD. Other Argialbolls that do not have an abrupt textural change from the albic to the argillic horizon.

Argiaquic Argialbolls

HABE. Other Argialbolls which, if not irrigated, have a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in all parts for 45 or more consecutive days during the 120 days following the summer solstice.

Xeric Argialbolls

HABF. Other Argialbolls which have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*
2. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*

3. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:

a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*

b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Aquandic Argialbolls

HABG. Other Argialbolls.

Typic Argialbolls

Natralbolls

Key to subgroups

HAAA. All Natralbolls (provisionally).

Typic Natralbolls

AQUOLLS

Key to great groups

HBA. Aquolls that have a cryic or pergelic soil temperature regime.

Cryaquolls, p. 341

HBB. Other Aquolls which have a duripan that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Duraquolls, p. 342

HBC. Other Aquolls that have a natric horizon.

Natraquolls, p. 345

HBD. Other Aquolls which have a calcic or gypsic horizon that has its upper boundary within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface, but do not have an argillic horizon unless it is a buried horizon.

Calciquolls, p. 340

HBE. Other Aquolls that have an argillic horizon.

Argiaquolls, p. 340

HBF. Other Aquolls that have episaturation.

Epiaquolls, p. 344

HBG. Other Aquolls.

Endoquolls, p. 342

Argiaquolls

Key to subgroups

HBEA. Argiaquolls that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm to 100 cm.

Arenic Argiaquolls

HBEB. Other Argiaquolls that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more.

Grossarenic Argiaquolls

HBEC. Other Argiaquolls which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Argiaquolls

HBED. Other Argiaquolls which have an argillic horizon that has a clay increase with depth of 20 percent or more (absolute, in the fine-earth fraction) within its upper 7.5 cm.

Abruptic Argiaquolls

HBEE. Other Argiaquolls.

Typic Argiaquolls

Calciaquolls

Key to subgroups

HBDA. Calciaquolls which have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petrocalcic Calciaquolls

HBDB. Other Calciaquolls that have 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or more on faces of peds or in the matrix of one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, or have, directly below the mollic epipedon, colors as follows:

1. A hue of 2.5Y or yellower and a chroma of 3 or more; *or*
2. A hue of 10YR or redder and a chroma of 2 or more; *or*

3. A hue of 2.5Y or yellower and a chroma of 2 or more if there are no distinct or prominent redox concentrations.

Aeric Calciaquolls

HBDC. Other Calciaquolls.

Typic Calciaquolls

Cryaquolls

Key to subgroups

HBAA. Cryaquolls that have a mean annual soil temperature of 0°C or lower.

Pergelic Cryaquolls

HBAB. Other Cryaquolls which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Cryaquolls

HBAC. Other Cryaquolls that have a histic epipedon.

Histic Cryaquolls

HBAD. Other Cryaquolls which have a buried Histosol that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Thapto-Histic Cryaquolls

HBAE. Other Cryaquolls which have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*

2. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*

3. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:

a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*

b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Aquandic Cryaquolls

HBAF. Other Cryaquolls that have an argillic horizon.

Argic Cryaquolls

HBAG. Other Cryaquolls that have a calcic horizon either within or directly below the mollic epipedon.

Calcic Cryaquolls

HBAH. Other Cryaquolls that have a mollic epipedon 50 cm or more thick.

Cumulic Cryaquolls

HBAI. Other Cryaquolls.

Typic Cryaquolls

Duraquolls

Key to subgroups

HBBA. Duraquolls that have a natric horizon.

Natric Duraquolls

HBBB. Other Duraquolls which have, above the duripan, *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more.

Vertic Duraquolls

HBBC. Other Duraquolls that have an argillic horizon.

Argic Duraquolls

HBBD. Other Duraquolls.

Typic Duraquolls

Endoaquolls

Key to subgroups

HBGA. Endoaquolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Endoaquolls

HBGB. Other Endoaquolls which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has

its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Endoaquolls

HBGC. Other Endoaquolls that have a histic epipedon.

Histic Endoaquolls

HBGD. Other Endoaquolls which have a buried Histosol that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Thapto-Histic Endoaquolls

HBGE. Other Endoaquolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*

2. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*

3. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*

a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*

b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Aquandic Endoaquolls

HBGF. Other Endoaquolls which have a horizon 15 cm or more thick within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface that either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist.

Duric Endoaquolls

HBGG. Other Endoaquolls that have a mollic epipedon 60 cm or more thick.

Cumulic Endoaquolls

HBGH. Other Endoaquolls which have *both*:

1. *Either* 0.3 percent or more organic carbon in all horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125

cm, or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower;
and

2. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Fluvaquentic Endoaquolls

HBGI. Other Endoaquolls.

Typic Endoaquolls

Epiaquolls

Key to subgroups

HBFA. Epiaquolls that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Epiaquolls

HBFB. Other Epiaquolls that have a histic epipedon.

Histic Epiaquolls

HBFC. Other Epiaquolls which have a buried Histosol that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Thapto-Histic Epiaquolls

HBFD. Other Epiaquolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*
2. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
3. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron

percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Aquandic Epiaquolls

HBFE. Other Epiaquolls which have a horizon 15 cm or more thick within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface that either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist.

Duric Epiaquolls

HBFF. Other Epiaquolls that have a mollic epipedon 60 cm or more thick.

Cumulic Epiaquolls

HBFG. Other Epiaquolls which have:

1. *Either* 0.3 percent or more organic carbon in all horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*

2. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Fluvaquentic Epiaquolls

HBFH. Other Epiaquolls.

Typic Epiaquolls

Natraquolls

Key to subgroups

HBCA. Natraquolls which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Natraquolls

HBCB. Other Natraquolls (provisionally).

Typic Natraquolls

BOROLLS

Key to great groups

HEA. Borolls which have *both*:

1. An argillic horizon that has its upper boundary 60 cm or more below the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. A texture finer than loamy fine sand in all horizons above the argillic horizon.

Paleborolls, p. 361

HEB. Other Borolls that have a cryic or pergelic soil temperature regime.

Cryoborolls, p. 352

HEC. Other Borolls which have a natric horizon, but do not have a cambic horizon that is above the natric horizon and separated from it by an albic horizon.

Natriborolls, p. 360

HED. Other Borolls which have an argillic horizon, but do not have a cambic horizon that is above the argillic horizon and separated from it by an albic horizon.

Argiborolls, p. 347

HEE. Other Borolls that have a mollic epipedon which:

1. Either below an Ap horizon or below a depth of 18 cm from the mineral soil surface, contains 50 percent or more (by volume) wormholes, worm casts, or filled animal burrows; *and*
2. Either rests on a lithic contact, or has a transition zone to the underlying horizon in which 25 percent or more of the soil volume consists of discrete wormholes, worm casts, or animal burrows filled with material from the mollic epipedon and from the underlying horizon.

Vermiborolls, p. 363

HEF. Other Borolls which:

1. Have a calcic or petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. In all parts above the calcic or petrocalcic horizon, after the materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm have been mixed, are either calcareous or have a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser.

Calciborolls, p. 351

HEG. Other Borolls.

Haploborolls, p. 356

Argiborolls

Key to subgroups

HEDA. Argiborolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Argiborolls

HEDB. Other Argiborolls that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface.

Arenic Argiborolls

HEDC. Other Argiborolls which have:

1. An argillic horizon that has a clay increase with depth of 20 percent or more (absolute, in the fine-earth fraction) within its upper 7.5 cm; *and*
2. A color value, dry, of 5 or more either in the upper 18 cm of the mollic epipedon, after mixing, or in an Ap horizon 18 cm or more thick; *and*
3. A moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C.

Abruptic Aridic Argiborolls

HEDD. Other Argiborolls which have *both*:

1. An argillic horizon that has a clay increase with depth of 20 percent or more (absolute, in the fine-earth fraction) within its upper 7.5 cm; *and*
2. *Either* a chroma of 1 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) in the upper 18 cm of the mollic epipedon, after mixing, or in an Ap horizon 18 cm or more thick, *or* a moisture control section that is moist in some or all of its parts throughout the year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Abruptic Udic Argiborolls

HEDE. Other Argiborolls which have an argillic horizon that has a clay increase with depth of 20 percent or more (absolute, in the fine-earth fraction) within its upper 7.5 cm.

Abruptic Argiborolls

HEDF. Other Argiborolls which have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:
 - a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. *Both* of the following:

a. A color value, dry, of 5 in the upper 18 cm of the mollic epipedon, after mixing, or in an Ap horizon 18 cm or more thick; *and*

b. If not irrigated, a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher.

Torrertic Argiborolls

HEDG. Other Argiborolls which have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. *Both* of the following:

a. A color value, dry, of 5 or more in the upper 18 cm of the mollic epipedon, after mixing, or in an Ap horizon 18 cm or more thick; *and*

b. If not irrigated, a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher.

Ustertic Argiborolls

HEDH. Other Argiborolls which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Argiborolls

HEDI. Other Argiborolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Argiborolls

HEDJ. Other Argiborolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandic Argiborolls

HEDK. Other Argiborolls which have *both*:

1. A mollic epipedon 40 cm or more thick with a texture finer than loamy fine sand; *and*
2. *Either* a chroma of 1 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) in the upper 18 cm of the mollic epipedon, after mixing, or in an Ap horizon 18 cm or more thick, *or* a moisture control section that is moist in some or all of its parts throughout the year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Pachic Udic Argiborolls

HEDL. Other Argiborolls that have a mollic epipedon 40 cm or more thick with a texture finer than loamy fine sand.

Pachic Argiborolls

HEDM. Other Argiborolls which have *both*:

1. A color value, dry, of 5 or more either in the upper 18 cm of the mollic epipedon, after mixing, or in an Ap horizon 18 cm or more thick; *and*

2. A moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C.

Aridic Argiborolls

HEDN. Other Argiborolls that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Argiborolls

HEDO. Other Argiborolls that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Argiborolls

HEDP. Other Argiborolls which have *both*:

1. *Either* a chroma of 1 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) in the upper 18 cm of the mollic epipedon, after mixing, or in an Ap horizon 18 cm or more thick, *or* a moisture control section that is moist in some or all of its parts throughout the year in 6 or more out of 10 years; *and*

2. *Either*:

- a. Above the argillic horizon, an albic horizon, *or* a horizon that has color values too high for a mollic epipedon and a chroma too high for an albic horizon; *or*

- b. A glossic horizon, *or* interfingering of albic materials into the upper part of the argillic horizon, *or* skeletalans of clean silt and sand covering 50 percent or more of the faces of peds in the upper 5 cm of the argillic horizon.

Boralfic Udic Argiborolls

HEDQ. Other Argiborolls which have *either*:

1. Above the argillic horizon, an albic horizon, *or* a horizon that has color values too high for a mollic epipedon and a chroma too high for an albic horizon; *or*

2. A glossic horizon, *or* interfingering of albic materials into the upper part of the argillic horizon, *or* skeletalans of clean silt and sand covering 50 percent or more of the faces of peds in the upper 5 cm of the argillic horizon.

Boralfic Argiborolls

HEDR. Other Argiborolls that have *either* a chroma of 1 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) in the upper 18 cm of the mollic epipedon, after mixing, or in an Ap horizon 18 cm or more thick, *or* a moisture control

section that is moist in some or all of its parts throughout the year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Udic Argiborolls

HEDS. Other Argiborolls that have an albic horizon directly below the mollic epipedon.

Albolic Argiborolls

HEDT. Other Argiborolls.

Typic Argiborolls

Calciborolls

Key to subgroups

HEFA. Calciborolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Calciborolls

HEFB. Other Calciborolls which have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petrocalcic Calciborolls

HEFC. Other Calciborolls which have *both*:

1. A color value, dry, of 5 or more either in the upper 18 cm of the mollic epipedon, after mixing, or in an Ap horizon 18 cm or more thick; *and*
2. A moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C.

Aridic Calciborolls

HEFD. Other Calciborolls that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, distinct or prominent redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Calciborolls

HEFE. Other Calciborolls that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Calciborolls

HEFF. Other Calciborolls that have a udic moisture regime.

Udic Calciborolls

HEFG. Other Calciborolls.

Typic Calciborolls

Cryoborolls

Key to subgroups

HEBA. Cryoborolls which have *both*:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. An argillic horizon, *and either*:
 - a. Above the argillic horizon, an albic horizon, *or* a horizon that has color values too high for a mollic epipedon and a chroma too high for an albic horizon; *or*
 - b. A glossic horizon, *or* interfingering of albic materials into the upper part of the argillic horizon, *or* skeletal of clean silt and sand covering 50 percent or more of the faces of peds in the upper 5 cm of the argillic horizon.

Boralfic Lithic Cryoborolls

HEBB. Other Cryoborolls which have *both*:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. An argillic horizon.

Argic Lithic Cryoborolls

HEBC. Other Cryoborolls which have *both*:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. A mollic epipedon that is discontinuous in each pedon.

Lithic Ruptic-Entic Cryoborolls

HEBD. Other Cryoborolls which have *both*:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. An argillic horizon that is discontinuous in each pedon.

Lithic Ruptic-Argic Cryoborolls

HEBE. Other Cryoborolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Cryoborolls

HEBF. Other Cryoborolls that have a mean annual soil temperature of 0°C or less.

Pergelic Cryoborolls

HEBG. Other Cryoborolls which have an argillic horizon that has, in half or more of its thickness, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 percent or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or more).

Natric Cryoborolls

HEBH. Other Cryoborolls which have an argillic horizon and *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Argic Vertic Cryoborolls

HEBI. Other Cryoborolls which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Cryoborolls

HEBJ. Other Cryoborolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Cryoborolls

HEBK. Other Cryoborolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*

- b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandic Cryoborolls

HEBL. Other Cryoborolls which have a duripan that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Duric Cryoborolls

HEBM. Other Cryoborolls which have *both*:

1. An albic horizon directly below the mollic epipedon; *and*
2. An argillic horizon that has a clay increase with depth of 20 percent or more (absolute, in the fine-earth fraction) within its upper 7.5 cm.

Abruptic Cryoborolls

HEBN. Other Cryoborolls which have an argillic horizon, *and either*:

1. Above the argillic horizon, an albic horizon, *or* a horizon that has color values too high for a mollic epipedon and a chroma too high for an albic horizon; *or*
2. A glossic horizon, *or* interfingering of albic materials into the upper part of the argillic horizon, *or* skeletal of clean silt and sand covering 50 percent or more of the faces of peds in the upper 5 cm of the argillic horizon.

Boralfic Cryoborolls

HEBO. Other Cryoborolls which have:

1. A mollic epipedon 40 cm or more thick with a texture finer than loamy fine sand; *and*
2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm below the mineral soil surface to a depth of 125 cm, or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*
3. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Cumulic Cryoborolls

HEBP. Other Cryoborolls which have *both*:

1. A mollic epipedon 40 cm or more thick with a texture finer than loamy fine sand; *and*
2. A calcic horizon either within or directly below the mollic epipedon, but *no* argillic horizon in the lower part of the mollic epipedon.

Calcic Pachic Cryoborolls

HEBQ. Other Cryoborolls that have *both*:

1. An argillic horizon; *and*

2. A mollic epipedon 40 cm or more thick with a texture finer than loamy fine sand.

Argic Pachic Cryoborolls

HEBR. Other Cryoborolls that have a mollic epipedon 40 cm or more thick with a texture finer than loamy fine sand.

Pachic Cryoborolls

HEBS. Other Cryoborolls that have *both*:

1. An argillic horizon; *and*
2. In one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, distinct or prominent redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Argiaquic Cryoborolls

HEBT. Other Cryoborolls that have:

1. *Either* 0.3 percent or more organic carbon at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*
2. In one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, distinct or prominent redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*
3. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Fluvaquentic Cryoborolls

HEBU. Other Cryoborolls that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, distinct or prominent redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Cryoborolls

HEBV. Other Cryoborolls that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Cryoborolls

HEBW. Other Cryoborolls which have *both*:

1. *Either* 0.3 percent or more organic carbon at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*
2. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Fluventic Cryoborolls

HEBX. Other Cryoborolls that have an argillic horizon.

Argic Cryoborolls

HEBY. Other Cryoborolls that have a calcic horizon either within or directly below the mollic epipedon.

Calcic Cryoborolls

HEBZ. Other Cryoborolls that have an albic horizon directly below the mollic epipedon.

Albic Cryoborolls

HEBZa. Other Cryoborolls.

Typic Cryoborolls

Haploborolls

Key to subgroups

HEGA. Haploborolls which have a salic horizon that has its upper boundary within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Salorthidic Haploborolls

HEGB. Other Haploborolls that have, in part but not all of each pedon, a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Ruptic-Lithic Haploborolls

HEGC. Other Haploborolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Haploborolls

HEGD. Other Haploborolls which have *both*:

1. *Either* a chroma of 1 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) in the upper 18 cm of the mollic epipedon, after mixing, or in an Ap horizon 18 cm or more thick, *or* a moisture control section that is not dry in all its parts throughout the year in 6 or more out of 10 years; *and*

2. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Udertic Haploborolls

HEGE. Other Haploborolls which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has

its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Haploborolls

HEGF. Other Haploborolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Haploborolls

HEGG. Other Haploborolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandid Haploborolls

HEGH. Other Haploborolls which have:

1. A mollic epipedon 40 cm or more thick, of which less than 50 percent has a sandy particle size, and no paralithic contact or sandy contrasting layer between 40 and 50 cm from the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm below the mineral soil surface to a depth of 125 cm, or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*
3. A slope of less than 25 percent and a concave shape; *and*
4. *Either* a chroma of 1 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) in the upper 18 cm of the mollic epipedon, after mixing, or in an Ap horizon 18 cm or more thick, *or* a moisture control section

that is moist in some or all of its parts throughout the year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Cumulic Udic Haploborolls

HEGI. Other Haploborolls which have:

1. A mollic epipedon 40 cm or more thick, of which less than 50 percent has a sandy particle size, and no paralithic contact or sandy contrasting layer between 40 and 50 cm from the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm below the mineral soil surface to a depth of 125 cm, or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*
3. A slope of less than 25 percent and a concave shape.

Cumulic Haploborolls

HEGJ. Other Haploborolls that have *both*:

1. A mollic epipedon 40 cm or more thick, of which less than 50 percent has a sandy particle size, and no paralithic contact or sandy contrasting layer between 40 and 50 cm from the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. *Either* a chroma of 1 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) in the upper 18 cm of the mollic epipedon, after mixing, or in an Ap horizon 18 cm or more thick, *or* a moisture control section that is moist in some or all of its parts throughout the year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Pachic Udic Haploborolls

HEGK. Other Haploborolls that have a mollic epipedon 40 cm or more thick, of which less than 50 percent has a sandy particle size, and no paralithic contact or sandy contrasting layer between 40 and 50 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Pachic Haploborolls

HEGL. Other Haploborolls that have:

1. *Either* 0.3 percent or more organic carbon at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*
2. In one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*
3. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Fluvaquentic Haploborolls

HEGM. Other Haploborolls that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface,

redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Haploborolls

HEGN. Other Haploborolls that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Haploborolls

HEGO. Other Haploborolls which have:

1. A color value, dry, of 5 or more either in the upper 18 cm of the mollic epipedon, after mixing, or in an Ap horizon 18 cm or more thick; *and*
2. If not irrigated, a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*
3. *Either* 0.3 percent or more organic carbon at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*
4. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Torrifluventic Haploborolls

HEGP. Other Haploborolls which:

1. Have a color value, dry, of 5 or more either in the upper 18 cm of the mollic epipedon, after mixing, or in an Ap horizon 18 cm or more thick; *and*
2. If not irrigated, have a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5°C or higher; *and*
3. Do not have a cambic horizon and do not, in the lower part of the mollic epipedon, meet the requirements for a cambic horizon except color.

Torriorthentic Haploborolls

HEGQ. Other Haploborolls which have *both*:

1. A color value, dry, of 5 or more either in the upper 18 cm of the mollic epipedon, after mixing, or in an Ap horizon 18 cm or more thick; *and*
2. A moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C.

Aridic Haploborolls

HEGR. Other Haploborolls which have *both*:

1. *Either* 0.3 percent or more organic carbon at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, *or* to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*
2. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Fluventic Haploborolls

HEGS. Other Haploborolls which:

1. Have *either* a chroma of 1 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) in the upper 18 cm of the mollic epipedon, after mixing, *or* in an Ap horizon 18 cm or more thick, *or* a moisture control section that is moist in some or all of its parts throughout the year in 6 or more out of 10 years; *and*
2. Do not have a cambic horizon and do not, in the lower part of the mollic epipedon, meet the requirements for a cambic horizon except color.

Udorthentic Haploborolls

HEGT. Other Haploborolls that have *either* a chroma of 1 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) in the upper 18 cm of the mollic epipedon, after mixing, *or* in an Ap horizon 18 cm or more thick, *or* a moisture control section that is moist in some or all of its parts throughout the year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Udic Haploborolls

HEGU. Other Haploborolls that do not have a cambic horizon and do not, in the lower part of the mollic epipedon, meet the requirements for a cambic horizon except color.

Entic Haploborolls

HEGV. Other Haploborolls.

Typic Haploborolls

Natriborolls

Key to subgroups

HECA. Natriborolls which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Natriborolls

HECB. Other Natriborolls that have visible crystals of gypsum and/or more soluble salts within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Leptic Natriborolls

HECC. Other Natriborolls which have *both*:

1. A color value, dry, of 5 or more either in the upper 18 cm of the mollic epipedon, after mixing, or in an Ap horizon 18 cm or more thick; *and*
2. A moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for six tenths or more of the cumulative days when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C.

Aridic Natriborolls

HECD. Other Natriborolls that have *both*:

1. A glossic horizon, or interfingering of albic materials into the natric horizon; *and*
2. A chroma of 1 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) either in the upper 18 cm of the mollic epipedon, after mixing, or in an Ap horizon 18 cm or more thick.

Glossic Udic Natriborolls

HECE. Other Natriborolls that have a chroma of 1 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) either in the upper 18 cm of the mollic epipedon, after mixing, or in an Ap horizon 18 cm or more thick.

Udic Natriborolls

HECF. Other Natriborolls that have a glossic horizon, or interfingering of albic materials into the natric horizon.

Glossic Natriborolls

HECG. Other Natriborolls.

Typic Natriborolls

Paleborolls

Key to subgroups

HEAA. Paleborolls that have *both*:

1. A mollic epipedon 50 cm or more thick; *and*
2. A mean summer soil temperature either at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface or at a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower, of less than 15°C if there is no O horizon, or of less than 8°C if there is an O horizon.

Cryic Pachic Paleborolls

HEAB. Other Paleborolls which have *both*:

1. An argillic horizon that has a clay increase with depth of 20 percent or more (absolute, in the fine-earth fraction) within its upper 7.5 cm; *and*

2. A mean summer soil temperature either at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface or at a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower, of less than 15°C if there is no O horizon, or of less than 8°C if there is an O horizon.

Abruptic Cryic Paleborolls

HEAC. Other Paleborolls which have an argillic horizon that has a clay increase with depth of 20 percent or more (absolute, in the fine-earth fraction) within its upper 7.5 cm.

Abruptic Paleborolls

HEAD. Other Paleborolls which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Paleborolls

HEAE. Other Paleborolls that have a mean summer soil temperature either at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface or at a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower, of less than 15°C if there is no O horizon, or of less than 8°C if there is an O horizon.

Cryic Paleborolls

HEAF. Other Paleborolls that have a mollic epipedon 50 cm or more thick.

Pachic Paleborolls

HEAG. Other Paleborolls that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Paleborolls

HEAH. Other Paleborolls that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Paleborolls

HEAI. Other Paleborolls.

Typic Paleborolls

Vermiborolls

Key to subgroups

HEEA. Vermiborolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Vermiborolls

HEEB. Other Vermiborolls which have *both*:

1. A color value, dry, of 5 either in the upper 18 cm of the mollic epipedon, after mixing, or in an Ap horizon 18 cm or more thick; *and*
2. A moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C.

Aridic Vermiborolls

HEEC. Other Vermiborolls that have *both*:

1. A mollic epipedon less than 75 cm thick; *and*
2. A chroma of 1 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) either in the upper 18 cm of the mollic epipedon, after mixing, or in an Ap horizon 18 cm or more thick.

Hapludic Vermiborolls

HEED. Other Vermiborolls that have a chroma of 1 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) either in the upper 18 cm of the mollic epipedon, after mixing, or in an Ap horizon 18 cm or more thick.

Udic Vermiborolls

HEEE. Other Vermiborolls that have a mollic epipedon less than 75 cm thick.

Haplic Vermiborolls

HEEF. Other Vermiborolls.

Typic Vermiborolls

RENDOLLS

Key to subgroups

HCAA. Rendolls that have *both*:

1. A cryic or pergelic soil temperature regime; *and*
2. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Cryic Lithic Rendolls

HCAB. Other Rendolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Rendolls

HCAC. Other Rendolls that have a cryic or pergelic soil temperature regime.

Cryic Rendolls

HCAD. Other Rendolls which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Rendolls

HCAE. Other Rendolls that have *both*:

1. A cambic horizon; *and*
2. A difference of less than 5°C between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface.

Eutropeptic Rendolls

HCAF. Other Rendolls that have a cambic horizon.

Eutrochreptic Rendolls

HCAG. Other Rendolls that have a color value, dry, of 6 or more either in the upper 18 cm of the mollic epipedon, after mixing, or in an Ap horizon 18 cm or more thick.

Entic Rendolls

HCAH. Other Rendolls.

Typic Rendolls

UDOLLS

Key to great groups

HGA. Udolls which have *either*:

1. A petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. *Both*:
 - a. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, neither a lithic or paralithic contact nor a clay decrease with increasing depth of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content; *and*
 - b. An argillic horizon which has *either*:
 - (1) In its lowest subhorizon, a hue of 7.5YR or redder and a chroma of 5 or more in 50 percent or more of the matrix; *or*

(2) In one or more of its subhorizons, many coarse redox concentrations with a hue of 5YR or redder or a chroma of 6 or more, or both.

Paleudolls, p. 372

HGB. Other Udolls which:

1. Have a calcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. Do *not* have an argillic horizon above the calcic horizon; *and*
3. In all parts above the calcic or petrocalcic horizon, after the materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm have been mixed, are either calcareous or have a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser.

Calciudolls, p. 368

HGC. Other Udolls that have an argillic horizon.

Argiudolls, p. 365

HGD. Other Udolls that have a mollic epipedon which:

1. Either below an Ap horizon or below a depth of 18 cm from the mineral soil surface, contains 50 percent or more (by volume) wormholes, worm casts, or filled animal burrows; *and*
2. Either rests on a lithic contact, or has a transition zone to the underlying horizon in which 25 percent or more of the soil volume consists of discrete wormholes, worm casts, or animal burrows filled with material from the mollic epipedon and from the underlying horizon.

Vermudolls, p. 373

HGE. Other Udolls.

Hapludolls, p. 368

Argiudolls

Key to subgroups

HGCA. Argiudolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Argiudolls

HGCB. Other Argiudolls which have *both*:

1. Aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage), *either*:
 - a. Within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface, in horizons that also have redoximorphic features; *or*
 - b. Directly below the mollic epipedon, in one or more horizons with a total thickness

of 15 cm or more that have *one or more* of the following:

- (1) A color value, moist, of 4 or more and redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less; *or*
- (2) A hue of 10YR or redder and a chroma of 2 or less; *or*
- (3) A hue of 2.5Y or yellower and a chroma of 3 or less; *and*

2. *One or both* of the following:

- a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
- b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Aquertic Argiudolls

HGCC. Other Argiudolls which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Argiudolls

HGCD. Other Argiudolls which have an argillic horizon that either has a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser, or consists entirely of lamellae.

Psammentic Argiudolls

HGCE. Other Argiudolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Argiudolls

HGCF. Other Argiudolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more

HGCL. Other Argiudolls.

Typic Argiudolls

Calciudolls

Key to subgroups

HGBA. Calciudolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Calciudolls

HGBB. Other Calciudolls which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Calciudolls

HGBC. Other Calciudolls that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Calciudolls

HGBD. Other Calciudolls.

Typic Calciudolls

Hapludolls

Key to subgroups

HGEA. Hapludolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Hapludolls

HGEB. Other Hapludolls which have *both*:

1. Aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage), *either*:
 - a. Within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface, in horizons that also have redoximorphic features; *or*
 - b. Directly below the mollic epipedon, in one or more horizons with a total thickness of 15 cm or more that have *one or more* of the following:

within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandic Argiudolls

HGCG. Other Argiudolls which have aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage), *either*:

1. Within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface, in horizons that also have redoximorphic features; *or*
2. Directly below the mollic epipedon, in one or more horizons with a total thickness of 15 cm or more that have *one or more* of the following:
 - a. A color value, moist, of 4 or more and redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less; *or*
 - b. A hue of 10YR or redder and a chroma of 2 or less; *or*
 - c. A hue of 2.5Y or yellower and a chroma of 3 or less.

Aquic Argiudolls

HGCH. Other Argiudolls that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Argiudolls

HGCI. Other Argiudolls that have a mollic epipedon 50 cm or more thick with a texture finer than loamy fine sand.

Pachic Argiudolls

JGCI. Other Argiudolls that have a CEC of less than 24 cmol(+)/kg clay (by 1N NH₄OAc pH 7) in 50 percent or more *either* of the argillic horizon if less than 100 cm thick, *or* of its upper 100 cm.

Oxic Argiudolls

HGCK. Other Argiudolls that have a calcic horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Calcic Argiudolls

(1) A color value, moist, of 4 or more and redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less; *or*

(2) A hue of 10YR or redder and a chroma of 2 or less; *or*

(3) A hue of 2.5Y or yellower and a chroma of 3 or less; *and*

2. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Aquertic Hapludolls

HGEC. Other Hapludolls which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Hapludolls

HGED. Other Hapludolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Hapludolls

HGEE. Other Hapludolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:

a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*

b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandic Hapludolls

HGEF. Other Hapludolls which have:

1. A mollic epipedon 60 cm or more thick with a texture finer than loamy fine sand; *and*

2. *Either* 0.3 percent or more organic carbon at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, *or* to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*

3. A slope of 25 percent or less.

Cumulic Hapludolls

HGEG. Other Hapludolls that have:

1. Aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage), *either*:

a. Within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface, in horizons that also have redoximorphic features; *or*

b. Directly below the mollic epipedon, in one or more horizons with a total thickness of 15 cm or more that have *one or more* of the following:

(1) A color value, moist, of 4 or more and redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less; *or*

(2) A hue of 10YR or redder and a chroma of 2 or less; *or*

(3) A hue of 2.5Y or yellower and a chroma of 3 or less; *and*

2. *Either* 0.3 percent or more organic carbon at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, *or* to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*

3. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Fluvaquentic Hapludolls

HGEH. Other Hapludolls which have aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage), *either*:

1. Within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface, in horizons that also have redoximorphic features; *or*
2. Directly below the mollic epipedon, in one or more horizons with a total thickness of 15 cm or more that have *one or more* of the following:
 - a. A color value, moist, of 4 or more and redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less; *or*
 - b. A hue of 10YR or redder and a chroma of 2 or less; *or*
 - c. A hue of 2.5Y or yellower and a chroma of 3 or less.

Aquic Hapludolls

HGEI. Other Hapludolls that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Hapludolls

HGEJ. Other Hapludolls which have *both*:

1. *Either* 0.3 percent or more organic carbon at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, *or* to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*
2. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Fluventic Hapludolls

HGEK. Other Hapludolls which have *both*:

1. A mollic epipedon 60 cm or more thick that has a texture finer than loamy fine sand and contains 50 percent or more (by volume) wormholes, worm casts, or filled animal burrows, either below an Ap horizon or below a depth of 18 cm from the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. *Either* do not have a cambic horizon and do not, in the lower part of the mollic epipedon, meet the requirements for a cambic horizon except color, *or* have carbonates throughout either the cambic horizon or the lower part of the mollic epipedon.

Vermic Hapludolls

HGEL. Other Hapludolls that have a calcic horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Calcic Hapludolls

HGEM. Other Hapludolls that *either* do not have a cambic horizon and do not, in the lower part of the mollic epipedon, meet the requirements for a cambic horizon except color, *or* have carbonates throughout either the cambic horizon or the lower part of the mollic epipedon.

Entic Hapludolls

HGEN. Other Hapludolls.

Typic Hapludolls

Paleudolls

Key to subgroups

HGAA. Paleudolls which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Paleudolls

HGAB. Other Paleudolls that have a petrocalcic horizon within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petrocalcic Paleudolls

HGAC. Other Paleudolls that have, in one or more subhorizons within the upper 50 cm of the argillic horizon, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Paleudolls

HGAD. Other Paleudolls that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Paleudolls

HGAE. Other Paleudolls which:

1. Have a calcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. In all parts above the calcic horizon, after the materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm have been mixed, are either calcareous or have a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser.

Calcic Paleudolls

HGAF. Other Paleudolls.

Typic Paleudolls

Vermudolls

Key to subgroups

HGDA. Vermudolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Vermudolls

HGDB. Other Vermudolls that have a cambic horizon.

Haplic Vermudolls

HGDC. Other Vermudolls that have a mollic epipedon less than 75 cm thick.

Entic Vermudolls

HGDD. Other Vermudolls.

Typic Vermudolls

USTOLLS

Key to great groups

HFA. Ustolls which have a duripan that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Durustolls, p. 382

HFB. Other Ustolls that have a natric horizon.

Natrustolls, p. 389

HFC. Other Ustolls which have *either*:

1. A petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, *and* either an argillic horizon or, after the materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm have been mixed, one or more noncalcareous horizons above the petrocalcic horizon; *or*

2. An argillic horizon that has *one or both* of the following:

a. *No* clay decrease with increasing depth of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface (and there is no lithic or paralithic contact within that depth), *and either*:

(1) A hue of 7.5YR or redder and a chroma of 5 or more in the matrix; *or*

(2) Common coarse redox concentrations with a hue of 7.5YR or redder or a chroma of 6 or more, or both; *or*

b. A clayey particle size in its upper part, and at its upper boundary, a clay increase of either 20 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 7.5 cm, or of 15

percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 2.5 cm, in the fine-earth fraction (and there is no lithic or paralithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface).

Paleustolls, p. 391

HFD. Other Ustolls which:

1. Have *either* a calcic or gypsic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface, *or* a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. Do not have an argillic horizon above the calcic, gypsic, or petrocalcic horizon; *and*
3. In all parts above the calcic, gypsic, or petrocalcic horizon, after the materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm have been mixed, are either calcareous or have a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser.

Calciustolls, p. 379

HFE. Other Ustolls that have an argillic horizon.

Argiustolls, p. 374

HFF. Other Ustolls that have a mollic epipedon which:

1. Either below an Ap horizon or below a depth of 18 cm from the mineral soil surface, contains 50 percent or more (by volume) wormholes, worm casts, or filled animal burrows; *and*
2. Either rests on a lithic contact, or has a transition zone to the underlying horizon in which 25 percent or more of the soil volume consists of discrete wormholes, worm casts, or animal burrows filled with material from the mollic epipedon and from the underlying horizon.

Vermustolls, p. 394

HFG. Other Ustolls.

Haplustolls, p. 382

Argiustolls

Key to subgroups

HFEA. Argiustolls which have *both*:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. Above the argillic horizon, either an albic horizon, or a horizon that has color values too high for a mollic epipedon and a chroma too high for an albic horizon.

Alfic Lithic Argiustolls

HFEB. Other Argiustolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Argiustolls

HFEC. Other Argiustolls that have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:
 - a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
 - b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*
2. If neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:
 - a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
 - b. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, remains moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Torrertic Argiustolls

HFED. Other Argiustolls which have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:
 - a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
 - b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*
2. If neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:
 - a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for four tenths or less of the cumulative days per year when the

temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*

b. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Udertic Argiustolls

HFEE. Other Argiustolls which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Argiustolls

HFEF. Other Argiustolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Argiustolls

HFEG. Other Argiustolls which have *both*:

1. If neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:
 - a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
 - b. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, remains moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C; *and*
2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

- a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
- b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:

- (1) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*

- (2) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitritorrandid Argiustolls

HFEH. Other Argiustolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

- 1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
- 2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandid Argiustolls

HFEI. Other Argiustolls which have a mean annual soil temperature lower than 10°C, *and either*:

- 1. Above the argillic horizon, an albic horizon, *or* a horizon that has color values too high for a mollic epipedon and a chroma too high for an albic horizon; *or*
- 2. A glossic horizon, *or* interfingering of albic materials into the upper part of the argillic horizon, *or* skeletal of clean silt and sand covering 50 percent or more of the faces of peds in the upper 5 cm of the argillic horizon.

Boralfic Argiustolls

HFEJ. Other Argiustolls which have *either*:

- 1. Above the argillic horizon, an albic horizon, *or* a horizon that has color values too high for a

mollic epipedon and a chroma too high for an albic horizon; *or*

2. A glossic horizon, *or* interfingering of albic materials into the upper part of the argillic horizon, *or* skeletons of clean silt and sand covering 50 percent or more of the faces of peds in the upper 5 cm of the argillic horizon.

Ustalfic Argiustolls

HF EK. Other Argiustolls that have a mollic epipedon 50 cm or more thick with a texture finer than loamy fine sand.

Pachic Argiustolls

HF EL. Other Argiustolls that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (*or* artificial drainage).

Aquic Argiustolls

HF EM. Other Argiustolls that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Argiustolls

HF EN. Other Argiustolls which have, if neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*

2. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, remains moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Aridic Argiustolls

HF EO. Other Argiustolls which have, if neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for four tenths or less of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*

2. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative

days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Udic Argiustolls

HFEP. Other Argiustolls which have a brittle horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and contains either some opal coatings or 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes.

Duric Argiustolls

HFEQ. Other Argiustolls.

Typic Argiustolls

Calciustolls

Key to subgroups

HFDA. Calciustolls which have a salic horizon that has its upper boundary within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Salorthidic Calciustolls

HFDB. Other Calciustolls that have a petrocalcic horizon and a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Petrocalcic Calciustolls

HFDC. Other Calciustolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Calciustolls

HFDD. Other Calciustolls which have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. If neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:

a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*

b. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10

years, remains moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Torrertic Calciustolls

HFDE. Other Calciustolls which have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. If neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:

a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for four tenths or less of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*

b. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Udertic Calciustolls

HFDF. Other Calciustolls which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Calciustolls

HFDG. Other Calciustolls which have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petrocalcic Calciustolls

HFDH. Other Calciustolls that have a mollic epipedon 40 cm or more thick with a texture finer than loamy fine sand.

Pachic Calciustolls

HFDI. Other Calciustolls that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Calciustolls

HFDJ. Other Calciustolls that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Calciustolls

HFDK. Other Calciustolls which have, if neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
2. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, remains moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Aridic Calciustolls

HFDL. Other Calciustolls which have, if neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for four tenths or less of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
2. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Udic Calciustolls

HFDM. Other Calciustolls.

Typic Calciustolls

Durustolls

Key to subgroups

HFAA. Durustolls that have a natric horizon above the duripan.

Natric Durustolls

HFAB. Other Durustolls which:

1. Do not have an argillic horizon above the duripan; *and*
2. Have an aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Orthidic Durustolls

HFAC. Other Durustolls that have an aridic moisture regime that borders on an ustic regime.

Aridic Durustolls

HFAD. Other Durustolls that do not have an argillic horizon above the duripan.

Entic Durustolls

HFAE. Other Durustolls which have a duripan that is not indurated in any subhorizon.

Haplic Durustolls

HFAF. Other Durustolls.

Typic Durustolls

Haplustolls

Key to subgroups

HFGA. Haplustolls which have a salic horizon that has its upper boundary within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Salorthidic Haplustolls

HFGB. Other Haplustolls that have, in part of each pedon, a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Ruptic-Lithic Haplustolls

HFGC. Other Haplustolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Haplustolls

HFGD. Other Haplustolls which have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:
 - a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
 - b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either

a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. If neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:

a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*

b. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, remains moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Torrertic Haplustolls

HFGE. Other Haplustolls which have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. If neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:

a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for four tenths or less of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*

b. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Udertic Haplustolls

HFGF. Other Haplustolls which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Haplustolls

HFGG. Other Haplustolls which have *both*:

1. If neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:
 - a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
 - b. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, remains moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C; *and*
2. A CEC (by 1N NH₄OAc pH 7) of less than 24 cmol(+)/kg clay² in 50 percent or more of the soil volume between a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm, or a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower.

Torroxic Haplustolls

HFGH. Other Haplustolls that have a CEC (by 1N NH₄OAc pH 7) of less than 24 cmol(+)/kg clay³ in 50 percent or more of the soil volume between a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm, or a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower.

Oxic Haplustolls

HFGI. Other Haplustolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth

² Some soils with properties that approach those of an oxic horizon do not disperse well. If the ratio of (percent water retained at 1500 kPa tension minus percent organic carbon) to the percentage of measured clay is 0.6 or more, then the percentage of clay is considered to equal either (1) the measured percentage of clay, or (2) three times (percent water retained at 1500 kPa tension minus percent organic carbon), whichever value is higher, but no more than 100.

³ See footnote 2.

fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Haplustolls

HFGJ. Other Haplustolls which have *both*:

1. If neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:
 - a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
 - b. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, remains moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C; *and*
2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:
 - a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
 - b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - (1) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - (2) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitritorrandic Haplustolls

HFGK. Other Haplustolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:

- a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
- b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandic Haplustolls

HFGL. Other Haplustolls which have:

1. A mollic epipedon 50 cm or more thick with a texture finer than loamy fine sand; *and*
2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm below the mineral soil surface to a depth of 125 cm, or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*
3. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Cumulic Haplustolls

HFGM. Other Haplustolls that have a mollic epipedon 50 cm or more thick with a texture finer than loamy fine sand.

Pachic Haplustolls

HFGN. Other Haplustolls that have anthraquic conditions.

Anthraquic Haplustolls

HFGO. Other Haplustolls that have:

1. In one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*
2. *Either* 0.3 percent or more organic carbon at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*
3. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Fluvaquentic Haplustolls

HFGP. Other Haplustolls that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Haplustolls

HFGQ. Other Haplustolls that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Haplustolls

HFGR. Other Haplustolls which have:

1. If neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:
 - a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
 - b. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, remains moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C; *and*
2. *Either* 0.3 percent or more organic carbon at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*
3. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Torrifluentic Haplustolls

HFGS. Other Haplustolls which:

1. Have, if neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:
 - a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
 - b. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, remains moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C; *and*

2. *Either* do not have a cambic horizon and do not, in the lower part of the mollic epipedon, meet the requirements for a cambic horizon except color, *or* have carbonates throughout either the cambic horizon or the lower part of the mollic epipedon.

Torriorthentic Haplustolls

HFGT. Other Haplustolls which have, if neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
2. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, remains moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Aridic Haplustolls

HFGU. Other Haplustolls which have *both*:

1. *Either* 0.3 percent or more organic carbon at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*
2. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Fluventic Haplustolls

HFGV. Other Haplustolls which have a brittle horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and contains either some opal coatings or 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes.

Duric Haplustolls

HFGW. Other Haplustolls which:

1. Have, if neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:
 - a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for four tenths or less of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
 - b. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 days per year when the

temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C; *and*

2. *Either* do not have a cambic horizon and do not, in the lower part of the mollic epipedon, meet the requirements for a cambic horizon except color, *or* have carbonates throughout either the cambic horizon or the lower part of the mollic epipedon.

Udorthentic Haplustolls

HFGX. Other Haplustolls which have, if neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for four tenths or less of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
2. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Udic Haplustolls

HFGY. Other Haplustolls that *either* do not have a cambic horizon and do not, in the lower part of the mollic epipedon, meet the requirements for a cambic horizon except color, *or* have carbonates throughout either the cambic horizon or the lower part of the mollic epipedon.

Entic Haplustolls

HFGZ. Other Haplustolls.

Typic Haplustolls

Natrustolls

Key to subgroups

HFBA. Natrustolls which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Natrustolls

HFBB. Other Natrustolls that have visible crystals of gypsum or of more soluble salts, or both, within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Leptic Natrustolls

HFBC. Other Natrustolls that have, in one or more horizons between 50 and 100 cm from the mineral soil surface, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and one* of the following:

1. Fifty percent or more chroma of 1 or less, and a hue of 2.5Y or yellower; *or*
2. Fifty percent or more chroma of 2 or less, and redox concentrations; *or*
3. Fifty percent or more chroma of 2 or less; *and also* a higher exchangeable sodium percentage (or sodium adsorption ratio) between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 25 cm than in the underlying horizon.

Aquic Natrustolls

HFBD. Other Natrustolls which have, if neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
2. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, remains moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Aridic Natrustolls

HFBE. Other Natrustolls which have a brittle horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and contains either some opal coatings or 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes.

Duric Natrustolls

HFBF. Other Natrustolls that have a glossic horizon, or interfingering of albic materials into a natric horizon.

Glossic Natrustolls

HFBG. Other Natrustolls.

Typic Natrustolls

Paleustolls

Key to subgroups

HFCA. Paleustolls which have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:
 - a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
 - b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*
2. If neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:
 - a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
 - b. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, remains moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Torrertic Paleustolls

HFCB. Other Paleustolls which have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:
 - a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
 - b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*
2. If neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:
 - a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section

which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for four tenths or less of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*

b. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Udertic Paleustolls

HFCC. Other Paleustolls which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Paleustolls

HFCB. Other Paleustolls that have a mollic epipedon 50 cm or more thick with a texture finer than loamy fine sand.

Pachic Paleustolls

HFCE. Other Paleustolls that have a petrocalcic horizon within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petrocalcic Paleustolls

HFCF. Other Paleustolls that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also *aquic* conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Paleustolls

HFCG. Other Paleustolls which:

1. Are calcareous throughout after the soil has been mixed to a depth of 18 cm, and have a calcic horizon within the following depths if the particle-size control section is

a. Sandy: within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. Loamy: within 60 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

c. Clayey: within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. Have, if neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:

- a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
- b. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, remains moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Calciorthidic Paleustolls

HFCH. Other Paleustolls which have, if neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for six tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
2. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, remains moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Aridic Paleustolls

HFCI. Other Paleustolls which have, if neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for four tenths or less of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
2. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Udic Paleustolls

HFCJ. Other Paleustolls which are calcareous throughout after the soil has been mixed to a depth of 18 cm, and have a calcic horizon within the following depths if the particle-size control section is

1. Sandy: within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. Loamy: within 60 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
3. Clayey: within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Calcic Paleustolls

HFCK. Other Paleustolls that are calcareous throughout after the soil has been mixed to a depth of 18 cm.

Entic Paleustolls

HFCL. Other Paleustolls.

Typic Paleustolls**Vermustolls****Key to subgroups**

HFFA. Vermustolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Vermustolls

HFFB. Other Vermustolls that have a mollic epipedon 75 cm or more thick.

Pachic Vermustolls

HFFC. Other Vermustolls that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Vermustolls

HFFD. Other Vermustolls that have a cambic horizon.

Haplic Vermustolls

HFFE. Other Vermustolls that have a mollic epipedon less than 50 cm thick.

Entic Vermustolls

HFFF. Other Vermustolls.

Typic Vermustolls**XEROLLS****Key to great groups**

HDA. Xerolls that have a duripan within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Durixerolls, p. 401

HDB. Other Xerolls which have a natric horizon, but do not have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Natrixerolls, p. 409

HDC. Other Xerolls which have *either*:

1. A petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. An argillic horizon that has *one or both* of the following:
 - a. No clay decrease with increasing depth of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface (and there is no lithic or paralithic contact within that depth), *and either*:
 - (1) A hue of 7.5YR or redder and a chroma of 5 or more in the matrix; *or*
 - (2) Common coarse redox concentrations with a hue of 7.5YR or redder or a chroma of 6 or more, or both; *or*
 - b. A clayey particle size in its upper part, and at its upper boundary, a clay increase of either 20 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 7.5 cm, or of 15 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 2.5 cm, in the fine-earth fraction (and there is no lithic or paralithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface).

Palexerolls, p. 409**HDD. Other Xerolls which:**

1. Have a calcic or gypsic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. In all parts above the calcic or gypsic horizon, after the soil has been mixed to a depth of 18 cm, are either calcareous or have a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser.

Calcixerolls, p. 400**HDE. Other Xerolls that have an argillic horizon.****Argixerolls, p. 395****HDF. Other Xerolls.****Haploxerolls, p. 403****Argixerolls****Key to subgroups****HDEA. Argixerolls that have *both*:**

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of 75 percent or less in one or more horizons between

either the mineral soil surface or an Ap horizon, whichever is deeper, and the lithic contact.

Lithic Ultic Argixerolls

HDEB. Other Argixerolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Argixerolls

HDEC. Other Argixerolls which have *both*:

1. An aridic moisture regime; *and*
2. *One or both* of the following:
 - a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
 - b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Torrertic Argixerolls

HDED. Other Argixerolls which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Argixerolls

HDEE. Other Argixerolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Argixerolls

HDEF. Other Argixerolls that have *both*:

1. An aridic moisture regime; *and*
2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:
 - a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which

more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*

b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:

(1) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*

(2) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitritorrandid Argixerolls

HDEG. Other Argixerolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:

a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*

b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandid Argixerolls

HDEH. Other Argixerolls which have a mean annual soil temperature lower than 10°C, *and either*:

1. Above the argillic horizon, an albic horizon, *or* a horizon that has color values too high for a mollic epipedon and a chroma too high for an albic horizon; *or*

2. A glossic horizon, *or* interfingering of albic materials into the upper part of the argillic horizon, *or* skeletal of clean silt and sand covering 50 percent or more of the faces of peds in the upper 5 cm of the argillic horizon.

Boralfic Argixerolls

HDEI. Other Argixerolls that have *both*:

1. A calcic horizon or soft powdery lime, either within the following depths or above a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower, if the particle-size control section is

- a. Sandy: within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
- b. Loamy: within 110 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
- c. Clayey: within 90 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. A mollic epipedon 50 cm or more thick with a texture finer than loamy fine sand.

Calcic Pachic Argixerolls

HDEJ. Other Argixerolls that have *both*:

- 1. A mollic epipedon 50 cm or more thick with a texture finer than loamy fine sand; *and*
- 2. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of 75 percent or less in one or more horizons between either an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and either a depth of 75 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Pachic Ultic Argixerolls

HDEK. Other Argixerolls that have a mollic epipedon 50 cm or more thick with a texture finer than loamy fine sand.

Pachic Argixerolls

HDEL. Other Argixerolls that have *both*:

- 1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*
- 2. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of 75 percent or less in one or more horizons between either an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and either a depth of 75 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Aquultic Argixerolls

HDEM. Other Argixerolls that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Argixerolls

HDEN. Other Argixerolls that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Argixerolls

HDEO. Other Argixerolls which have *both*:

- 1. An aridic moisture regime; *and*

2. A horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist.

Durargidic Argixerolls

HDEP. Other Argixerolls that have a horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist.

Duric Argixerolls

HDEQ. Other Argixerolls that have *both*:

1. An aridic moisture regime; *and*
2. A calcic horizon or soft powdery lime, either within the following depths or above a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower, if the particle-size control section is
 - a. Sandy: within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
 - b. Loamy: within 110 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
 - c. Clayey: within 90 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Aridic Calcic Argixerolls

HDER. Other Argixerolls that have an aridic moisture regime.

Aridic Argixerolls

HDES. Other Argixerolls that have a calcic horizon or soft powdery lime, either within the following depths or above a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower, if the particle-size control section is

1. Sandy: within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. Loamy: within 110 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
3. Clayey: within 90 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Calcic Argixerolls

HDET. Other Argixerolls that have a base saturation (by sum of cations) of 75 percent or less in one or more horizons between either an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and either a depth of 75 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Ultic Argixerolls

HDEU. Other Argixerolls that have an albic horizon above the argillic horizon.

Albic Argixerolls

HDEV. Other Argixerolls.

Typic Argixerolls

Calcixerolls

Key to subgroups

HDDA. Calcixerolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Calcixerolls

HDDB. Other Calcixerolls which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Calcixerolls

HDDC. Other Calcixerolls that have a mollic epipedon 50 cm or more thick with a texture finer than loamy fine sand.

Pachic Calcixerolls

HDDD. Other Calcixerolls that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Calcixerolls

HDDE. Other Calcixerolls that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Calcixerolls

HDDF. Other Calcixerolls that have an aridic moisture regime.

Aridic Calcixerolls

HDDG. Other Calcixerolls which have a mollic epipedon that contains, below any Ap horizon, 50 percent or more (by volume) wormholes, worm casts, or filled animal burrows.

Vermic Calcixerolls

HDDH. Other Calcixerolls.

Typic Calcixerolls

Durixerolls

Key to subgroups

HDAA. Durixerolls which have, above the duripan, *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more.

Vertic Durixerolls

HDAB. Other Durixerolls that have *both*:

1. An aridic moisture regime; *and*
2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:
 - a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
 - b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:

(1) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*

(2) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitritorrandic Durixerolls

HDAC. Other Durixerolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron

percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandic Durixerolls

HDAD. Other Durixerolls that have, in one or more horizons above the duripan, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Durixerolls

HDAE. Other Durixerolls which have *both*:

1. An aridic moisture regime; *and*
2. An argillic horizon that has a clay increase with depth *either* of 20 percent or more (absolute) within its upper 7.5 cm, *or* of 15 percent or more (absolute) within its upper 2.5 cm, in the fine-earth fraction.

Abruptic Aridic Durixerolls

HDAF. Other Durixerolls that:

1. Do not have an argillic horizon above the duripan; *and*
2. Have an aridic moisture regime.

Orthidic Durixerolls

HDAG. Other Durixerolls that have an aridic moisture regime.

Aridic Durixerolls

HDAH. Other Durixerolls which have an argillic horizon that has a clay increase with depth *either* of 20 percent or more (absolute) within its upper 7.5 cm, *or* of 15 percent or more (absolute) within its upper 2.5 cm, in the fine-earth fraction.

Abruptic Durixerolls

HDAI. Other Durixerolls which:

1. Have a duripan that is not indurated in any subhorizon; *and*
2. Do not have an argillic horizon above the duripan.

Entic Durixerolls

HDAJ. Other Durixerolls that do not have an argillic horizon above the duripan.

Haplic Durixerolls

HDAK. Other Durixerolls which have a duripan that is not indurated in any subhorizon.

Argic Durixerolls

HDAL. Other Durixerolls.

Typic Durixerolls

Haploxerolls

Key to subgroups

H DFA. Haploxerolls that have *both*:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of 75 percent or less in one or more horizons between either the mineral soil surface or an Ap horizon, whichever is deeper, and the lithic contact.

Lithic Ultic Haploxerolls

H DFB. Other Haploxerolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Haploxerolls

H DFC. Other Haploxerolls which have *both*:

1. An aridic moisture regime; *and*
2. *One or both* of the following:
 - a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
 - b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Torrertic Haploxerolls

H DFD. Other Haploxerolls which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Haploxerolls

H DFE. Other Haploxerolls that have *both*:

1. An aridic moisture regime; *and*
2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

- a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
- b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - (1) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - (2) In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrorrandic Haploxerolls

HDFF. Other Haploxerolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

- 1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent are cinders, pumice, and pumice-like fragments; *or*
- 2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, and *either*:
 - a. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, more than 30 percent volcanic glass; *or*
 - b. In the 0.02-to-2.0-mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and in the fine-earth fraction, aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.40 or more.

Vitrandic Haploxerolls

HDFG. Other Haploxerolls which have:

- 1. A mollic epipedon 50 cm or more thick with a texture finer than loamy fine sand; *and*
- 2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm below the mineral soil surface to a depth of 125 cm, or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*
- 3. A slope of less than 25 percent; *and*
- 4. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of 75 percent or less in one or more horizons between either an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and either a depth of 75 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Cumulic Ultic Haploxerolls

HDFH. Other Haploxerolls which have:

1. A mollic epipedon 50 cm or more thick with a texture finer than loamy fine sand; *and*
2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm below the mineral soil surface to a depth of 125 cm, or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*
3. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Cumulic Haploxerolls**HDFI. Other Haploxerolls that have both:**

1. A mollic epipedon 50 cm or more thick with a texture finer than loamy fine sand; *and*
2. A calcic horizon or soft powdery lime, either within the following depths or above a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower, if the particle-size control section is
 - a. Sandy: within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
 - b. Loamy: within 110 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
 - c. Clayey: within 90 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Calcic Pachic Haploxerolls**HDFJ. Other Haploxerolls that have both:**

1. A mollic epipedon 50 cm or more thick with a texture finer than loamy fine sand; *and*
2. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of 75 percent or less in one or more horizons between either an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and either a depth of 75 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Pachic Ultic Haploxerolls

HDFK. Other Haploxerolls that have a mollic epipedon 50 cm or more thick with a texture finer than loamy fine sand.

Pachic Haploxerolls**HDFL. Other Haploxerolls that have:**

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*
2. *Either* 0.3 percent or more organic carbon in all horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*

3. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Fluvaquentic Haploxerolls

HDFM. Other Haploxerolls that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage);
and
2. A horizon 15 cm or more thick within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface that either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist.

Aquic Duric Haploxerolls

HDFN. Other Haploxerolls that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage);
and
2. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of 75 percent or less in one or more horizons between either an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and either a depth of 75 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Aquiltic Haploxerolls

HDFO. Other Haploxerolls that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Haploxerolls

HDFP. Other Haploxerolls that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Haploxerolls

HDFQ. Other Haploxerolls which have:

1. An aridic moisture regime; *and*
2. *Either* 0.3 percent or more organic carbon in all horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower;
and
3. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Torrifluventic Haploxerolls

HDFR. Other Haploxerolls which have *both*:

1. An aridic moisture regime; *and*

2. A horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist.

Aridic Duric Haploxerolls

HDFS. Other Haploxerolls that have *both*:

1. An aridic moisture regime; *and*
2. A calcic horizon or soft powdery lime, either within the following depths or above a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower, if the particle-size control section is
 - a. Sandy: within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
 - b. Loamy: within 110 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
 - c. Clayey: within 90 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Calciorthidic Haploxerolls

HDFT. Other Haploxerolls that have *both*:

1. An aridic moisture regime; *and*
2. A sandy particle size in all horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Torripsammentic Haploxerolls

HDFU. Other Haploxerolls which:

1. Have an aridic moisture regime; *and*
2. *Either* do not have a cambic horizon and do not, in the lower part of the mollic epipedon, meet the requirements for a cambic horizon except color, *or* have carbonates throughout either the cambic horizon or the lower part of the mollic epipedon.

Torriorthentic Haploxerolls

HDFV. Other Haploxerolls that have an aridic moisture regime.

Aridic Haploxerolls

HDFW. Other Haploxerolls that have a horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist.

Duric Haploxerolls

HDFX. Other Haploxerolls which have *both*:

1. *Either* 0.3 percent or more organic carbon in all horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm, *or* to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*

2. A slope of less than 25 percent.

Fluventic Haploxerolls

HDFY. Other Haploxerolls that have a mollic epipedon which has granular structure and which contains, below any Ap horizon, 50 percent or more (by volume) wormholes, worm casts, or filled animal burrows.

Vermic Haploxerolls

HDFZ. Other Haploxerolls that have a calcic horizon or soft powdery lime, either within the following depths or above a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower, if the particle-size control section is

1. Sandy: within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. Loamy: within 110 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
3. Clayey: within 90 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Calcic Haploxerolls

HDFZa. Other Haploxerolls which:

1. Do not have a cambic horizon and do not, in the lower part of the mollic epipedon, meet the requirements for a cambic horizon except color; *and*
2. Have a base saturation (by sum of cations) of 75 percent or less in one or more horizons between either an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and either a depth of 75 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Entic Ultic Haploxerolls

HDFZb. Other Haploxerolls that have a base saturation (by sum of cations) of 75 percent or less in one or more horizons between either an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and either a depth of 75 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Ultic Haploxerolls

HDFZc. Other Haploxerolls that *either* do not have a cambic horizon and do not, in the lower part of the mollic epipedon, meet the requirements for a cambic horizon except color, *or* have carbonates throughout either the cambic horizon or the lower part of the mollic epipedon.

Entic Haploxerolls

HDFZd. Other Haploxerolls.

Typic Haploxerolls

Natrixerolls

Key to subgroups

HDBA. Natrixerolls which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Natrixerolls

HDBB. Other Natrixerolls that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*
2. A horizon 15 cm or more thick within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface that either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist.

Aquic Duric Natrixerolls

HDBC. Other Natrixerolls that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Natrixerolls

HDBD. Other Natrixerolls that have an aridic moisture regime.

Aridic Natrixerolls

HDBE. Other Natrixerolls which have a horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either contains 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has firm consistence when moist.

Duric Natrixerolls

HDBF. Other Natrixerolls.

Typic Natrixerolls

Palexerolls

Key to subgroups

HDCA. Palexerolls that have a natric horizon.

Natric Palexerolls

HDCB. Other Palexerolls which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Palexerolls

HDCC. Other Palexerolls that have a mollic epipedon 50 cm or more thick with a texture finer than loamy fine sand.

Pachic Palexerolls

HDCD. Other Palexerolls that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Palexerolls

HDCE. Other Palexerolls which have *both*:

1. An aridic moisture regime; *and*
2. A petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Aridic Petrocalcic Palexerolls

HDCF. Other Palexerolls that have an aridic moisture regime.

Aridic Palexerolls

HDCG. Other Palexerolls which have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petrocalcic Palexerolls

HDCH. Other Palexerolls that have a base saturation of 75 percent or less in one or more subhorizons either within the argillic horizon if more than 50 cm thick, or within its upper 50 cm.

Ultic Palexerolls

HDCl. Other Palexerolls which have an argillic horizon that *either*:

1. Does not have a clayey particle size in its upper part; *or*
2. At its upper boundary, has a clay increase either of less than 20 percent (absolute) within a vertical distance of 7.5 cm, or of less than 15 percent

(absolute) within a vertical distance of 2.5 cm, in the fine-earth fraction.

Haplic Palexerolls

HDCJ. Other Palexerolls.

Typic Palexerolls

Chapter 13

Oxisols¹

KEY TO SUBORDERS

DA. Oxisols that have aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) in one or more horizons within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, *and one or more* of the following:

1. A histic epipedon; *or*
2. An epipedon with a color value, moist, of 3 or less, and directly below it, a horizon with a chroma of 2 or less; *or*
3. Distinct or prominent redox concentrations within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, an epipedon, and directly below it, a horizon with *one or both* of the following:
 - a. Fifty percent or more hue of 2.5Y or yellower; *or*
 - b. A chroma of 3 or less; *or*
4. Within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquox, p. 414

DB. Other Oxisols that have an aridic moisture regime.

Torrox, p. 423

DC. Other Oxisols that have an ustic moisture regime.

Ustox, p. 432

DD. Other Oxisols that have a perudic moisture regime.

Perox, p. 415

DE. Other Oxisols.

Udox, p. 424

O
X
I

¹ This chapter on Oxisols was rewritten in 1987 following the recommendations of the International Committee on the Classification of Oxisols (ICOMOX), chaired by Hari Eswaran from 1978 to 1981 and then by S.W. Buol until completion of the task in 1987.

AQUOX

Key to great groups

DAA. Aquox that have, in one or more subhorizons of the oxic horizon within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, an ECEC of less than 1.50 cmol(+)/kg clay and a pH value (in 1N KCl) of 5.0 or more.

Acraquox, p. 414

DAB. Other Aquox that have plinthite forming a continuous phase within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthaquox, p. 415

DAC. Other Aquox that have a base saturation (by NH_4OAc) of 35 percent or more in all horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Eutraquox, p. 414

DAD. Other Aquox.

Haplaquox, p. 415

Acraquox

Key to subgroups

DAAA. Acraquox that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Acraquox

DAAB. Other Acraquox which have, directly below an epipedon, a horizon 10 cm or more thick that has 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or more.

Aeric Acraquox

DAAC. Other Acraquox.

Typic Acraquox

Eutraquox

Key to subgroups

DACA. Eutraquox that have a histic epipedon.

Histic Eutraquox

DACB. Other Eutraquox that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Eutraquox

DACC. Other Eutraquox which have, directly below an epipedon, a horizon 10 cm or more thick that has 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or more.

Aeric Eutraquox

DACD. Other Eutraquox that have 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

Humic Eutraquox

DACE. Other Eutraquox.

Typic Eutraquox

Haplaquox

Key to subgroups

DADA. Haplaquox that have a histic epipedon.

Histic Haplaquox

DADB. Other Haplaquox that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Haplaquox

DADC. Other Haplaquox which have, directly below an epipedon, a horizon 10 cm or more thick that has 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or more.

Aeric Haplaquox

DADD. Other Haplaquox that have 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

Humic Haplaquox

DADE. Other Haplaquox.

Typic Haplaquox

Plinthaquox

Key to subgroups

DABA. Plinthaquox which have, directly below an epipedon, a horizon 10 cm or more thick that has 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or more.

Aeric Plinthaquox

DABB. Other Plinthaquox.

Typic Plinthaquox

PEROX

Key to great groups

DDA. Perox that have a sombric horizon within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Sombriperox, p. 423

DDB. Other Perox that have, in one or more subhorizons of the oxic or kandic horizon within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, an ECEC of less than 1.50 cmol(+)/kg clay and a pH value (in 1N KCl) of 5.0 or more.

Acroperox, p. 416

DDC. Other Perox that have a base saturation (by NH_4OAc) of 35 percent or more in all horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Eutroperox, p. 417

DDD. Other Perox which have *both*:

1. A clay content of 40 percent or more in the fine-earth fraction between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm, after mixing; *and*
2. A kandic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Kandiperox, p. 421

DDE. Other Perox.

Haploperox, p. 419

Acroperox

Key to subgroups

DDBA. Acroperox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A petroferric contact; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Petroferric Acroperox

DDBB. Other Acroperox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petroferric Acroperox

DDBC. Other Acroperox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A lithic contact; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Lithic Acroperox

DDBD. Other Acroperox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Acroperox

DDBE. Other Acroperox that have a delta pH (KCl pH minus 1:1 water pH) with a 0 or net positive charge in a layer 18 cm or more thick within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Anionic Acroperox

DDBF. Other Acroperox that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Acroperox

DDBG. Other Acroperox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Acroperox

DDBH. Other Acroperox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*
2. Fifty percent or more hue of 2.5YR or redder and color value, moist, of 3 or less between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Humic Rhodic Acroperox

DDBI. Other Acroperox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*
2. Fifty percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and color value, moist, of 6 or more between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Humic Xanthic Acroperox

DDBJ. Other Acroperox that have 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

Humic Acroperox

DDBK. Other Acroperox that have 50 percent or more hue of 2.5YR or redder and color value, moist, of 3 or less between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Rhodic Acroperox

DDBL. Other Acroperox that have 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and color value, moist, of 6 or more between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Xanthic Acroperox

DDBM. Other Acroperox.

Typic Acroperox

Eutroperox

Key to subgroups

DDCA. Eutroperox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A petroferic contact; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Petroferic Eutroperox

DDCB. Other Eutroperox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petroferric Eutroperox

DDCC. Other Eutroperox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A lithic contact; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Lithic Eutroperox

DDCD. Other Eutroperox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Eutroperox

DDCE. Other Eutroperox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. Five percent or more (by volume) plinthite; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Plinthaquic Eutroperox

DDCF. Other Eutroperox that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Eutroperox

DDCG. Other Eutroperox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Eutroperox

DDCH. Other Eutroperox that have *both*:

1. A clay content of 40 percent or more in the fine-earth fraction between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm, after mixing; *and*
2. A kandic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Kandludalfic Eutroperox

DDCI. Other Eutroperox which have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*
2. An oxic horizon that has its lower boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Umbreptic Eutroperox

DDCJ. Other Eutroperox which have an oxic horizon that has its lower boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Inceptic Eutroperox

DDCK. Other Eutroperox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*
2. Fifty percent or more hue of 2.5YR or redder and color value, moist, of 3 or less between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Humic Rhodic Eutroperox

DDCL. Other Eutroperox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*
2. Fifty percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and color value, moist, of 6 or more between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Humic Xanthic Eutroperox

DDCM. Other Eutroperox that have 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

Humic Eutroperox

DDCN. Other Eutroperox that have 50 percent or more hue of 2.5YR or redder and color value, moist, of 3 or less between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Rhodic Eutroperox

DDCO. Other Eutroperox that have 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and color value, moist, of 6 or more between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Xanthic Eutroperox

DDCP. Other Eutroperox.

Typic Eutroperox

Haploperox

Key to subgroups

DDEA. Haploperox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A petroferric contact; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Petroferric Haploperox

DDEB. Other Haploperox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petroferric Haploperox

DDEC. Other Haploperox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A lithic contact; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Lithic Haploperox

DDED. Other Haploperox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Haploperox

DDEE. Other Haploperox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. Five percent or more (by volume) plinthite; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Plinthaquic Haploperox

DDEF. Other Haploperox that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Haploperox

DDEG. Other Haploperox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Haploperox

DDEH. Other Haploperox that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Haploperox

DDEI. Other Haploperox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*
2. Fifty percent or more hue of 2.5YR or redder and color value, moist, of 3 or less between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Humic Rhodic Haploperox

DDEJ. Other Haploperox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. Fifty percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and color value, moist, of 6 or more between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Humic Xanthic Haploperox

DDEK. Other Haploperox that have 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

Humic Haploperox

DDEL. Other Haploperox that have 50 percent or more hue of 2.5YR or redder and color value, moist, of 3 or less between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Rhodic Haploperox

DDEM. Other Haploperox that have 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and color value, moist, of 6 or more between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Xanthic Haploperox

DDEN. Other Haploperox.

Typic Haploperox

Kandiperox

Key to subgroups

DDDA. Kandiperox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A petroferric contact; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Petroferric Kandiperox

DDDB. Other Kandiperox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petroferric Kandiperox

DDDC. Other Kandiperox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A lithic contact; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Lithic Kandiperox

DDDD. Other Kandiperox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Kandiperox

DDDE. Other Kandiperox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

O
X
I

1. Five percent or more (by volume) plinthite; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Plinthaquic Kandiperox

DDDF. Other Kandiperox that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Kandiperox

DDDG. Other Kandiperox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Kandiperox

DDDH. Other Kandiperox that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Kandiperox

DDDI. Other Kandiperox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*
2. Fifty percent or more hue of 2.5YR or redder and color value, moist, of 3 or less between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Humic Rhodic Kandiperox

DDDJ. Other Kandiperox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*
2. Fifty percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and color value, moist, of 6 or more between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Humic Xanthic Kandiperox

DDDK. Other Kandiperox that have 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

Humic Kandiperox

DDDL. Other Kandiperox that have 50 percent or more hue of 2.5YR or redder and color value, moist, of 3 or less between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Rhodic Kandiperox

DDDM. Other Kandiperox that have 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and color value, moist, of 6 or

more between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Xanthic Kandiperox

DDDN. Other Kandiperox.

Typic Kandiperox

Sombriperox

Key to subgroups

DDAA. Sombriperox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petroferric Sombriperox

DDAB. Other Sombriperox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Sombriperox

DDAC. Other Sombriperox that have 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

Humic Sombriperox

DDAD. Other Sombriperox.

Typic Sombriperox

TORROX

Key to great groups

DBA. Torrox that have, in one or more subhorizons of the oxic horizon within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, an ECEC of less than 1.50 cmol(+)/kg clay and a pH value (in 1N KCl) of 5.0 or more.

Acrotorrox, p. 423

DBB. Other Torrox that have a base saturation (by NH₄OAc) of 35 percent or more in all horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Eutrotorrox, p. 424

DBC. Other Torrox.

Haplotorrox, p. 424

Acrotorrox

Key to subgroups

DBAA. Acrotorrox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petroferric Acrotorrox

DBAB. Other Acrotorrox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Acrotorrox

DBAC. Other Acrotorrox.

Typic Acrotorrox

Eutrotorrox

Key to subgroups

DBBA. Eutrotorrox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petroferric Eutrotorrox

DBBB. Other Eutrotorrox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Eutrotorrox

DBBC. Other Eutrotorrox.

Typic Eutrotorrox

Haplotorrox

Key to subgroups

DBCA. Haplotorrox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petroferric Haplotorrox

DBCB. Other Haplotorrox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Haplotorrox

DBCC. Other Haplotorrox.

Typic Haplotorrox

UDOX

Key to great groups

DEA. Udox that have a sombric horizon within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Sombriudox, p. 432

DEB. Other Udox that have, in one or more subhorizons of the oxic or kandic horizon within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, an ECEC of less than 1.50 cmol(+)/kg clay and a pH value (in 1N KCl) of 5.0 or more.

Acrudox, p. 425

DEC. Other Udox that have a base saturation (by NH_4OAc) of 35 percent or more in all horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Eutrudox, p. 426

DED. Other Udox that have *both*:

1. A clay content of 40 percent or more in the fine-earth fraction between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm, after mixing; *and*
2. A kandic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Kandiudox, p. 430

DEE. Other Udox.

Hapludox, p. 428

Acrudox

Key to subgroups

DEBA. Acrudox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A petroferic contact; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Petroferic Acrudox

DEBB. Other Acrudox that have a petroferic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petroferic Acrudox

DEBC. Other Acrudox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A lithic contact; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Lithic Acrudox

DEBD. Other Acrudox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Acrudox

DEBE. Other Acrudox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A delta pH (KCl pH minus 1:1 water pH) with a 0 or net positive charge in a layer 18 cm or more thick; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Anionic Aquic Acrudox

DEBF. Other Acrudox that have a delta pH (KCl pH minus 1:1 water pH) with a 0 or net positive charge in a layer 18 cm or more thick within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Anionic Acrudox

DEBG. Other Acrudox that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Acrudox

DEBH. Other Acrudox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface,

redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Acrudox

DEBI. Other Acrudox that have a base saturation (by NH_4OAc) of 35 percent or more in all horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Eutric Acrudox

DEBJ. Other Acrudox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*
2. Fifty percent or more hue of 2.5YR or redder and color value, moist, of 3 or less between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Humic Rhodic Acrudox

DEBK. Other Acrudox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*
2. Fifty percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and color value, moist, of 6 or more between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Humic Xanthic Acrudox

DEBL. Other Acrudox that have 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

Humic Acrudox

DEBM. Other Acrudox that have 50 percent or more hue of 2.5YR or redder and color value, moist, of 3 or less between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Rhodic Acrudox

DEBN. Other Acrudox that have 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and color value, moist, of 6 or more between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Xanthic Acrudox

DEBO. Other Acrudox.

Typic Acrudox

Eutrudox

Key to subgroups

DECA. Eutrudox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A petroferric contact; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Petroferric Eutrudox

DECB. Other Eutrudox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petroferric Eutrudox

DECC. Other Eutrudox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A lithic contact; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Lithic Eutrudox

DECD. Other Eutrudox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Eutrudox

DECE. Other Eutrudox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. Five percent or more (by volume) plinthite; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Plinthaquic Eutrudox

DECF. Other Eutrudox that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Eutrudox

DECG. Other Eutrudox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Eutrudox

DECH. Other Eutrudox that have *both*:

1. A clay content of 40 percent or more in the fine-earth fraction between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm, after mixing; *and*
2. A kandic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Kandiudalfic Eutrudox

DECI. Other Eutrudox which have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. An oxic horizon that has its lower boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Umbreptic Eutrudox

DECJ. Other Eutrudox which have an oxic horizon that has its lower boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Inceptic Eutrudox

DECK. Other Eutrudox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*
2. Fifty percent or more hue of 2.5YR or redder and color value, moist, of 3 or less between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Humic Rhodic Eutrudox

DECL. Other Eutrudox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*
2. Fifty percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and color value, moist, of 6 or more between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Humic Xanthic Eutrudox

DECM. Other Eutrudox that have 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

Humic Eutrudox

DECN. Other Eutrudox that have 50 percent or more hue of 2.5YR or redder and color value, moist, of 3 or less between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Rhodic Eutrudox

DECO. Other Eutrudox that have 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and color value, moist, of 6 or more between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Xanthic Eutrudox

DECP. Other Eutrudox.

Typic Eutrudox

Hapludox

Key to subgroups

DEEA. Hapludox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A petroferric contact; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Petroferric Hapludox

DEEB. Other Hapludox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petroferric Hapludox

DEEC. Other Hapludox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A lithic contact; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Lithic Hapludox

DEED. Other Hapludox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Hapludox

DEEE. Other Hapludox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. Five percent or more (by volume) plinthite; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Plinthaquic Hapludox

DEEF. Other Hapludox that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Hapludox

DEEG. Other Hapludox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Hapludox

DEEH. Other Hapludox which have an oxic horizon that has its lower boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Inceptic Hapludox

DEEI. Other Hapludox that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Hapludox

DEEJ. Other Hapludox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. Fifty percent or more hue of 2.5YR or redder and color value, moist, of 3 or less between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Humic Rhodic Hapludox

DEEK. Other Hapludox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. Fifty percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and color value, moist, of 6 or more between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Humic Xanthic Hapludox

DEEL. Other Hapludox that have 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

Humic Hapludox

DEEM. Other Hapludox that have 50 percent or more hue of 2.5YR or redder and color value, moist, of 3 or less between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Rhodic Hapludox

DEEN. Other Hapludox that have 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and color value, moist, of 6 or more between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Xanthic Hapludox

DEEO. Other Hapludox.

Typic Hapludox

Kandiudox

Key to subgroups

DEDA. Kandiudox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A petroferric contact; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Petroferric Kandiudox

DEDB. Other Kandiudox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petroferric Kandiudox

DEDC. Other Kandiudox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A lithic contact; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Lithic Kandiodox

DEDD. Other Kandiodox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Kandiodox

DEDE. Other Kandiodox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. Five percent or more (by volume) plinthite; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Plinthaquic Kandiodox

DEDF. Other Kandiodox that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Kandiodox

DEDG. Other Kandiodox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Kandiodox

DEDH. Other Kandiodox that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Kandiodox

DEDI. Other Kandiodox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*
2. Fifty percent or more hue of 2.5YR or redder and color value, moist, of 3 or less between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Humic Rhodic Kandiodox

DEDJ. Other Kandiodox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*
2. Fifty percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and color value, moist, of 6 or more between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Humic Xanthic Kandiodox

DEDK. Other Kandiodox that have 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

Humic Kandiodox

DEDL. Other Kandiodox that have 50 percent or more hue of 2.5YR or redder and color value, moist, of 3 or less between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Rhodic Kandiodox

DEDM. Other Kandiodox that have 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and color value, moist, of 6 or more between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Xanthic Kandiodox

DEDN. Other Kandiodox.

Typic Kandiodox

Sombriudox

Key to subgroups

DEAA. Sombriudox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petroferric Sombriudox

DEAB. Other Sombriudox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Sombriudox

DEAC. Other Sombriudox that have 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

Humic Sombriudox

DEAD. Other Sombriudox.

Typic Sombriudox

USTOX

Key to great groups

DCA. Ustox that have a sombric horizon within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Sombriustox, p. 440

DCB. Other Ustox that have, in one or more subhorizons of the oxic or kandic horizon within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, an ECEC of less than 1.50 cmol(+)/kg clay and a pH value (in 1N KCl) of 5.0 or more.

Acrustox, p. 433

DCC. Other Ustox that have a base saturation (by NH₄OAc) of 35 percent or more in all horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Eustrustox, p. 435

DCD. Other Ustox that have *both*:

1. A clay content of 40 percent or more in the fine-earth fraction between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm, after mixing; *and*
2. A kandic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Kandiustox, p. 438

DCE. Other Ustox.

Haplustox, p. 436

Acrustox

Key to subgroups

DCBA. Acrustox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A petroferric contact; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Petroferric Acrustox

DCBB. Other Acrustox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petroferric Acrustox

DCBC. Other Acrustox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A lithic contact; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Lithic Acrustox

DCBD. Other Acrustox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Acrustox

DCBE. Other Acrustox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A delta pH (KCl pH minus 1:1 water pH) with a 0 or net positive charge in a layer 18 cm or more thick; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Anionic Aquic Acrustox

DCBF. Other Acrustox that have a delta pH (KCl pH minus 1:1 water pH) with a 0 or net positive charge in a layer 18 cm or more thick within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Anionic Acrustox

DCBG. Other Acrustox that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Acrustox

DCBH. Other Acrustox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Acrustox

DCBI. Other Acrustox that have a base saturation (by NH_4OAc) of 35 percent or more in all horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Eutric Acrustox

DCBJ. Other Acrustox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*
2. Fifty percent or more hue of 2.5YR or redder and color value, moist, of 3 or less between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Humic Rhodic Acrustox

DCBK. Other Acrustox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*
2. Fifty percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and color value, moist, of 6 or more between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Humic Xanthic Acrustox

DCBL. Other Acrustox that have 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

Humic Acrustox

DCBM. Other Acrustox that have 50 percent or more hue of 2.5YR or redder and color value, moist, of 3 or less between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Rhodic Acrustox

DCBN. Other Acrustox that have 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and color value, moist, of 6 or more between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Xanthic Acrustox

DCBO. Other Acrustox.

Typic Acrustox

Eustrustox

Key to subgroups

DCCA. Eustrustox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A petroferric contact; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Petroferric Eustrustox

DCCB. Other Eustrustox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petroferric Eustrustox

DCCC. Other Eustrustox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A lithic contact; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Lithic Eustrustox

DCCD. Other Eustrustox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Eustrustox

DCCE. Other Eustrustox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. Five percent or more (by volume) plinthite; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Plinthaquic Eustrustox

DCCF. Other Eustrustox that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Eustrustox

DCCG. Other Eustrustox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Eustrustox

DCCH. Other Eustrustox that have *both*:

1. A clay content of 40 percent or more in the fine-earth fraction between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm, after mixing; *and*

2. A kandic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Kandiustalfic Eustrustox

DCCI. Other Eustrustox which have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. An oxic horizon that has its lower boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Umbreptic Eustrustox

DCCJ. Other Eustrustox which have an oxic horizon that has its lower boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Inceptic Eustrustox

DCKK. Other Eustrustox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. Fifty percent or more hue of 2.5YR or redder and color value, moist, of 3 or less between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Humic Rhodic Eustrustox

DCCL. Other Eustrustox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. Fifty percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and color value, moist, of 6 or more between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Humic Xanthic Eustrustox

DCCM. Other Eustrustox that have 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

Humic Eustrustox

DCCN. Other Eustrustox that have 50 percent or more hue of 2.5YR or redder and color value, moist, of 3 or less between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Rhodic Eustrustox

DCCO. Other Eustrustox that have 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and color value, moist, of 6 or more between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Xanthic Eustrustox

DCCP. Other Eustrustox.

Typic Eustrustox

Haplustox

Key to subgroups

DCEA. Haplustox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A petroferric contact; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Petroferric Haplustox

DCEB. Other Haplustox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petroferric Haplustox

DCEC. Other Haplustox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A lithic contact; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Lithic Haplustox

DCED. Other Haplustox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Haplustox

DCEE. Other Haplustox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. Five percent or more (by volume) plinthite; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Plinthaquic Haplustox

DCEF. Other Haplustox that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Haplustox

DCEG. Other Haplustox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. The lower boundary of the oxic horizon; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aqueptic Haplustox

DCEH. Other Haplustox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Haplustox

DCEI. Other Haplustox that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil

surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Haplustox

DCEJ. Other Haplustox which have an oxic horizon that has its lower boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Inceptic Haplustox

DCEK. Other Haplustox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*
2. Fifty percent or more hue of 2.5YR or redder and color value, moist, of 3 or less between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Humic Rhodic Haplustox

DCEL. Other Haplustox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*
2. Fifty percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and color value, moist, of 6 or more between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Humic Xanthic Haplustox

DCEM. Other Haplustox that have 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

Humic Haplustox

DCEN. Other Haplustox that have 50 percent or more hue of 2.5YR or redder and color value, moist, of 3 or less between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Rhodic Haplustox

DCEO. Other Haplustox that have 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and color value, moist, of 6 or more between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Xanthic Haplustox

DCEP. Other Haplustox.

Typic Haplustox

Kandiustox

Key to subgroups

DCDA. Kandiustox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A petroferric contact; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Petroferric Kandiustox

DCDB. Other Kandiuustox that have a petroferic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petroferic Kandiuustox

DCDC. Other Kandiuustox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A lithic contact; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Lithic Kandiuustox

DCDD. Other Kandiuustox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Kandiuustox

DCDE. Other Kandiuustox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. Five percent or more (by volume) plinthite; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Plinthaquic Kandiuustox

DCDF. Other Kandiuustox that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Kandiuustox

DCDG. Other Kandiuustox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Kandiuustox

DCDH. Other Kandiuustox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*
2. Fifty percent or more hue of 2.5YR or redder and color value, moist, of 3 or less between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Humic Rhodic Kandiuustox

DCDI. Other Kandiuustox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*
2. Fifty percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and color value, moist, of 6 or more between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Humic Xanthic Kandiuustox

DCDJ. Other Kandiuustox that have 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

Humic Kandiuustox

DCDK. Other Kandiuustox that have 50 percent or more hue of 2.5YR or redder and color value, moist, of 3 or less between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Rhodic Kandiuustox

DCDL. Other Kandiuustox that have 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and color value, moist, of 6 or more between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Xanthic Kandiuustox

DCDM. Other Kandiuustox.

Typic Kandiuustox

Sombriustox

Key to subgroups

DCAA. Sombriustox that have a petroferic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petroferic Sombriustox

DCAB. Other Sombriustox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Sombriustox

DCAC. Other Sombriustox that have 16 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

Humic Sombriustox

DCAD. Other Sombriustox.

Typic Sombriustox

Chapter 14

Spodosols¹

KEY TO SUBORDERS

BA. Spodosols that have aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) in one or more horizons within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, *and one or both* of the following:

1. A histic epipedon; *or*
2. Within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, redoximorphic features in an albic or a spodic horizon.

Aquods, p. 441

BB. Other Spodosols that have a cryic or pergelic soil temperature regime.

Cryods, p. 445

BC. Other Spodosols that have 6 percent or more organic carbon in a layer 10 cm or more thick within the spodic horizon.

Humods, p. 448

BD. Other Spodosols.

Orthods, p. 450

AQUODS

Key to great groups

BAA. Aquods that have a cryic or pergelic soil temperature regime.

Cryaquods, p. 443

BAB. Other Aquods that have less than 0.10 percent iron (by ammonium oxalate) in 75 percent or more of the spodic horizon.

Alaquods, p. 442

BAC. Other Aquods that have a fragipan.

Fragiaquods, p. 445

BAD. Other Aquods that have a placic horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in 50 percent or more of each pedon.

Placaquods, p. 445

¹ This chapter on Spodosols was rewritten in 1992 following the recommendations of the International Committee on the Classification of Spodosols (ICOMOD), chaired initially by F. Ted Miller, then by Robert V. Rourke (since 1986).

BAE. Other Aquods which have, in 90 percent or more of each pedon, a cemented soil layer that does not slake in water after air-drying and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Duraquods, p. 443

BAF. Other Aquods that have episaturation.

Epiaquods, p. 444

BAG. Other Aquods.

Endoquods, p. 444

Alaquods

Key to subgroups

BABA. Alaquods that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Alaquods

BABB. Other Alaquods which have, in 90 percent or more of each pedon, a cemented soil layer that does not slake in water after air-drying and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Duric Alaquods

BABC. Other Alaquods that have a histic epipedon.

Histic Alaquods

BABD. Other Alaquods which have *both*:

1. Within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface, an argillic or a kandic horizon that has a base saturation of 35 percent or more (by sum of cations) in some part; *and*

2. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of the spodic horizon at a depth of 75 to 125 cm.

Alfic Arenic Alaquods

BABE. Other Alaquods that have *both*:

1. An argillic or a kandic horizon within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of the spodic horizon at a depth of 75 to 125 cm.

Arenic Ultic Alaquods

BABF. Other Alaquods that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of the spodic horizon at a depth of 75 to 125 cm.

Arenic Alaquods

BABG. Other Alaquods that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of the spodic horizon at a depth of 125 cm or more.

Grossarenic Alaquods

BABH. Other Alaquods which have, within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface, an argillic or a kandic horizon that has a base saturation of 35 percent or more (by sum of cations) in some part.

Alfic Alaquods

BABI. Other Alaquods that have an argillic or a kandic horizon within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Ultic Alaquods

BABJ. Other Alaquods that have an ochric epipedon.

Aeric Alaquods

BABK. Other Alaquods.

Typic Alaquods

Cryaquods

Key to subgroups

BAAA. Cryaquods that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Cryaquods

BAAB. Other Cryaquods that have a mean annual soil temperature of 0°C or less.

Pergelic Cryaquods

BAAC. Other Cryaquods that have a placic horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in 50 percent or more of each pedon.

Placic Cryaquods

BAAD. Other Cryaquods which have, in 90 percent or more of each pedon, a cemented soil layer that does not slake in water after air-drying and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Duric Cryaquods

BAAE. Other Cryaquods which have andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Andic Cryaquods

BAAF. Other Cryaquods that do not have a spodic horizon 10 cm or more thick in 50 percent or more of each pedon.

Entic Cryaquods

BAAG. Other Cryaquods.

Typic Cryaquods

Duraquods

Key to subgroups

BAEA. Duraquods that have a histic epipedon.

Histic Duraquods

BAEB. Other Duraquods which have andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Andic Duraquods

BAEC. Other Duraquods.

Typic Duraquods

Endoaquods

Key to subgroups

BAGA. Endoaquods that have a histic epipedon.

Histic Endoaquods

BAGB. Other Endoaquods which have andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Andic Endoaquods

BAGC. Other Endoaquods that have an argillic or a kandic horizon within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Argic Endoaquods

BAGD. Other Endoaquods that have an umbric epipedon.

Umbric Endoaquods

BAGE. Other Endoaquods.

Typic Endoaquods

Epiaquods

Key to subgroups

BAFA. Epiaquods that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Epiaquods

BAFB. Other Epiaquods that have a histic epipedon.

Histic Epiaquods

BAFC. Other Epiaquods which have andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Andic Epiaquods

BAFD. Other Epiaquods which have, within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface, an argillic or a kandic horizon that has a base saturation of 35 percent or more (by sum of cations) in some part.

Alfic Epiaquods

BAFE. Other Epiaquods that have an argillic or a kandic horizon within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Ultic Epiaquods

BAFF. Other Epiaquods that have an umbric epipedon.

Umbric Epiaquods

BAFG. Other Epiaquods.

Typic Epiaquods

Fragiaquods

Key to subgroups

BACA. Fragiaquods that have a histic epipedon.

Histic Fragiaquods

BACB. Other Fragiaquods which have a surface horizon 30 cm or more thick that meets all the requirements for a plaggen epipedon except thickness.

Plaggeptic Fragiaquods

BACC. Other Fragiaquods which have, within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface, an argillic or a kandic horizon.

Argic Fragiaquods

BACD. Other Fragiaquods.

Typic Fragiaquods

Placaquods

Key to subgroups

BADA. Placaquods which have andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Andic Placaquods

BADB. Other Placaquods.

Typic Placaquods

CRYODS

Key to great groups

BBA. Cryods that have a placic horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in 50 percent or more of each pedon.

Placocryods, p. 448

BBB. Other Cryods which have, in 90 percent or more of each pedon, a cemented soil layer that does not slake in water after air-drying and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Duricryods, p. 446

BBC. Other Cryods that have 6 percent or more organic carbon throughout a layer 10 cm or more thick within the spodic horizon.

Humicryods, p. 447

BBD. Other Cryods.

Haplocryods, p. 446

Duricryods

Key to subgroups

BBBA. Duricryods which have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redoximorphic features, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. Andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Aquandic Duricryods

BBBB. Other Duricryods which have andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Andic Duricryods

BBBC. Other Duricryods that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redoximorphic features, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Duricryods

BBBD. Other Duricryods that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Duricryods

BBBE. Other Duricryods that have 6 percent or more organic carbon throughout a layer 10 cm or more thick within the spodic horizon.

Humic Duricryods

BBBF. Other Duricryods.

Typic Duricryods

Haplocryods

Key to subgroups

BBDA. Haplocryods that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Haplocryods

BBDB. Other Haplocryods that have a mean annual soil temperature of 0°C or less.

Pergelic Haplocryods

BBDC. Other Haplocryods which have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redoximorphic features, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*
2. Andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Aquandic Haplocryods

BBDD. Other Haplocryods which have andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Andic Haplocryods

BBDE. Other Haplocryods that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redoximorphic features, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Haplocryods

BBDF. Other Haplocryods that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Haplocryods

BBDG. Other Haplocryods that have 1.1 percent or less organic carbon in the upper 10 cm of the spodic horizon.

Entic Haplocryods

BBDH. Other Haplocryods.

Typic Haplocryods

Humicryods

Key to subgroups

BBCA. Humicryods that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Humicryods

BBCB. Other Humicryods that have a mean annual soil temperature of 0°C or less.

Pergelle Humicryods

BBCC. Other Humicryods which have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redoximorphic features, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. Andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Aquandic Humicryods

BBCD. Other Humicryods which have andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Andic Humicryods

BBCE. Other Humicryods that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redoximorphic features, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Humicryods

BBCF. Other Humicryods that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Humicryods

BBCG. Other Humicryods.

Typic Humicryods

Placocryods

Key to subgroups

BBAA. Placocryods which have andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Andic Placocryods

BBAB. Other Placocryods that have 6 percent or more organic carbon in a layer 10 cm or more thick within the spodic horizon.

Humic Placocryods

BBAC. Other Placocryods.

Typic Placocryods

HUMODS

Key to great groups

BCA. Humods that have a placic horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in 50 percent or more of each pedon.

Placohumods, p. 449

BCB. Other Humods which have, in 90 percent or more of each pedon, a cemented soil layer that does not slake

in water after air-drying and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Duriumods, p. 449

BCC. Other Humods that have a fragipan.

Fragiumods, p. 449

BCD. Other Humods.

Haplohumods, p. 449

Duriumods

Key to subgroups

BCBA. Duriumods which have andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Andic Duriumods

BCBB. Other Duriumods.

Typic Duriumods

Fragiumods

Key to subgroups

BCCA. All Fragiumods (provisionally).

Typic Fragiumods

Haplohumods

Key to subgroups

BCDA. Haplohumods that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Haplohumods

BCDB. Other Haplohumods which have andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Andic Haplohumods

BCDC. Other Haplohumods which have a surface horizon 30 cm or more thick that meets all the requirements for a plaggen epipedon except thickness.

Plaggeptic Haplohumods

BCDD. Other Haplohumods.

Typic Haplohumods

Placohumods

Key to subgroups

BCAA. Placohumods which have andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm

or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Andic Placohumods

BCAB. Other Placohumods.

Typic Placohumods

ORTHODS

Key to great groups

BDA. Orthods that have, in 50 percent or more of each pedon, a placic horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Placorthods, p. 454

BDB. Other Orthods which have, in 90 percent or more of each pedon, a cemented soil layer that does not slake in water after air-drying and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Durorthods, p. 451

BDC. Other Orthods that have a fragipan.

Fragiorthods, p. 451

BDD. Other Orthods that have less than 0.10 percent iron (by ammonium oxalate) in 75 percent or more of the spodic horizon.

Alorthods, p. 450

BDE. Other Orthods.

Haplorthods, p. 452

Alorthods

Key to subgroups

BDDA. Alorthods that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Alorthods

BDDB. Other Alorthods that have *both*:

1. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of the spodic horizon at a depth of 75 to 125 cm;
and
2. An argillic or a kandic horizon below the spodic horizon.

Arenic Ultic Alorthods

BDDC. Other Alorthods that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of the spodic horizon at a depth of 75 to 125 cm.

Arenic Alorthods

BDDD. Other Alorthods that have *both*:

1. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of the spodic horizon at a depth of 125 cm or more; *and*
2. In 10 percent or more of each pedon, less than 3 percent organic carbon in the upper 2 cm of the spodic horizon.

Grossarenic Entic Alorthods

BDDE. Other Alorthods that have, in 10 percent or more of each pedon, less than 3 percent organic carbon in the upper 2 cm of the spodic horizon.

Entic Alorthods

BDDF. Other Alorthods that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of the spodic horizon at a depth of 125 cm or more.

Grossarenic Alorthods

BDDG. Other Alorthods which have a surface horizon 30 cm or more thick that meets all the requirements for a plaggen epipedon except thickness.

Plaggeptic Alorthods

BDDH. Other Alorthods which have, within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface, an argillic or a kandic horizon that has a base saturation of 35 percent or more (by sum of cations) in some part.

Alfic Alorthods

BDDI. Other Alorthods that have an argillic or a kandic horizon within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Ultic Alorthods

BDDJ. Other Alorthods.

Typic Alorthods

Durorthods

Key to subgroups

BDBA. Durorthods which have andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Andic Durorthods

BDBB. Other Durorthods.

Typic Durorthods

Fragiorthods

Key to subgroups

BDCA. Fragiorthods that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redoximorphic

features, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Fragiorthods

BDCB. Other Fragiorthods that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Fragiorthods

BDCC. Other Fragiorthods which have a surface horizon 30 cm or more thick that meets all the requirements for a plaggen epipedon except thickness.

Plaggeptic Fragiorthods

BDCCD. Other Fragiorthods which have, within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface, an argillic or a kandic horizon that has a base saturation of 35 percent or more (by sum of cations) in some part.

Alfic Fragiorthods

BDCE. Other Fragiorthods that have an argillic or a kandic horizon within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Ultic Fragiorthods

BDCF. Other Fragiorthods which have a spodic horizon that does not have *any* of the following:

1. A texture of very fine sand or finer, a thickness of more than 10 cm, and a weighted average of 1.2 percent or more organic carbon in the upper 10 cm; *nor*
2. A coarse-loamy or loamy-skeletal particle size, and a color value, moist, and chroma of 3 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) in the upper 7.5 cm; *nor*
3. A sandy-skeletal or sandy particle size, and a color value, moist, and chroma of 3 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) in the upper 2.5 cm.

Entic Fragiorthods

BDCG. Other Fragiorthods.

Typic Fragiorthods

Haplorthods

Key to subgroups

BDEA. Haplorthods which have *both*:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. A spodic horizon that does not have *any* of the following:
 - a. A texture of very fine sand or finer, a thickness of more than 10 cm, and a

weighted average of 1.2 percent or more organic carbon in the upper 10 cm; *nor*

b. A coarse-loamy or loamy-skeletal particle size, and a color value, moist, and chroma of 3 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) in the upper 7.5 cm; *nor*

c. A sandy-skeletal or sandy particle size, and a color value, moist, and chroma of 3 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) in the upper 2.5 cm.

Entic Lithic Haplorthods

BDEB. Other Haplorthods that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Haplorthods

BDEC. Other Haplorthods which have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redoximorphic features, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. Within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface, an argillic or a kandic horizon that has a base saturation of 35 percent or more (by sum of cations) in some part.

Aqualfic Haplorthods

BDED. Other Haplorthods which have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redoximorphic features, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. A spodic horizon that does not have *any* of the following:

a. A texture of very fine sand or finer, a thickness of more than 10 cm, and a weighted average of 1.2 percent or more organic carbon in the upper 10 cm; *nor*

b. A coarse-loamy or loamy-skeletal particle size, and a color value, moist, and chroma of 3 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) in the upper 7.5 cm; *nor*

c. A sandy-skeletal or sandy particle size, and a color value, moist, and chroma of 3 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) in the upper 2.5 cm.

Aquentic Haplorthods

BDEE. Other Haplorthods that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redoximorphic features, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Haplorthods

BDEF. Other Haplorthods that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Haplorthods

BDEG. Other Haplorthods which have andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface, or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

Andic Haplorthods

BDEH. Other Haplorthods which have, within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface, an argillic or a kandic horizon that has a base saturation of 35 percent or more (by sum of cations) in some part.

Alfic Haplorthods

BDEI. Other Haplorthods that have an argillic or a kandic horizon within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Ultic Haplorthods

BDEJ. Other Haplorthods which have a spodic horizon that does not have *any* of the following:

1. A texture of very fine sand or finer, a thickness of more than 10 cm, and a weighted average of 1.2 percent or more organic carbon in the upper 10 cm; *nor*
2. A coarse-loamy or loamy-skeletal particle size, and a color value, moist, and chroma of 3 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) in the upper 7.5 cm; *nor*
3. A sandy-skeletal or sandy particle size, and a color value, moist, and chroma of 3 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) in the upper 2.5 cm.

Entic Haplorthods

BDEK. Other Haplorthods.

Typic Haplorthods

Placorthods

Key to subgroups

BDAA. All Placorthods (provisionally).

Typic Placorthods

Chapter 15

Ultisols

KEY TO SUBORDERS

GA. Ultisols that have aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) in one or more horizons within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, *and one or both* of the following:

1. Redoximorphic features in all layers between either the lower boundary of an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 40 cm; *and one* of the following within the upper 12.5 cm of the argillic or kandic horizon:
 - a. Redox concentrations, and 50 percent or more redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less either on faces of peds or in the matrix; *or*
 - b. Fifty percent or more redox depletions with a chroma of 1 or less either on faces of peds or in the matrix; *or*
 - c. Distinct or prominent redox concentrations and 50 percent or more hue of 2.5Y or 5Y in the matrix, *and also* a thermic, isothermic, or warmer soil temperature regime; *or*
2. Within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquults, p. 456

GB. Other Ultisols that have *one or both* of the following:

1. 0.9 percent or more organic carbon in the upper 15 cm of the argillic or kandic horizon; *or*
2. 12 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

Humults, p. 463

GC. Other Ultisols that have a udic moisture regime.

Udults, p. 468

GD. Other Ultisols that have an ustic moisture regime.

Ustults, p. 481

GE. Other Ultisols.

Xerults, p. 489

AQUULTS

Key to great groups

GAA. Aquults that have one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface in which plinthite either forms a continuous phase or constitutes one half or more of the volume.

Plinthaquults, p. 462

GAB. Other Aquults which have a fragipan that has its upper boundary *either*:

1. Within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface if no horizon contains 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite; *or*
2. Within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface if there is 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons of the soil.

Fragiaquults, p. 459

GAC. Other Aquults that have an abrupt textural change between the ochric epipedon or albic horizon and the argillic or kandic horizon, *and* have low hydraulic conductivity in the argillic or kandic horizon.

Albaquults, p. 457

GAD. Other Aquults which:

1. Do not have a lithic, paralithic, or petroferic contact within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. Have a CEC of 16 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (by 1N NH₄OAc pH 7) and an ECEC of 12 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (sum of bases extracted with 1N NH₄OAc pH 7, plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al) in 50 percent or more *either* of the argillic or kandic horizon if less than 100 cm thick, *or* of its upper 100 cm; *and*
3. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, *either*:

a. Do not have a clay decrease with increasing depth of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content; *or*

b. Have 5 percent or more (by volume) skeletalans on faces of peds in the layer that has a 20 percent lower clay content *and*, below that layer, a clay increase of 3 percent or more (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction.

Kandiaquults, p. 459

GAE. Other Aquults that have a CEC of 16 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (by 1N NH₄OAc pH 7) and an ECEC of 12 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (sum of bases extracted with 1N NH₄OAc pH 7, plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al) in 50

percent or more *either* of the argillic or kandic horizon if less than 100 cm thick, *or* of its upper 100 cm.

Kanhapaquults, p. 460

GAF. Other Aquults which:

1. Do not have a lithic, paralithic, or petroferic contact within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface;
and

2. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface,
either:

a. Do not have a clay decrease with increasing depth of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content;
or

b. Have 5 percent or more (by volume) skeletalans on faces of peds in the layer that has a 20 percent lower clay content *and*, below that layer, a clay increase of 3 percent or more (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction.

Paleaquults, p. 461

GAG. Other Aquults that have an umbric or a mollic epipedon.

Umbraquults, p. 463

GAH. Other Aquults that have episaturation.

Epiaquults, p. 458

GAI. Other Aquults.

Endoaquults, p. 458

Albaquults

Key to subgroups

GACA. Albaquults which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Albaquults

GACB. Other Albaquults that have 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or more in one or more horizons between either the A or Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 75 cm.

Aeric Albaquults

GACC. Other Albaquults.

Typic Albaquults

Endoaquults

Key to subgroups

GAIA. Endoaquults that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

Arenic Endoaquults

GAIB. Other Endoaquults that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more.

Grossarenic Endoaquults

GAIC. Other Endoaquults that have 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or more in one or more horizons between either the A or Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 75 cm.

Aeric Endoaquults

GAID. Other Endoaquults.

Typic Endoaquults

Epiaquults

Key to subgroups

GAHA. Epiaquults that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Epiaquults

GAHB. Other Epiaquults that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

Arenic Epiaquults

GAHC. Other Epiaquults that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more.

Grossarenic Epiaquults

GAHD. Epiaquults that have 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or more in one or more horizons between either the A or Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 75 cm.

Aeric Epiaquults

GAHE. Other Epiaquults.

Typic Epiaquults

Fragiaquults

Key to subgroups

GABA. Fragiaquults that have *both*:

1. Fifty percent or more chroma of 3 or more in one or more horizons between either the A or Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and the fragipan;
and
2. Five percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthudic Fragiaquults

GABB. Other Fragiaquults that have 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or more in one or more horizons between either the A or Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and the fragipan.

Aeric Fragiaquults

GABC. Other Fragiaquults that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Fragiaquults

GABD. Other Fragiaquults that do not have an ochric epipedon.

Umbric Fragiaquults

GABE. Other Fragiaquults.

Typic Fragiaquults

Kandiaquults

Key to subgroups

GADA. Kandiaquults that have an ECEC of 1.5 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (sum of bases extracted with 1N NH₄OAc pH 7, plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al) in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Acraquoxic Kandiaquults

GADB. Other Kandiaquults that have *both*:

1. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic or a kandic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm; *and*
2. Five percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Arenic Plinthic Kandiaquults

GADC. Other Kandiaquults which:

1. Do not have an ochric epipedon; *and*
2. Have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic or a kandic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

Arenic Umbric Kandiaquults

GADD. Other Kandiaquults that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic or a kandic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

Arenic Kandiaquults

GADE. Other Kandiaquults that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic or a kandic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more.

Grossarenic Kandiaquults

GADF. Other Kandiaquults that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Kandiaquults

GADG. Other Kandiaquults that have 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or more in one or more horizons between either the A or Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 75 cm.

Aeric Kandiaquults

GADH. Other Kandiaquults that do not have an ochric epipedon.

Umbric Kandiaquults

GADI. Other Kandiaquults.

Typic Kandiaquults

Kanhaplaquults

Key to subgroups

GAEA. Kanhaplaquults that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus

1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Aquandic Kanhaplaquults

GAEB. Other Kanhaplaquults that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Kanhaplaquults

GAEC. Other Kanhaplaquults which:

1. Do not have an ochric epipedon; *and*
2. Have 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or more in one or more horizons between either the A or Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 75 cm.

Aeric Umbric Kanhaplaquults

GAED. Other Kanhaplaquults that have 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or more in one or more horizons between either the A or Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 75 cm.

Aeric Kanhaplaquults

GAEE. Other Kanhaplaquults that do not have an ochric epipedon.

Umbric Kanhaplaquults

GAEF. Other Kanhaplaquults.

Typic Kanhaplaquults

Paleaquults

Key to subgroups

GAFA. Paleaquults which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Paleaquults

GAFB. Other Paleaquults that have *both*:

1. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm; *and*

2. Five percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Arenic Plinthic Paleaquits

G AFC. Other Paleaquits which:

1. Do not have an ochric epipedon; *and*
2. Have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

Arenic Umbric Paleaquits

G AFD. Other Paleaquits that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

Arenic Paleaquits

G AFE. Other Paleaquits that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more.

Grossarenic Paleaquits

G AFF. Other Paleaquits that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Paleaquits

G AFG. Other Paleaquits that have 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or more in one or more horizons between either the A or Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 75 cm.

Aeric Paleaquits

G AFH. Other Paleaquits that do not have an ochric epipedon.

Umbric Paleaquits

G AFI. Other Paleaquits.

Typic Paleaquits

Plinthaquits

Key to subgroups

G AAA. Plinthaquits that have a CEC (by 1N NH₄OAc pH 7) of less than 24 cmol(+)/kg clay¹ in 50 percent or more (by volume) of the argillic horizon if less than 100 cm thick, or of its upper 100 cm.

Kandic Plinthaquits

¹ Some soils with properties that approach those of an Oxisol do not disperse well. If the ratio of (percent water retained at 1500 kPa tension minus percent organic carbon) to the percentage of measured clay is 0.6 or more, then the percentage of clay is considered to equal either (1) the measured percentage of clay, or (2) three times (percent water retained at 1500 kPa tension minus percent organic carbon), whichever value is higher, but no more than 100.

GAAB. Other Plinthaquults.

Typic Plinthaquults

Umbracquults

Key to subgroups

GAGA. Umbracquults that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Umbracquults

GAGB. Other Umbracquults.

Typic Umbracquults

HUMULTS

Key to great groups

GBA. Humults that have a sombric horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Sombrihumults, p. 468

GBB. Other Humults that have one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface in which plinthite either forms a continuous phase or constitutes one half or more of the volume.

Plinthohumults, p. 468

GBC. Other Humults which:

1. Do not have a lithic, paralithic, or petroferic contact within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface;
and
2. Have a CEC of 16 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (by 1N NH₄OAc pH 7) and an ECEC of 12 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (sum of bases extracted with 1N NH₄OAc pH 7, plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al) in 50 percent or more *either* of the argillic or kandic horizon if less than 100 cm thick, *or* of its upper 100 cm; *and*
3. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, *either*:
 - a. Do not have a clay decrease with depth of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content; *or*
 - b. Have 5 percent or more (by volume) skeletal faces on faces of peds in the layer that has a 20 percent lower clay content *and*, below that layer, a clay increase of 3 percent or more (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction.

Kandihumults, p. 465

GBD. Other Humults that have a CEC of 16 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (by 1N NH₄OAc pH 7) and an ECEC of 12 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (sum of bases extracted with 1N

NH₄OAc pH 7, plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al) in 50 percent or more *either* of the argillic or kandic horizon if less than 100 cm thick, *or* of its upper 100 cm.

Kanhaplohumults, p. 466

GBE. Other Humults which:

1. Do not have a lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface;
and

2. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface,
either:

a. Do not have a clay decrease with increasing depth of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content;
or

b. Have 5 percent or more (by volume) skeletalans on faces of peds in the layer that has a 20 percent lower clay content *and*, below that layer, a clay increase of 3 percent or more (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction.

Palehumults, p. 467

GBF. Other Humults.

Haplohumults, p. 464

Haplohumults

Key to subgroups

GBFA. Haplohumults that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Haplohumults

GBFB. Other Haplohumults that have, in one or more subhorizons within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Haplohumults

GBFC. Other Haplohumults that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Haplohumults

GBFD. Other Haplohumults that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Haplohumults

GBFE. Other Haplohumults that have an ustic moisture regime.

Ustic Haplohumults

GBFF. Other Haplohumults that have a xeric moisture regime.

Xeric Haplohumults

GBFG. Other Haplohumults.

Typic Haplohumults

Kandihumults

Key to subgroups

GBCA. Kandihumults that have *both*:

1. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *and*

2. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox concentrations, a color value, moist, of 4 or more, and a hue which is 10YR or yellower, but which becomes redder with increasing depth within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Andic Ombroaquic Kandihumults

GBCB. Other Kandihumults that have *both*:

1. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *and*

2. An ustic moisture regime.

Ustandic Kandihumults

GBCC. Other Kandihumults that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Kandihumults

GBCD. Other Kandihumults that have, in one or more subhorizons within the upper 25 cm of the argillic or kandic horizon, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Kandihumults

GBCE. Other Kandihumults that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox concentrations, a color value, moist, of 4 or more, and a hue which is 10YR or yellower, but which becomes redder with increasing depth within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Ombroaquic Kandihumults

GBCF. Other Kandihumults that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Kandihumults

GBCG. Other Kandihumults that have an ustic moisture regime.

Ustic Kandihumults

GBCH. Other Kandihumults that have a xeric moisture regime.

Xeric Kandihumults

GBCI. Other Kandihumults that have an anthropic epipedon.

Anthropic Kandihumults

GBCJ. Other Kandihumults.

Typic Kandihumults

Kanhaplohumults

Key to subgroups

GBDA. Kanhaplohumults that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Kanhaplohumults

GBDB. Other Kanhaplohumults that have *both*:

1. An ustic moisture regime; *and*
2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Ustandic Kanhaplohumults

GBDC. Other Kanhaplohumults that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Kanhaplohumults

GBDD. Other Kanhaplohumults that have, in one or more subhorizons within the upper 25 cm of the argillic or kandic horizon, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less,

accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Kanhaplohumults

GBDE. Other Kanhaplohumults that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox concentrations, a color value, moist, of 4 or more, and a hue which is 10YR or yellower, but which becomes redder with increasing depth within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Ombroaquic Kanhaplohumults

GBDF. Other Kanhaplohumults that have an ustic moisture regime.

Ustic Kanhaplohumults

GBDG. Other Kanhaplohumults that have a xeric moisture regime.

Xeric Kanhaplohumults

GBDH. Other Kanhaplohumults that have an anthropic epipedon.

Anthropic Kanhaplohumults

GBDI. Other Kanhaplohumults.

Typic Kanhaplohumults

Palehumults

Key to subgroups

GBEA. Palehumults that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Palehumults

GBEB. Other Palehumults that have, in one or more subhorizons within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Palehumults

GBEC. Other Palehumults that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Palehumults

GBED. Other Palehumults that have an ustic moisture regime.

Ustic Palehumults

GBEF. Other Palehumults that have a xeric moisture regime.

Xeric Palehumults

GBEG. Other Palehumults.

Typic Palehumults**Plinthohumults**

Plinthohumults are the Humults which have plinthite that forms a continuous phase in, or constitutes more than half the volume of, one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface. They are not known to occur in the United States, but the great group has been proposed for other countries (Sys, 1969). Subgroups have not been developed.

Sombrihumults

These Humults have a sombric horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface. They are not known to occur in the United States, but the great group is provided for use elsewhere. Humoxic and orthoxic subgroups have been proposed (Sys, 1969) for the soils that have a low CEC (i.e., less than 24 cmol(+)/kg clay). The humoxic subgroup is proposed for soils with an isothermic or cooler soil temperature regime, and the orthoxic subgroup for soils with an isohyperthermic soil temperature regime.

UDULTS**Key to great groups**

GCA. Udults that have one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface in which plinthite either forms a continuous phase or constitutes one half or more of the volume.

Plinthudults, p. 481

GCB. Other Udults that have a fragipan within or below the argillic or kandic horizon.

Fragiudults, p. 470

GCC. Other Udults which:

1. Do not have a lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. Have a CEC of 16 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (by 1N NH₄OAc pH 7) and an ECEC of 12 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (sum of bases extracted with 1N NH₄OAc pH 7, plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al) in 50 percent or more *either* of the argillic or kandic horizon if less than 100 cm thick, *or* of its upper 100 cm; *and*
3. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, *either*:

a. Do not have a clay decrease with increasing depth of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content;
or

b. Have 5 percent or more (by volume) skeletalans on faces of peds in the layer that has a 20 percent lower clay content *and*, below that layer, a clay increase of 3 percent or more (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction.

Kandiudults, p. 472

GCD. Other Udults that have a CEC of 16 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (by 1N NH₄OAc pH 7) and an ECEC of 12 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (sum of bases extracted with 1N NH₄OAc pH 7, plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al) in 50 percent or more *either* of the argillic or kandic horizon if less than 100 cm thick, *or* of its upper 100 cm.

Kanhapludults, p. 475

GCE. Other Udults which:

1. Do not have a lithic, paralithic, or petroferic contact within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface;
and

2. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface,
either:

a. Do not have a clay decrease with increasing depth of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content;
or

b. Have 5 percent or more (by volume) skeletalans on faces of peds in the layer that has a 20 percent lower clay content *and*, below that layer, a clay increase of 3 percent or more (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction.

Paleudults, p. 477

GCF. Other Udults which have *both*:

1. An epipedon that has a color value, moist, of 3 or less throughout; *and*

2. An argillic horizon that has a color value, dry, of 4 or less, and a color value, moist, that is no more than 1 unit lower than the value, dry.

Rhodudults, p. 481

GCG. Other Udults.

Hapludults, p. 471

Fragiudults

Key to subgroups

GCBA. Fragiudults that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

Arenic Fragiudults

GCBB. Other Fragiudults which have:

1. *Either* of the following:

- a. Above the fragipan, no argillic or kandic horizon that has clay films on both vertical and horizontal surfaces of any structural aggregates; *or*
- b. Between the argillic or kandic horizon and the fragipan, one or more horizons with 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or less and with a clay content 3 percent or more (absolute, in the fine-earth fraction) lower than in both the argillic or kandic horizon and the fragipan; *and*

2. In one or more horizons within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*

3. Five percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthaquic Fragiudults

GCBC. Other Fragiudults that have *both*:

1. *Either* of the following:

- a. Above the fragipan, no argillic or kandic horizon that has clay films on both vertical and horizontal surfaces of any structural aggregates; *or*
- b. Between the argillic or kandic horizon and the fragipan, one or more horizons with 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or less and with a clay content 3 percent or more (absolute, in the fine-earth fraction) lower than in both the argillic or kandic horizon and the fragipan; *and*

2. In one or more horizons within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Glossaquic Fragiudults

GCBD. Other Fragiudults that have, in one or more subhorizons above the fragipan and within the upper 25

cm of the argillic or kandic horizon, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Fragiudults

GCEB. Other Fragiudults that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Fragiudults

GCEB. Other Fragiudults that have *either*:

1. Above the fragipan, no argillic or kandic horizon that has clay films on both vertical and horizontal surfaces of any structural aggregates; *or*
2. Between the argillic or kandic horizon and the fragipan, one or more horizons with 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or less and with a clay content 3 percent or more (absolute, in the fine-earth fraction) lower than in both the argillic or kandic horizon and the fragipan.

Glossic Fragiudults

GCEB. Other Fragiudults which have either an Ap horizon, or an A horizon 15 cm or more thick, that has a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample).

Humic Fragiudults

GCEB. Other Fragiudults.

Typic Fragiudults

Hapludults

Key to subgroups

GCEA. Hapludults which have *both*:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. In each pedon, a discontinuous argillic horizon that is interrupted by ledges of bedrock.

Ruptic-Lithic-Entic Hapludults

GCEB. Other Hapludults that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Hapludults

GCEC. Other Hapludults which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a

depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Hapludults

GCGD. Other Hapludults that have a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser throughout the argillic horizon, or lamellae within its upper 25 cm.

Psammentic Hapludults

GCGE. Other Hapludults that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

Arenic Hapludults

GCGF. Other Hapludults that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more.

Grossarenic Hapludults

GCGG. Other Hapludults that have, in one or more subhorizons within the upper 60 cm of the argillic horizon, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Hapludults

GCGH. Other Hapludults that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Hapludults

GCGI. Other Hapludults which have either an Ap horizon, or an A horizon 15 cm or more thick, that has a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample).

Humic Hapludults

GCGJ. Other Hapludults that have an argillic horizon 25 cm or less thick.

Ochreptic Hapludults

GCGK. Other Hapludults.

Typic Hapludults

Kandiudults

Key to subgroups

GCCA. Kandiudults that have:

1. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm; *and*
2. Five percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

3. In one or more layers *either* within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface *or*, if the chroma throughout the upper 75 cm results from uncoated sand grains, within the upper 12.5 cm of the argillic or kandic horizon, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Arenic Plinthaquic Kandiudults

GCCB. Other Kandiudults that have *both*:

1. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm; *and*
2. In one or more layers *either* within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface *or*, if the chroma throughout the upper 75 cm results from uncoated sand grains, within the upper 12.5 cm of the argillic or kandic horizon, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Arenic Kandiudults

GCCC. Other Kandiudults that have *both*:

1. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic or a kandic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm; *and*
2. Five percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Arenic Plinthic Kandiudults

GCCD. Other Kandiudults that have *both*:

1. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic or a kandic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm; *and*
2. Throughout the argillic or kandic horizon, a hue of 2.5YR or redder, a color value, moist, of 3 or less, and a color value, dry, that is no more than one unit higher than the value, moist.

Arenic Rhodic Kandiudults

GCCE. Other Kandiudults that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic or a kandic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

Arenic Kandiudults

GCCF. Other Kandiudults that have *both*:

1. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic or a kandic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more; *and*
2. Five percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Grossarenic Plinthic Kandiudults

GCCG. Other Kandiudults that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic or a kandic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more.

Grossarenic Kandiudults

GCCH. Other Kandiudults that have *both*:

1. An ECEC of 1.5 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (sum of bases extracted with 1N NH₄OAc pH 7, plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al) in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. Five percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Acrudoxic Plinthic Kandiudults

GCCI. Other Kandiudults that have an ECEC of 1.5 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (sum of bases extracted with 1N NH₄OAc pH 7, plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al) in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Acrudoxic Kandiudults

GCCJ. Other Kandiudults that have *both*:

1. Five percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. In one or more layers within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Plinthaquic Kandiudults

GCCK. Other Kandiudults that have *both*:

1. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *and*
2. In one or more layers within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and

also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquandic Kandiudults

GCCL. Other Kandiudults that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Kandiudults

GCCM. Other Kandiudults that have, in one or more layers within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Kandiudults

GCCN. Other Kandiudults that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Kandiudults

GCCO. Other Kandiudults that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox concentrations, a color value, moist, of 4 or more, and a hue which is 10YR or yellower, but which becomes redder with increasing depth within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Ombroaquic Kandiudults

GCCP. Other Kandiudults that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Kandiudults

GCCQ. Other Kandiudults that have a sombric horizon within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Sombric Kandiudults

GCCR. Other Kandiudults that have, throughout the argillic or kandic horizon, a hue of 2.5YR or redder, a color value, moist, of 3 or less, and a color value, dry, that is no more than one unit higher than the value, moist.

Rhodic Kandiudults

GCCS. Other Kandiudults.

Typic Kandiudults

Kanhapludults

Key to subgroups

GCDA. Kanhapludults that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Kanhapludults

GCDB. Other Kanhapludults that have *both*:

1. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic or a kandic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm; *and*
2. Five percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Arenic Plinthic Kanhapludults

GCDC. Other Kanhapludults that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic or a kandic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

Arenic Kanhapludults

GCDD. Other Kanhapludults that have an ECEC of 1.5 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (sum of bases extracted with 1N NH₄OAc pH 7, plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al) in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Acrudoxic Kanhapludults

GCDE. Other Kanhapludults that have *both*:

1. Five percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. In one or more layers within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Plinthaquic Kanhapludults

GCDF. Other Kanhapludults that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Kanhapludults

GCDG. Other Kanhapludults that have, in one or more layers within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Kanhapludults

GCDH. Other Kanhapludults that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Kanhapludults

GCDI. Other Kanhapludults that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox concentrations, a color value, moist, of 4 or more, and a hue which is 10YR or yellower, but which becomes redder with increasing depth within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Ombroaquic Kanhapludults

GCDJ. Other Kanhapludults that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Kanhapludults

GCDK. Other Kanhapludults that have, throughout the argillic or kandic horizon, a hue of 2.5YR or redder, a color value, moist, of 3 or less, and a color value, dry, that is no more than one unit higher than the value, moist.

Rhodic Kanhapludults

GCDL. Other Kanhapludults.

Typic Kanhapludults

Paleudults

Key to subgroups

GCEA. Paleudults which have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a lithic or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

Vertic Paleudults

GCEB. Other Paleudults which have a horizon 5 cm or more thick, either below an Ap horizon or at a depth of 18 cm or more from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, that has *one or more* of the following:

1. In 25 percent or more of each pedon, cementation by organic matter and aluminum, with or without iron; *or*
2. Aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.25 or more, and half that amount or less in an overlying horizon;
or

3. An ODOE value of 0.12 or more, and a value half as high or lower in an overlying horizon.

Spodic Paleudults

GCEC. Other Paleudults that have *both*:

1. A texture of loamy fine sand or coarser throughout the argillic horizon, or lamellae within its upper 100 cm; *and*
2. In one or more layers *either* within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface *or*, if the chroma throughout the upper 75 cm results from uncoated sand grains, within the upper 12.5 cm of the argillic or kandic horizon, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Psammaquentic Paleudults

GCED. Other Paleudults that have a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser throughout the argillic horizon, or lamellae within its upper 100 cm.

Psammentic Paleudults

GCEE. Other Paleudults that have:

1. In one or more layers *either* within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface *or*, if the chroma throughout the upper 75 cm results from uncoated sand grains, within the upper 12.5 cm of the argillic or kandic horizon, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage); *and*
2. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm; *and*
3. Five percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Arenic Plinthaquic Paleudults

GCEF. Other Paleudults that have *both*:

1. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm; *and*
2. In one or more layers *either* within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface *or*, if the chroma throughout the upper 75 cm results from uncoated sand grains, within the upper 12.5 cm of the argillic or kandic horizon, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and

also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Arenic Paleudults

GCEG. Other Paleudults that have *both*:

1. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm; *and*
2. Five percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Arenic Plinthic Paleudults

GCEH. Other Paleudults which have *both*:

1. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm; *and*
2. Throughout the upper 100 cm of the argillic horizon,
 - a. A color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, that is no more than 1 unit higher than the value, moist; *and*
 - b. No redox concentrations with a chroma of 3 or more.

Arenic Rhodic Paleudults

GCEI. Other Paleudults that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

Arenic Paleudults

GCEJ. Other Paleudults that have *both*:

1. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more; *and*
2. Five percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Grossarenic Plinthic Paleudults

GCEK. Other Paleudults that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more.

Grossarenic Paleudults

GCEL. Other Paleudults that have *both*:

1. Five percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. In one or more layers within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Plinthaquic Paleudults

GCEM. Other Paleudults that have *both*:

1. Within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, one or more subhorizons in the argillic horizon with all the properties of a fragipan, except that only 40 to 60 percent of the volume is brittle; *and*

2. In one or more layers within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Fragiaquic Paleudults

GCEN. Other Paleudults that have anthraquic conditions.

Anthraquic Paleudults

GCEO. Other Paleudults that have, in one or more layers within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Paleudults

GCEP. Other Paleudults that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Paleudults

GCEQ. Other Paleudults that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, one or more subhorizons in the argillic horizon with all the properties of a fragipan, except that only 40 to 60 percent of the volume is brittle.

Fragic Paleudults

GCER. Other Paleudults which have, throughout the upper 100 cm of the argillic horizon:

1. A color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, that is no more than 1 unit higher than the value, moist; *and*

2. No redox concentrations with a chroma of 3 or more.

Rhodic Paleudults

GCES. Other Paleudults.

Typic Paleudults

Plinthudults

Plinthudults are the Udults which have plinthite that either forms a continuous phase in, or constitutes more than half the matrix of, one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Rhodudults

Key to subgroups

GCFA. Rhodudults that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Rhodudults

GCFB. Other Rhodudults that have a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser throughout the argillic horizon.

Psammentic Rhodudults

GCFC. Other Rhodudults.

Typic Rhodudults

USTULTS

Key to great groups

GDA. Ustults that have one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface in which plinthite either forms a continuous phase or constitutes one half or more of the volume.

Plinthustults, p. 488

GDB. Other Ustults which:

1. Do not have a lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface;
and

2. Have a CEC of 16 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (by 1N NH₄OAc pH 7) and an ECEC of 12 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (sum of bases extracted with 1N NH₄OAc pH 7, plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al) in 50 percent or more *either* of the argillic or kandic horizon if less than 100 cm thick, *or* of its upper 100 cm; *and*

3. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface,
either:

a. Do not have a clay decrease with increasing depth of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content;
or

- b. Have 5 percent or more (by volume) skeletalans on faces of peds in the layer that has a 20 percent lower clay content *and*, below that layer, a clay increase of 3 percent or more (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction.

Kandiustults, p. 483

GDC. Other Ustults that have a CEC of 16 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (by 1N NH₄OAc pH 7) and an ECEC of 12 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (sum of bases extracted with 1N NH₄OAc pH 7, plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al) in 50 percent or more *either* of the argillic or kandic horizon if less than 100 cm thick, *or* of its upper 100 cm.

Kanhaplustults, p. 486

GDD. Other Ustults which:

1. Do not have a lithic, paralithic, or petroferic contact within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, *either*:

- a. Do not have a clay decrease with increasing depth of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content; *or*

- b. Have 5 percent or more (by volume) skeletalans on faces of peds in the layer that has a 20 percent lower clay content *and*, below that layer, a clay increase of 3 percent or more (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction.

Paleustults, p. 488

GDE. Other Ustults which have *both*:

1. An epipedon that has a color value, moist, of 3 or less throughout; *and*

2. An argillic horizon that has a color value, dry, of 4 or less, and a color value, moist, that is no more than 1 unit lower than the value, dry.

Rhodustults, p. 488

GDF. Other Ustults.

Haplustults, p. 482

Haplustults

Key to subgroups

GDF.A. Haplustults that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Haplustults

GDF.B. Other Haplustults that have a petroferic contact within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petroferic Haplustults

GDF.C. Other Haplustults that have, in one or more layers both within the upper 12.5 cm of the argillic

horizon and within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Haplustults

GDFD. Other Haplustults that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

Arenic Haplustults

GDFE. Other Haplustults that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox concentrations, a color value, moist, of 4 or more, and a hue which is 10YR or yellower, but which becomes redder with increasing depth within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Ombroaquic Haplustults

GDFF. Other Haplustults that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Haplustults

GDFG. Other Haplustults that have a CEC (by 1N NH_4OAc pH 7) of less than 24 $\text{cmol}(+)/\text{kg}$ clay² in 50 percent or more of the argillic horizon if less than 100 cm thick, or of its upper 100 cm.

Kanhaplic Haplustults

GDFH. Other Haplustults.

Typic Haplustults

Kandiustults

Key to subgroups

GDBA. Kandiustults that have an ECEC of 1.5 $\text{cmol}(+)/\text{kg}$ clay or less (sum of bases extracted with 1N NH_4OAc pH 7, plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al) in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Acrustoxic Kandiustults

² Some soils with properties that approach those of an Oxisol do not disperse well. If the ratio of (percent water retained at 1500 kPa tension minus percent organic carbon) to the percentage of measured clay is 0.6 or more, then the percentage of clay is considered to equal either (1) the measured percentage of clay, or (2) three times (percent water retained at 1500 kPa tension minus percent organic carbon), whichever value is higher, but no more than 100.

GDBB. Other Kandiestults that have, in one or more layers within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Kandiestults

GDBC. Other Kandiestults that have *both*:

1. A sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic or a kandic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm; *and*
2. Five percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Arenic Plinthic Kandiestults

GDBD. Other Kandiestults that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic or a kandic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

Arenic Kandiestults

GDBE. Other Kandiestults which have *both*:

1. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *and*
2. If neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:
 - a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, and a moisture control section that is dry in some part for 135 or less of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
 - b. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, and a moisture control section that is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Udandic Kandiestults

GDBF. Other Kandiestults that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Kandiestults

GDBG. Other Kandiestults that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Kandiestults

GDBH. Other Kandiestults which, if neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *either*:

1. A thermic, mesic, or colder soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for more than four tenths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
2. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is moist in some or all parts for less than 180 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Aridic Kandiestults

GDBI. Other Kandiestults which, if neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for 135 cumulative days or less per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
2. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Udic Kandiestults

GDBJ. Other Kandiestults that have, throughout the argillic or kandic horizon, a hue of 2.5YR or redder, a color value, moist, of 3 or less, and a color value, dry, that is no more than one unit higher than the value, moist.

Rhodic Kandiestults

GDBK. Other Kandiestults.

Typic Kandiestults

Kanhaplustults

Key to subgroups

GDCA. Kanhaplustults that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Kanhaplustults

GDCB. Other Kanhaplustults that have an ECEC of 1.5 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (sum of bases extracted with 1N NH₄OAc pH 7, plus 1N-KCl-extractable Al) in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Acrustoxic Kanhaplustults

GDCC. Other Kanhaplustults that have, in one or more layers within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Kanhaplustults

GDCCD. Other Kanhaplustults that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic or a kandic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

Arenic Kanhaplustults

GDCE. Other Kanhaplustults which have *both*:

1. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *and*
2. If neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:
 - a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, and a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for 135 cumulative days or less per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
 - b. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, and a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Udandic Kanhaplustults

GDCCF. Other Kanhaplustults that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth

fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Kanhaplustults

GDCG. Other Kanhaplustults that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Plinthic Kanhaplustults

GDCH. Other Kanhaplustults that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox concentrations, a color value, moist, of 4 or more, and a hue which is 10YR or yellower, but which becomes redder with increasing depth within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Ombroaquic Kanhaplustults

GDCI. Other Kanhaplustults which, if neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *either*:

1. A thermic, mesic, or colder soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for more than four tenths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
2. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is moist in some or all parts for less than 180 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Aridic Kanhaplustults

GDCJ. Other Kanhaplustults which, if neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some part for 135 cumulative days or less per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5°C; *or*
2. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime, *and* a moisture control section which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Udic Kanhaplustults

GDCK. Other Kanhaplustults that have, throughout the argillic or kandic horizon, a hue of 2.5YR or redder, a color value, moist, of 3 or less, and a color value, dry, that is no more than one unit higher than the value, moist.

Rhodic Kanhaplustults

GDCL. Other Kanhaplustults.

Typic Kanhaplustults

Paleustults

Paleustults are the Ustults which:

1. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, either:
 - a. Do not have a clay decrease with increasing depth of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content; or
 - b. Have 5 percent or more (by volume) skeletalans on faces of peds in the layer that has a 20 percent lower clay content and, below that layer, a clay increase of 3 percent or more (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction; and
2. Do not have any horizon within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface in which plinthite either forms a continuous phase or constitutes one half or more of the volume; and
3. Do not have a fragipan or kandic horizon.

Plinthustults

Plinthustults are the Ustults that have one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface in which plinthite either forms a continuous phase or constitutes one half or more of the volume.

Rhodustults

Key to subgroups

GDEA. Rhodustults that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Rhodustults

GDEB. Other Rhodustults that have a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser throughout the argillic horizon.

Psammentic Rhodustults

GDEC. Other Rhodustults.

Typic Rhodustults

XERULTS

Key to great groups

GEA. Xerults which:

1. Do not have a lithic or paralithic contact within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, *either*:
 - a. Do not have a clay decrease with increasing depth of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content; *or*
 - b. Have 5 percent or more (by volume) skeletalans on faces of peds, or 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite, or both, in the layer that has a 20 percent lower clay content *and*, below that layer, a clay increase of 3 percent or more (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction.

Palexerults, p.490

GEB. Other Xerults.

Haploxerults, p. 489

Haploxerults

Key to subgroups

GEBA. Haploxerults which have *both*:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. In each pedon, a discontinuous argillic horizon that is interrupted by ledges of bedrock.

Lithic Ruptic-Xerochreptic Haploxerults

GEBB. Other Haploxerults that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Haploxerults

GEBC. Other Haploxerults that have, in one or more subhorizons within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and a chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

Aquic Haploxerults

GEBD. Other Haploxerults that have a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser throughout the argillic horizon, or lamellae within its upper 25 cm.

Psammentic Haploxerults

GEBE. Other Haploxerults that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil

surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

Arenic Haploxerults

GEBF. Other Haploxerults that have a sandy particle size throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more.

Grossarenic Haploxerults

GEBG. Other Haploxerults that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm³ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus 1/2 iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

Andic Haploxerults

GEBH. Other Haploxerults.

Typic Haploxerults

Palixerults

Palixerults are the Xerults which:

1. Do not have a lithic or paralithic contact within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; and
2. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, either:
 - a. Do not have a clay decrease with increasing depth of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content; or
 - b. Have 5 percent or more (by volume) skeletalans on faces of peds in the layer that has a 20 percent lower clay content and, below that layer, a clay increase of 3 percent or more (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction.

LITERATURE CITED

Sys, C. 1969. The soils of central Africa in the American classification - 7th Approximation, African Soils. XIV:25-44.

Chapter 16

Vertisols¹

KEY TO SUBORDERS

EA. Vertisols which have, in one or more horizons between 40 and 50 cm from the mineral soil surface, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and one or both* of the following:

1. In more than half of each pedon, either on faces of peds or in the matrix if peds are absent, 50 percent or more chroma of *either*
 - a. Two or less if redox concentrations are present; *or*
 - b. One or less; *or*
2. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquerts, p. 492

EB. Other Vertisols that have a cryic soil temperature regime.

Cryerts, p. 499

EC. Other Vertisols which, in 6 or more out of 10 years, have *both*:

1. A thermic, mesic, or frigid soil temperature regime; *and*
2. If not irrigated during the year, cracks that remain both:
 - a. Five mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 60 or more consecutive days during the 90 days following the summer solstice; *and*
 - b. Closed for 60 or more consecutive days during the 90 days following the winter solstice.

Xererts, p. 511

ED. Other Vertisols which, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in 6 or more out of 10 years that remain closed for less than 60 consecutive days during a period when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is higher than 8°C.

Torrerts, p. 500

¹ This chapter on Vertisols was rewritten in 1992 following the recommendations of the International Committee on the Classification of Vertisols (ICOMERT), chaired by Juan Comerma.

EE. Other Vertisols which, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in 6 or more out of 10 years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 90 or more cumulative days per year.

Usterts, p. 504

EF. Other Vertisols.

Uderts, p. 502

AQUERTS

Key to great groups

EAA. Aquerts which have a salic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Salaquerts, p. 498

EAB. Other Aquerts which have a duripan that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Duraquerts, p. 493

EAC. Other Aquerts that have a natric horizon.

Natraquerts, p. 498

EAD. Other Aquerts which have a calcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Calciaquerts, p. 492

EAE. Other Aquerts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. An electrical conductivity of the saturation extract of less than 4.0 dS/m at 25°C; *and*

2. A pH value of 4.5 or less in 0.01 M CaCl₂ (5.0 or less in 1:1 water).

Dystraquerts, p. 494

EAF. Other Aquerts that have episaturation.

Epiaquerts, p. 496

EAG. Other Aquerts.

Endoquerts, p. 495

Calciaquerts

Key to subgroups

EADA. Calciaquerts that have, in one or more horizons between either an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and either a depth of 75 cm or the upper boundary of a duripan if shallower, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A hue of 2.5Y or redder and *either*:
 - a. A color value, moist, of 6 or more and a chroma of 3 or more; *or*
 - b. A color value, moist, of 5 or less and a chroma of 2 or more; *or*
2. A hue of 5Y and a chroma of 3 or more; *or*
3. A chroma of 2 or more, and no redox concentrations.

Aeric Calciaquerts

EADB. Other Calciaquerts.

Typic Calciaquerts**Duraquerts**Key to subgroups

EABA. Duraquerts which, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in 6 or more out of 10 years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 210 or more cumulative days per year.

Aridic Duraquerts

EABB. Other Duraquerts which, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in 6 or more out of 10 years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 90 or more cumulative days per year.

Ustic Duraquerts

EABC. Other Duraquerts that have, in one or more horizons between either an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and either a depth of 75 cm or the upper boundary of the duripan if shallower, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A hue of 2.5Y or redder and *either*:
 - a. A color value, moist, of 6 or more and a chroma of 3 or more; *or*
 - b. A color value, moist, of 5 or less and a chroma of 2 or more; *or*
2. A hue of 5Y and a chroma of 3 or more; *or*
3. A chroma of 2 or more, and no redox concentrations.

Aeric Duraquerts

EABD. Other Duraquerts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following in more than half of each pedon:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more.

Chromic Duraquerts

EABE. Other Duraquerts.

Typic Duraquerts**Dystraquerts**Key to subgroups

EAEA. Dystraquerts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, jarosite concentrations and a pH value of 4.0 or less (1:1 water, air-dried slowly in shade).

Sulfaqueptic Dystraquerts

EAEB. Other Dystraquerts that have more than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg Al³⁺ (by 1N KCl) in the fine-earth fraction throughout a layer 10 cm or more thick with an upper boundary between 25 and 50 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Alic Dystraquerts

EAEC. Other Dystraquerts which, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in 6 or more out of 10 years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 210 or more cumulative days per year.

Aridic Dystraquerts

EAED. Other Dystraquerts which, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in 6 or more out of 10 years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 90 or more cumulative days per year.

Ustic Dystraquerts

EAAE. Other Dystraquerts that have, in one or more horizons between either an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 75 cm, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A hue of 2.5Y or redder and *either*:
 - a. A color value, moist, of 6 or more and a chroma of 3 or more; *or*
 - b. A color value, moist, of 5 or less and a chroma of 2 or more; *or*
2. A hue of 5Y and a chroma of 3 or more; *or*
3. A chroma of 2 or more, and no redox concentrations.

Aeric Dystraquerts

EAEF. Other Dystraquerts that have a lithic or paralithic contact within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Leptic Dystraquerts

EAEG. Other Dystraquerts which have a layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Entic Dystraquerts

EAEH. Other Dystraquerts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following in more than half of each pedon:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more.

Chromic Dystraquerts

EAEI. Other Dystraquerts.

Typic Dystraquerts

Endoaquerts

Key to subgroups

EAGA. Endoaquerts that have, throughout a layer 15 cm or more thick within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an electrical conductivity of 15 dS/m or more (1:1 soil:water) for 6 or more months per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Halic Endoaquerts

EAGB. Other Endoaquerts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or more) for 6 or more months per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Sodic Endoaquerts

EAGC. Other Endoaquerts which, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in 6 or more out of 10 years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 210 or more cumulative days per year.

Aridic Endoaquerts

EAGD. Other Endoaquerts which have a thermic, mesic, or frigid soil temperature regime and which, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in 6 or more out of 10 years that remain *both*:

1. Five mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 60 or more consecutive days during the 90 days following the summer solstice; *and*
2. Closed for 60 or more consecutive days during the 90 days following the winter solstice.

Xeric Endoaquerts

EAGE. Other Endoaquerts which, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in 6 or more out of 10 years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or

more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 90 or more cumulative days per year.

Ustic Endoaquerts

EAGF. Other Endoaquerts that have, in one or more horizons between either an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 75 cm, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A hue of 2.5Y or redder and *either*:
 - a. A color value, moist, of 6 or more and a chroma of 3 or more; *or*
 - b. A color value, moist, of 5 or less and a chroma of 2 or more; *or*
2. A hue of 5Y and a chroma of 3 or more; *or*
3. A chroma of 2 or more, and no redox concentrations.

Aeric Endoaquerts

EAGG. Other Endoaquerts that have a lithic or paralithic contact within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Leptic Endoaquerts

EAGH. Other Endoaquerts which have a layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Entic Endoaquerts

EAGI. Other Endoaquerts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following in more than half of each pedon:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more.

Chromic Endoaquerts

EAGJ. Other Endoaquerts.

Typic Endoaquerts

Eplaquerts

Key to subgroups

EAFAs. Eplaquerts that have, throughout a layer 15 cm or more thick within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an electrical conductivity of 15 dS/m or more (1:1 soil:water) for 6 or more months per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Halic Eplaquerts

EAFBs. Other Eplaquerts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or a

sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or more) for 6 or more months per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Sodic Epiaquerts

E AFC. Other Epiaquerts which, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in 6 or more out of 10 years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 210 or more cumulative days per year.

Aridic Epiaquerts

E AFD. Other Epiaquerts which have a thermic, mesic, or frigid soil temperature regime and which, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in 6 or more out of 10 years that remain *both*:

1. Five mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 60 or more consecutive days during the 90 days following the summer solstice; *and*
2. Closed for 60 or more consecutive days during the 90 days following the winter solstice.

Xeric Epiaquerts

E AFE. Other Epiaquerts which, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in 6 or more out of 10 years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 90 or more cumulative days per year.

Ustic Epiaquerts

E AFF. Other Epiaquerts that have, in one or more horizons between either an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 75 cm, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A hue of 2.5Y or redder and *either*:
 - a. A color value, moist, of 6 or more and a chroma of 3 or more; *or*
 - b. A color value, moist, of 5 or less and a chroma of 2 or more; *or*
2. A hue of 5Y and a chroma of 3 or more; *or*
3. A chroma of 2 or more, and no redox concentrations.

Aeric Epiaquerts

E AFG. Other Epiaquerts that have a lithic or paralithic contact within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Leptic Epiaquerts

E AFH. Other Epiaquerts which have a layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Entic Epiaquerts

E AFI. Other Epiaquerts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one*

or both of the following in more than half of each pedon:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more.

Chromic Epiaquerts

EAFJ. Other Epiaquerts.

Typic Epiaquerts

Natraquerts

Key to subgroups

EACA. All Natraquerts.

Typic Natraquerts

Salaquerts

Key to subgroups

EAAA. Salaquerts which, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in 6 or more out of 10 years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 210 or more cumulative days per year.

Aridic Salaquerts

EAAB. Other Salaquerts which, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in 6 or more out of 10 years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 90 or more cumulative days per year.

Ustic Salaquerts

EAAC. Other Salaquerts that have a lithic or paralithic contact within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Leptic Salaquerts

EAAD. Other Salaquerts which have a layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Entic Salaquerts

EAAE. Other Salaquerts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*
3. A chroma of 3 or more.

Chromic Salaquerts

EAAF. Other Salaquerts.

Typic Salaquerts

CRYERTS

Key to great groups

EBA. Cryerts that have 10 kg/m² or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 50 cm.

Humicryerts, p. 499

EBB. Other Cryerts.

Haplocryerts, p. 499

Haplocryerts

Key to subgroups

EBBA. Haplocryerts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or more) for 6 or more months per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Sodic Haplocryerts

EBBB. Other Haplocryerts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*
3. A chroma of 3 or more.

Chromic Haplocryerts

EBBC. Other Haplocryerts.

Typic Haplocryerts

Humicryerts

Key to subgroups

EBAA. Humicryerts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or more) for 6 or more months per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Sodic Humicryerts

EBAB. Other Humicryerts.

Typic Humicryerts

TORRERTS

Key to great groups

EDA. Torrerts which have a salic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

Salitorrerts, p. 502

EDB. Other Torrerts which have a gypsic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

Gypsitorrerts, p. 501

EDC. Other Torrerts which have a calcic or petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

Calcitorrerts, p. 500

EDD. Other Torrerts.

Haplotorrerts, p. 501

Calcitorrerts

Key to subgroups

EDCA. Calcitorrerts which have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

Petrocalcic Calcitorrerts

EDCB. Other Calcitorrerts that have a lithic or paralithic contact, or the upper boundary of a duripan, within 100 cm of the soil surface.

Leptic Calcitorrerts

EDCC. Other Calcitorrerts which have a layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

Entic Calcitorrerts

EDCD. Other Calcitorrerts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*
3. A chroma of 3 or more.

Chromic Calcitorrerts

EDCE. Other Calcitorrerts.

Typic Calcitorrerts

Gypsite

Key to subgroups

EDBA. Gypsite that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*
3. A chroma of 3 or more.

Chromic Gypsite

EDBB. Other Gypsite.

Typic Gypsite

Haplosite

Key to subgroups

EDDA. Haplosite that have, throughout a layer 15 cm or more thick within 100 cm of the soil surface, an electrical conductivity of 15 dS/m or more (1:1 soil:water) for 6 or more months per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Halic Haplosite

EDDB. Other Haplosite that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the soil surface, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or more) for 6 or more months per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Sodic Haplosite

EDDC. Other Haplosite that have a lithic or paralithic contact, or the upper boundary of a duripan, within 100 cm of the soil surface.

Leptic Haplosite

EDDD. Other Haplosite which have a layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

Entic Haplosite

EDDE. Other Haplosite that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*
3. A chroma of 3 or more.

Chromic Haplosite

EDDF. Other Haplosite.

Typic Haplosite

Salitorrerts

Key to subgroups

EDAA. Salitorrerts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the soil surface, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and either*:

1. Redoximorphic features; *or*
2. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Salitorrerts

EDAB. Other Salitorrerts that have a lithic or paralithic contact, or the upper boundary of a duripan or petrocalcic horizon, within 100 cm of the soil surface.

Leptic Salitorrerts

EDAC. Other Salitorrerts which have a layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

Entic Salitorrerts

EDAD. Other Salitorrerts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*
3. A chroma of 3 or more.

Chromic Salitorrerts

EDAE. Other Salitorrerts.

Typic Salitorrerts

UDERTS

Key to great groups

EFA. Uderts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. An electrical conductivity of the saturation extract of less than 4.0 dS/m at 25°C; *and*
2. A pH value of 4.5 or less in 0.01 M CaCl₂ (5.0 or less in 1:1 water).

Dystruderts, p.503

EFB. Other Uderts.

Hapluderts, p. 503

Dystruderts

Key to subgroups

EFAA. Dystruderts that have more than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg Al³⁺ (by 1N KCl) in the fine-earth fraction throughout a layer 10 cm or more thick with an upper boundary between 25 and 50 cm from the mineral soil surface.

Alic Dystruderts

EFAB. Other Dystruderts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, aqueic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and either*:

1. Redoximorphic features; *or*
2. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α,α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Dystruderts

EFAC. Other Dystruderts that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Dystruderts

EFAD. Other Dystruderts that have a lithic or paralithic contact within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Leptic Dystruderts

EFAE. Other Dystruderts which have a layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Entic Dystruderts

EFAF. Other Dystruderts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*
3. A chroma of 3 or more.

Chromic Dystruderts

EFAG. Other Dystruderts.

Typic Dystruderts

Hapluderts

Key to subgroups

EFBA. Hapluderts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Hapluderts

EFBB. Other Hapluderts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface,

aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and either*:

1. Redoximorphic features; *or*
2. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Hapluderts

EFBC. Other Hapluderts that are saturated with water, in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 1 month or more per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Oxyaquic Hapluderts

EFBD. Other Hapluderts that have a lithic or paralithic contact within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Leptic Hapluderts

EFBE. Other Hapluderts which have a layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Entic Hapluderts

EFBF. Other Hapluderts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*
3. A chroma of 3 or more.

Chromic Hapluderts

EFBG. Other Hapluderts.

Typic Hapluderts

USTERTS

Key to great groups

EEA. Usterts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. An electrical conductivity of the saturation extract of less than 4.0 dS/m at 25°C; *and*
2. A pH value of 4.5 or less in 0.01 M CaCl₂ (5.0 or less in 1:1 water).

Dystrusterts, p. 506

EEB. Other Usterts which have a salic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Salusterts, p. 510

EEC. Other Usterts which have a gypsic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Gypsiusterts, p. 507

EED. Other Usterts which have a calcic or petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Calciusterts, p. 505

EEE. Other Usterts.

Haplusterts, p. 508

Calciusterts

Key to subgroups

EEDA. Calciusterts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Calciusterts

EEDB. Other Calciusterts that have, throughout a layer 15 cm or more thick within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an electrical conductivity of 15 dS/m or more (1:1 soil:water) for 6 or more months per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Halic Calciusterts

EEDC. Other Calciusterts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or more) for 6 or more months per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Sodic Calciusterts

EEDD. Other Calciusterts which have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petrocalcic Calciusterts

EEDE. Other Calciusterts which, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in 6 or more out of 10 years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 210 or more cumulative days per year.

Aridic Calciusterts

EEDF. Other Calciusterts which, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in 6 or more out of 10 years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for less than 150 cumulative days per year.

Udic Calciusterts

EEDG. Other Calciusterts that have a lithic or paralithic contact, or the upper boundary of a duripan, within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Leptic Calciusterts

EEDH. Other Calciusterts which have a layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its

fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Entic Calciusterts

EEDI. Other Calciusterts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*
3. A chroma of 3 or more.

Chromic Calciusterts

EEDJ. Other Calciusterts.

Typic Calciusterts

Dystrusterts

Key to subgroups

EEAA. Dystrusterts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Dystrusterts

EEAB. Other Dystrusterts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and either*:

1. Redoximorphic features; *or*
2. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Dystrusterts

EEAC. Other Dystrusterts which, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in 6 or more out of 10 years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 210 or more cumulative days per year.

Aridic Dystrusterts

EEAD. Other Dystrusterts which, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in 6 or more out of 10 years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for less than 150 cumulative days.

Udic Dystrusterts

EEAE. Other Dystrusterts that have a lithic or paralithic contact, or the upper boundary of a duripan, within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Leptic Dystrusterts

EEAF. Other Dystrusterts which have a layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Entic Dystrusterts

EEAG. Other Dystrusterts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*
3. A chroma of 3 or more.

Chromic Dystrusterts

EEAH. Other Dystrusterts.

Typic Dystrusterts

Gypsiusterts

Key to subgroups

EECA. Gypsiusterts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Gypsiusterts

EECB. Other Gypsiusterts that have, throughout a layer 15 cm or more thick within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an electrical conductivity of 15 dS/m or more (1:1 soil:water) for 6 or more months per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Halic Gypsiusterts

EECC. Other Gypsiusterts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or more) for 6 or more months per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Sodic Gypsiusterts

EECD. Other Gypsiusterts which, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in 6 or more out of 10 years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 210 or more cumulative days per year.

Aridic Gypsiusterts

EECE. Other Gypsiusterts which, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in 6 or more out of 10 years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for less than 150 cumulative days per year.

Udic Gypsiusterts

EECF. Other Gypsiusterts that have a lithic or paralithic contact, or the upper boundary of a duripan or petrocalcic horizon, within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Leptic Gypsiusterts

EECG. Other Gypsiusterts which have a layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Entic Gypsiusterts

EECH. Other Gypsiusterts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*
3. A chroma of 3 or more.

Chromic Gypsiusterts

EECI. Other Gypsiusterts.

Typic Gypsiusterts

Haplusterts

Key to subgroups

EEEA. Haplusterts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Haplusterts

EEEB. Other Haplusterts that have, throughout a layer 15 cm or more thick within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an electrical conductivity of 15 dS/m or more (1:1 soil:water) for 6 or more months per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Halic Haplusterts

EEEC. Other Haplusterts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or more) for 6 or more months per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Sodic Haplusterts

EEED. Other Haplusterts which have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petrocalcic Haplusterts

EEEE. Other Haplusterts which, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in 6 or more out of 10 years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 210 or more cumulative days per year.

Aridic Haplusterts

EEEF. Other Haplusterts which have *both*:

1. A lithic or paralithic contact within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. If not irrigated during the year, cracks in 6 or more out of 10 years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for less than 150 cumulative days per year.

Leptic Udic Haplusterts

EEEG. Other Haplusterts which have *both*:

1. A layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. If not irrigated during the year, cracks in 6 or more out of 10 years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for less than 150 cumulative days per year.

Entic Udic Haplusterts

EEEH. Other Haplusterts which have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:
 - a. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
 - b. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*
 - c. A chroma of 3 or more; *and*
2. If not irrigated during the year, cracks in 6 or more out of 10 years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for less than 150 cumulative days per year.

Chromic Udic Haplusterts

EEEI. Other Haplusterts which, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in 6 or more out of 10 years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for less than 150 cumulative days per year.

Udic Haplusterts

EEEJ. Other Haplusterts that have a lithic or paralithic contact, or the upper boundary of a duripan, within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Leptic Haplusterts

EEEK. Other Haplusterts which have a layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Entic Haplusterts

EEEL. Other Haplusterts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*
3. A chroma of 3 or more.

Chromic Haplusterts

EEEM. Other Haplusterts.

Typic Haplusterts

Salusterts

Key to subgroups

EEBA. Salusterts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Salusterts

EEBB. Other Salusterts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or more) for 6 or more months per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Sodic Salusterts

EEBC. Other Salusterts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and either*:

1. Redoximorphic features; *or*
2. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Salusterts

EEBD. Other Salusterts which, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in 6 or more out of 10 years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 210 or more cumulative days per year.

Aridic Salusterts

EEBE. Other Salusterts that have a lithic or paralithic contact, or the upper boundary of a duripan or petrocalcic horizon, within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Leptic Salusterts

EEBF. Other Salusterts which have a layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Entic Salusterts

EEBG. Other Salusterts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*
3. A chroma of 3 or more.

Chromic Salusterts

EEBH. Other Salusterts.

Typic Salusterts

XERERTS

Key to great groups

ECA. Xererts which have a duripan that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Durixererts, p. 512

ECB. Other Xererts which have a calcic or petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Calcixererts, p. 511

ECC. Other Xererts.

Haploxererts, p. 513

Calcixererts

Key to subgroups

ECBA. Calcixererts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Calcixererts

ECBB. Other Calcixererts which, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in 6 or more out of 10 years that remain 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 180 or more consecutive days.

Aridic Calcixererts

ECBC. Other Calcixererts which have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Petrocalcic Calcixererts

ECBD. Other Calcixererts that have a lithic or paralithic contact within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Leptic Calcixererts

ECBE. Other Calcixererts which have a layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Entic Calcixererts

ECBF. Other Calcixererts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*
3. A chroma of 3 or more.

Chromic Calcixererts

ECBG. Other Calcixererts.

Typic Calcixererts

Durixererts

Key to subgroups

ECAA. Durixererts that have, throughout a layer 15 cm or more thick above the duripan, an electrical conductivity of 15 dS/m or more (1:1 soil:water) for 6 or more months per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Hallic Durixererts

ECAB. Other Durixererts that have, in one or more horizons above the duripan, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or more) for 6 or more months per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Sodic Durixererts

ECAC. Other Durixererts that have, in one or more horizons above the duripan, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and either*:

1. Redoximorphic features; *or*
2. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Durixererts

ECAD. Other Durixererts which, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in 6 or more out of 10 years that remain 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more above the duripan, for 180 or more consecutive days.

Aridic Durixererts

ECAE. Other Durixererts which, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in 6 or more out of 10 years that remain 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more above the duripan, for less than 90 consecutive days.

Udic Durixererts

ECAF. Other Durixererts which have a duripan that is not indurated in any subhorizon.

Haplic Durixererts

ECAG. Other Durixererts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*
3. A chroma of 3 or more.

Chromic Durixererts

ECAH. Other Durixererts.

Typic Durixererts

Haploxererts

Key to subgroups

ECCA. Haploxererts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Lithic Haploxererts

ECCB. Other Haploxererts that have, throughout a layer 15 cm or more thick within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an electrical conductivity of 15 dS/m or more (1:1 soil:water) for 6 or more months per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Halic Haploxererts

ECCC. Other Haploxererts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or more) for 6 or more months per year in 6 or more out of 10 years.

Sodic Haploxererts

ECCD. Other Haploxererts which, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in 6 or more out of 10 years that remain 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 180 or more consecutive days.

Aridic Haploxererts

ECCE. Other Haploxererts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage) *and either*

1. Redoximorphic features; *or*
2. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to α, α' -dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

Aquic Haploxererts

ECCF. Other Haploxererts which, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in 6 or more out of 10 years that remain 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for less than 90 consecutive days.

Udic Haploxererts

ECCG. Other Haploxererts that have a lithic or paralithic contact within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Leptic Haploxererts

ECCH. Other Haploxererts which have a layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

Entic Haploxererts

ECCI. Other Haploxererts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*
3. A chroma of 3 or more.

Chromic Haploxererts

ECCJ. Other Haploxererts.

Typic Haploxererts

Designations for Horizons and Layers

Genetic soil horizons are not the equivalent of the diagnostic horizons of *Soil Taxonomy*. While designations of genetic horizons express a qualitative judgment about the kinds of changes that are believed to have taken place in a soil, diagnostic horizons are quantitatively defined features which are used to differentiate between taxa. A diagnostic horizon may encompass several genetic horizons, and changes implied by genetic horizon designations may not be large enough to justify recognizing different diagnostic horizons. Genetic horizons are designated as follows.

MASTER HORIZONS AND LAYERS

The capital letters O, A, E, B, C, and R represent the master horizons and layers of soils. These capital letters are the base symbols to which other characters are added to complete the designations. Most horizons and layers are given a single capital-letter symbol; some require two.

O horizons or layers: *Layers dominated by organic material. Some are saturated with water for long periods, or were once saturated but are now artificially drained; others have never been saturated.*

Some O layers consist of undecomposed or partially decomposed litter (such as leaves, needles, twigs, moss, and lichens) that has been deposited on the surface; they may be on top of either mineral or organic soils. Other O layers consist of organic material that was deposited under saturated conditions and has decomposed to varying stages. The mineral fraction of such material constitutes only a small percentage of its volume and generally much less than half of its weight. Some soils consist entirely of materials designated as O horizons or layers.

An O layer may be on the surface of a mineral soil, or at any depth below the surface if it is buried. A horizon formed by the illuviation of organic material into a mineral subsoil is not an O horizon, although some horizons that have formed in this manner contain considerable amounts of organic matter.

A horizons: *Mineral horizons which have formed at the surface or below an O horizon; they exhibit obliteration of all or much of the original rock structure¹ and show one or both of the following: (1) an accumulation of humified organic matter intimately mixed with the*

¹ Rock structure includes fine stratification in unconsolidated soil materials as well as pseudomorphs of weathered minerals that retain their positions relative to each other and to unweathered minerals in saprolite.

mineral fraction and not dominated by properties characteristic of E or B horizons (defined below), or (2) properties resulting from cultivation, pasturing, or similar kinds of disturbance.

If a surface horizon has properties of both A and E horizons but the feature emphasized is an accumulation of humified organic matter, it is designated an A horizon. In some places, as in warm arid climates, the undisturbed surface horizon is less dark than the adjacent underlying horizon and contains only small amounts of organic matter; it has a morphology distinct from the C layer, although the mineral fraction is unaltered or only slightly altered by weathering. Such a horizon is designated A because it is at the surface; however, recent alluvial or eolian deposits that retain fine stratification are not considered to be A horizons unless cultivated.

E horizons: *Mineral horizons in which the main feature is loss of silicate clay, iron, or aluminum, or some combination of these, leaving a concentration of sand and silt particles. These horizons exhibit obliteration of all or much of the original rock structure².*

An E horizon is most commonly differentiated from an underlying B horizon in the same sequum by a color of higher value or lower chroma or both, by coarser texture, or by a combination of these properties. In some soils the color of the E horizon is that of the sand and silt particles, but in many soils coatings of iron oxides or other compounds mask the color of the primary particles. An E horizon is most commonly differentiated from an overlying A horizon by its lighter color. It generally contains less organic matter than the A horizon. An E horizon is commonly near the surface below an O or A horizon and above a B horizon, but the symbol E can be used for eluvial horizons which are within or between parts of the B horizon, or which extend to depths greater than normal observation if the horizon is pedogenic.

B horizons: *Horizons which have formed below an A, E, or O horizon; they are dominated by the obliteration of all or much of the original rock structure and show one or more of the following:*

- (1) *Illuvial concentration of silicate clay, iron, aluminum, humus, carbonates, gypsum, or silica, alone or in combination;*
- (2) *Evidence of removal of carbonates;*
- (3) *Residual concentration of sesquioxides;*
- (4) *Coatings of sesquioxides that make the horizon conspicuously lower in color value, higher in chroma, or redder in hue, without*

² See footnote 1.

apparent illuviation of iron, than overlying and underlying horizons;

(5) Alteration which forms silicate clay or liberates oxides, or both, and which forms a granular, blocky, or prismatic structure if volume changes accompany changes in moisture content; or

(6) Brittleness.

All the different kinds of B horizons are, or were originally, subsurface horizons. Included as B horizons, where contiguous to other genetic horizons, are layers of illuvial concentration of carbonates, gypsum, or silica which are the result of pedogenic processes (and may or may not be cemented), and brittle layers that show other evidence of alteration, such as prismatic structure or illuvial accumulation of clay.

Examples of layers that are not B horizons are: layers in which clay films either coat rock fragments or cover finely stratified unconsolidated sediments, regardless of whether the films were formed in place or by illuviation; layers into which carbonates have been illuviated but which are not contiguous to an overlying genetic horizon; and layers with gleying but no other pedogenic changes.

C horizons or layers: *Horizons or layers, excluding hard bedrock, that are little affected by pedogenic processes and lack the properties of O, A, E, or B horizons. Most are mineral layers. The material of C layers may be either like or unlike the material from which the solum has presumably formed. The C horizon may have been modified, even if there is no evidence of pedogenesis.*

Included as C layers are sediment, saprolite, unconsolidated bedrock, and other geologic materials which are commonly uncemented and characterized by low or moderate excavation difficulty. Some soils form in material that is already highly weathered, and if such material does not meet the requirements for A, E, or B horizons, it is designated C. Changes not considered pedogenic are those not related to overlying horizons. Layers that contain accumulations of silica, carbonates, gypsum, or more soluble salts are included in C horizons, even if indurated. However, if an indurated layer is obviously affected by pedogenic processes, it is considered a B horizon.

R layers: *Hard Bedrock*

Granite, basalt, quartzite, and indurated limestone or sandstone are examples of bedrock designated R. R layers are cemented, and excavation difficulty exceeds moderate. The R layer is sufficiently coherent when moist to make hand-digging with a spade impractical, although it may be chipped or scraped. Some R layers can be ripped with heavy power

equipment. The bedrock may contain cracks, but these are generally too few and too small to allow roots to penetrate. The cracks may be coated or filled with clay or other material.

Transitional and combination horizons

Horizons dominated by properties of one master horizon but having subordinate properties of another: Two capital-letter symbols are used for such transitional horizons, e.g., AB, EB, BE, or BC. The first of these symbols indicates that the properties of the horizon so designated dominate the transitional horizon. An AB horizon, for example, has characteristics of both an overlying A horizon and an underlying B horizon, but it is more like the A than like the B.

In some cases, a horizon can be designated as transitional even if one of the master horizons to which it presumably forms a transition is not present. A BE horizon may be recognized in a truncated soil if its properties are similar to those of a BE horizon in a soil from which the overlying E horizon has not been removed by erosion. A BC horizon may be recognized even if no underlying C horizon is present; it is transitional to assumed parent materials.

Horizons with two distinct parts that have recognizable properties of the two kinds of master horizons indicated by the capital letters: The two capital letters designating such combination horizons are separated by a virgule (/), e.g., E/B, B/E, or B/C. Most of the individual parts of one horizon component are surrounded by the other.

The designation may be used even when horizons similar to one or both of the components are not present, provided that the separate components can be recognized in the combination horizon. The first symbol is that of the horizon with the greater volume.

Single sets of horizon designators do not cover all situations; therefore, some improvising has to be done. For example, Alfic Udipsamments have lamellae that are separated from each other by eluvial layers. Because it is generally not practical to describe each lamella and eluvial layer as a separate horizon, the horizons can be combined but the components described separately. One horizon then contains several lamellae and eluvial layers and can be designated an "E and Bt" horizon. The complete horizon sequence for this soil could be: Ap-Bw-E and Bt1-E and Bt2-C.

SUBORDINATE DISTINCTIONS WITHIN MASTER HORIZONS AND LAYERS

Lower-case letters are used as suffixes to designate specific kinds of master horizons and layers. The term

accumulation is used in many of the definitions of such horizons to indicate that these horizons must contain more of the material in question than is presumed to have been present in the parent material. The suffix symbols and their meanings are as follows:

a *Highly decomposed organic material*

This symbol is used with O to indicate the most highly decomposed organic materials, which have a rubbed fiber content of less than 17 percent of the volume.

b *Buried genetic horizon*

This symbol is used in mineral soils to indicate identifiable buried horizons with major genetic features that were developed before burial. Genetic horizons may or may not have formed in the overlying material, which may be either like or unlike the assumed parent material of the buried soil. This symbol is not used in organic soils or to separate an organic from a mineral layer.

c *Concretions or nodules*

This symbol indicates a significant accumulation of concretions or nodules. Cementation is required, but the cementing agent is not specified, except that it cannot be silica. This symbol is not used if the concretions or nodules consist of dolomite or calcite or more soluble salts, but it is used if the nodules or concretions are enriched with minerals that contain iron, aluminum, manganese, or titanium.

d *Physical root restriction*

This symbol indicates root-restricting layers in naturally occurring or man-made unconsolidated sediments or materials, such as dense basal till, plow pans, and other mechanically compacted zones.

e *Organic material of intermediate decomposition*

This symbol is used with O to indicate organic materials of intermediate decomposition. Their rubbed fiber content is 17 to 40 percent (by volume).

f *Frozen soil*

This symbol indicates that a horizon or layer contains permanent ice. The symbol is not used for seasonally frozen layers or for so-called dry permafrost (material that is colder than 0°C but does not contain ice).

g *Strong gleying*

This symbol indicates either that iron has been reduced and removed during soil formation, or that saturation with stagnant water has preserved

it in a reduced state. Most of the affected layers have a chroma of 2 or less, and many have redox concentrations. The low chroma can represent either the color of reduced iron or the color of uncoated sand and silt particles from which iron has been removed. The symbol g is not used for materials of low chroma that have no history of wetness, such as some shales or E horizons. If g is used with B, pedogenic change in addition to gleying is implied. If no other pedogenic change besides gleying has taken place, the horizon is designated Cg.

h *Illuvial accumulation of organic matter*

This symbol is used with B to indicate the accumulation of illuvial, amorphous, dispersible organic-matter-sesquioxide complexes if the sesquioxide component is dominated by aluminum but is present only in very small quantities. The organo-sesquioxide material coats sand and silt particles. In some horizons, these coatings have coalesced, filled pores, and cemented the horizon. The symbol h is also used in combination with s as "Bhs" if the amount of sesquioxide component is significant but the color value and chroma, moist, of the horizon is 3 or less.

i *Slightly decomposed organic material*

This symbol is used with O to indicate the least decomposed of the organic materials. Its rubbed fiber content is 40 percent or more (by volume).

k *Accumulation of carbonates*

This symbol indicates an accumulation of alkaline-earth carbonates, commonly calcium carbonate.

m *Cementation or induration*

This symbol indicates continuous or nearly continuous cementation. It is used only for horizons that are more than 90 percent cemented, although they may be fractured. The cemented layer is physically root-restrictive. The predominant cementing agent (or the two dominant cementing agents) may be indicated by using defined letter suffixes, singly or in pairs. The horizon suffix km indicates cementation by carbonates; qm: cementation by silica; sm: cementation by iron; ym: cementation by gypsum; kqm: cementation by lime and silica; and zm: cementation by salts more soluble than gypsum.

n *Accumulation of sodium*

This symbol indicates an accumulation of exchangeable sodium.

o *Residual accumulation of sesquioxides*

This symbol indicates a residual accumulation of sesquioxides.

p *Tillage or other disturbance*

This symbol indicates a disturbance of the surface layer by mechanical means, pasturing, or similar uses. A disturbed organic horizon is designated Op. A disturbed mineral horizon is designated Ap even though it is clearly a former E, B, or C horizon.

q *Accumulation of silica*

This symbol indicates an accumulation of secondary silica.

r *Weathered or soft bedrock*

This symbol is used with C to indicate root-restrictive layers of saprolite such as weathered igneous rock, or of soft bedrock such as partly consolidated sandstone, siltstone, and shale. Excavation difficulty is low or moderate.

s *Illuvial accumulation of sesquioxides and organic matter*

This symbol is used with B to indicate an accumulation of illuvial, amorphous, dispersible organic-matter-sesquioxide complexes if both the organic-matter and sesquioxide components are significant, and if the color value and chroma, moist, of the horizon is 4 or more. The symbol is also used in combination with h as "Bhs" if both the organic-matter and sesquioxide components are significant, and if the color value and chroma, moist, is 3 or less.

ss *Presence of slickensides*

This symbol indicates the presence of slickensides. Slickensides result directly from the swelling of clay minerals and shear failure, commonly at angles of 20 to 60 degrees above horizontal. They are indicators that other vertic characteristics, such as wedge-shaped peds and surface cracks, may be present.

t *Accumulation of silicate clay*

This symbol indicates an accumulation of silicate clay that has either formed and subsequently been translocated within the horizon or has been moved into the horizon by illuviation, or both. At least some part of the horizon should show evidence of clay accumulation either as coatings on surfaces of peds or in pores, or as lamellae or as bridges between mineral grains.

v *Plinthite*

This symbol indicates the presence of iron-rich, humus-poor reddish material that is firm or very firm when moist and hardens irreversibly when exposed to the atmosphere and to repeated wetting and drying.

w *Development of color or structure*

This symbol is used with B to indicate the development of color or structure, or both, with little or no apparent illuvial accumulation of material. It should not be used to indicate a transitional horizon.

x *Fragipan character*

This symbol indicates a genetically developed layer that has a combination of firmness, brittleness, very coarse prisms with few to many bleached vertical faces, and commonly a higher bulk density than adjacent layers. Some part of the layer is physically root-restrictive.

y *Accumulation of gypsum*

This symbol indicates a gypsum accumulation.

z *Accumulation of salts more soluble than gypsum*

This symbol indicates an accumulation of salts that are more soluble than gypsum.

CONVENTIONS FOR USING LETTER SUFFIXES

Many master horizons and layers that are symbolized by a single capital letter have one or more lower-case letter suffixes. The following rules apply:

Letter suffixes should immediately follow the capital letter.

More than three suffixes are rarely used.

If more than one suffix is needed, the following letters, if used, are written first: a, d, e, h, i, r, s, t, and w. Except in the Bhs or Crt³ horizon designations, none of these letters are used in combination in a single horizon.

If more than one suffix is needed and the horizon is not buried, the following symbols, if used, are written last: c, f, g, m, v, and x. Some examples: Btc, Bkm, and Bsv.

If a horizon is buried, the suffix b is written last. It is used only for buried mineral soils.

³ Indicates weathered bedrock or saprolite in which clay films are present.

A "B" horizon that has a significant accumulation of clay and also shows evidence of a development of color or structure, or both, is designated Bt (t has precedence over w, s, and h). A "B" horizon that is gleyed or contains accumulations of carbonates, sodium, silica, gypsum, salts more soluble than gypsum, or residual accumulations of sesquioxides, carries the appropriate symbol: g, k, n, q, y, z, or o. If illuvial clay is also present, t precedes the other symbol: Bto.

The suffixes h, s, and w are not used with g, k, n, q, y, z, or o, unless needed for explanatory purposes.

VERTICAL SUBDIVISION

Commonly a horizon or layer identified by a single letter or a combination of letters has to be subdivided. For this purpose, Arabic numerals are added to the letters of the horizon designation. These numerals follow all the letters. Within a C horizon, for example, successive layers may be designated C1, C2, C3, etc.; or, if the lower part is gleyed and the upper part is not, the layers may be designated C1-C2-Cg1-Cg2 or C-Cg1-Cg2-R.

These conventions apply whatever the purpose of the subdivision. In many soils, a horizon that could be identified by a single set of letters is subdivided to recognize differences in morphological features, such as structure, color, or texture. These divisions are numbered consecutively with Arabic numerals, but the numbering starts again with 1 wherever in the profile any letter of the horizon symbol changes, e.g.: Bt1-Bt2-Btk1-Btk2 (not Bt1-Bt2-Btk3-Btk4). The numbering of vertical subdivisions within a horizon is not interrupted at a discontinuity (indicated by a numerical prefix) if the same letter combination is used in both materials; e.g.: Bs1-Bs2-2Bs3-2Bs4 (not Bs1-Bs2-2Bs1-2Bs2).

During sampling for laboratory analyses, thick soil horizons are sometimes subdivided even though differences in morphology are not evident in the field. These subdivisions, too, are identified by Arabic numerals which follow the respective horizon designations. For example, four layers of a Bt horizon sampled by 10-cm increments are designated Bt1, Bt2, Bt3, and Bt4. If the horizon has already been subdivided because of differences in morphological features, the set of Arabic numerals that identifies the additional sampling subdivisions follows the first numeral. For example, three layers of a Bt2 horizon sampled by 10-cm increments are designated Bt21, Bt22, and Bt23. The descriptions for each of these sampling subdivisions can be the same, and a comment can be added stating that the horizon has been subdivided for sampling purposes only.

DISCONTINUITIES

In mineral soils, Arabic numerals are used as prefixes to horizon designations (preceding A, E, B, C, and R) to indicate discontinuities. These prefixes are distinct from the Arabic numerals that are used as suffixes to denote vertical subdivisions.

A discontinuity which can be identified by a number prefix is a significant change in particle-size distribution or mineralogy that indicates a difference in the material from which the horizons have formed, and/or a significant difference in age, unless that difference in age is indicated by the suffix b. Symbols to identify discontinuities are used only when they can contribute substantially to an understanding of the relationships among horizons. Stratification common to soils formed in alluvium is not designated as a discontinuity, unless particle-size distribution differs markedly from layer to layer (i.e., particle-size classes are strongly contrasting), even though genetic horizons may have formed in the contrasting layers.

Where a soil has formed entirely in one kind of material, the whole profile is understood to be material 1 and the number prefix is omitted from the symbol. Similarly, the uppermost material in a profile consisting of two or more contrasting materials is understood to be material 1, but the number is omitted. Numbering starts with the second layer of contrasting material, which is designated 2. Underlying contrasting layers are numbered consecutively. Even when the material of a layer below material 2 is similar to material 1, it is designated 3 in the sequence; the numbers indicate a change in materials, not types of material. Where two or more consecutive horizons have formed in the same kind of material, the same prefix number is applied to all the designations of horizons in that material: Ap-E-Bt1-2Bt2-2Bt3-2BC. The suffix numbers designating subdivisions of the Bt horizon continue in consecutive order across the discontinuity.

If an R layer is present below a soil that has formed in residuum, and if the material of the R layer is judged to be like the material from which the soil has developed, the Arabic-number prefix is not used. But the prefix is used if it is thought that the R layer would produce material unlike that in the solum, e.g.: A-Bt-C-2R, or A-Bt-2R. If part of the solum has formed in residuum, the symbol R is given the appropriate prefix: Ap-Bt1-2Bt2-2Bt3-2C1-2C2-2R.

A buried horizon (designated b) presents special problems. It is obviously not in the same deposit as the overlying horizons. Some buried horizons, however, have formed in material which is lithologically like the overlying deposit. A prefix is not used to distinguish material of such a buried horizon. If, however, the material in which a horizon of a buried soil has formed

is lithologically unlike the overlying material, the discontinuity is indicated by a number prefix, and the symbol for the buried horizon is used in addition, e.g.: Ap-Bt1-Bt2-BC-C-2ABb-2Btb1-2Btb2-2C.

In organic soils, discontinuities between different kinds of layers are not identified. In most cases such differences are identified either by letter-suffix designations if the different layers are organic, or by the master symbol if the different layers are mineral.

USE OF THE PRIME

If a pedon contains two or more horizons of the same kind which are separated by one or more horizons of a different kind, identical letter and number symbols can be used for those horizons that have the same characteristics. For example, the sequence A-E-Bt-E-Btx-C identifies a soil that has two E horizons. To emphasize this characteristic, the prime (the symbol ') is added after the master-horizon symbol of the lower of the two horizons that have identical designations, e.g.: A-E-Bt-E'-Btx-C. The prime, when appropriate, is applied to the capital-letter horizon designation, and any lower-case letter symbols follow it: B't. It is used only when the letter designations of the two layers in question are completely identical. In the rare cases when three layers have identical letter symbols, a double prime can be used for the lowest of these layers: E''.

The same principle applies in designating layers of organic soils. The prime is used only to distinguish two or more horizons that have identical symbols; e.g., Oi-C-O'i-C' when the soil has two identical Oi layers, or Oi-C-Oe-C' when the two C layers are of the same kind.

SI Unit Conversion Table

CEC and ECEC:

1 meq/100 g soil = 1 cmol(+)/kg soil

Conductivity:

1mmho/cm = 1 dS/m

Pressure:

15-bar water = 1500 kPa water retention

1/3-bar water = 33 kPa water retention

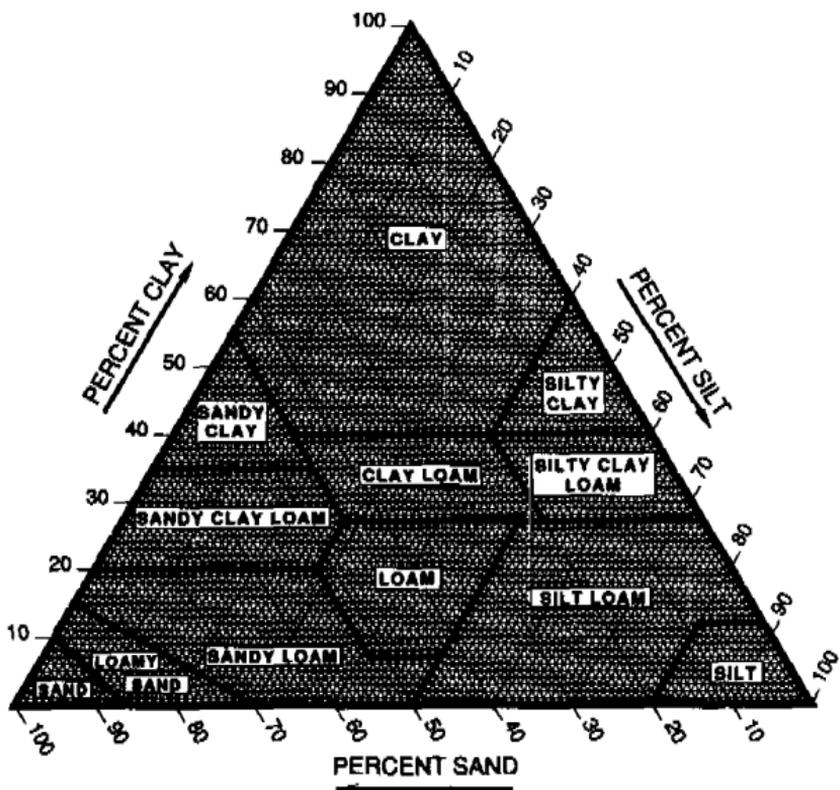


Chart showing the percentages of clay (below 0.002 mm), silt (0.002 to 0.05 mm), and sand (0.05 to 2.0 mm) in the basic soil textural classes.

INDEX

A

α, α' -dipyridyl	27,28
A horizons	515
Abrupt textural change	23
Accumulation	519
Acraquox	414
Acroperox	415,416
Acrotorrox	423
Acrudox	424,425
Acrustox	432,433
Agric horizon	9
Agrudalfs	99,100
Alaquods	441,442
Albaqualfs	80
Albaquults	456,457
Albic	
horizon	10
materials	23,29
ALBOLLS	335,337
ALFISOLS	76,79
Alorthods	450
Andic soil properties	24,25
ANDISOLS	74,139
Anthraquic conditions	28
Anthric saturation	26
Anthropic epipedon	4
Ap horizon	521
AQUALFS	79,80
AQUANDS	139,140
AQUENTS	233,234
AQUEPTS	289,290
AQUERTS	491,492
Aquic conditions	25
Aquic moisture regime	34
AQUODS	441
AQUOLLS	336,339
AQUOX	413,414
AQUULTS	455,456
ARENTS	234,241
Argialbolls	337
Argiaquolls	339,340
Argiborolls	346,347
ARGIDS	177
Argillic horizon	11
Argiudolls	365
Argiustolls	374
Argixerolls	395
Aridic moisture regime	35
ARIDISOLS	75,177
Artificial drainage	25
Authigenic	64

B

B horizons	516
Bisequum	32

BORALFS	79,91
Borofibrists	272
Borofolists	278
Borohemists	280
BOROLLS	337,346
Borosaprists	284,285
Bottom tier	47
Buried	
horizon	519,524
soils	1,71

C

C horizons or layers	517
Calcareous and reaction classes (mineral soils)	60
acid	60
allic	60
calcareous	60
nonacid	60
noncalcareous	60
Calciaquerts	492
Calciaquolls	339,340
Calciborolls	346,351
Calcic horizon	12
Calciorthids	205
Calcitorrerts	500
Calciudolls	365,368
Calciusterts	505
Calciustolls	374,379
Calcixererts	511
Calcixerolls	395,400
Camborthids	205,212
Cambic horizon	13
Clay depletions	28
Clayey particle-size class	51,69
Clayey-skeletal particle-size class	50,69
Coarse fragments	44,50
Coatings, classes of	63
coated	63
uncoated	63
Coefficient of linear extensibility	29
COLE	29
Combination horizons	518
Conditions	
aquic, elements of	25
redoximorphic features	27
reduction	26
saturation	26
Consistence	62
noncemented	62
ortstein	62
Contact	
lithic	30
paralithic	31
petroferric	31
Control section	
for Histosols	46
for mineralogy	59

for particle size classes or their substitutes	54
for series	66
for soil moisture regimes	34
Coprogenous earth	45
Cracked (coatings)	63
Cracks, permanent, classes of	63
CRYANDS	139,146
Cryaquands	140
Cryaquents	234,235
Cryaquepts	290,291
Cryaquods	441,443
Cryaquolls	339,341
CRYERTS	491,499
Cryic soil temperature regime	38
Cryoboralfs	91,92
Cryoborolls	346,352
Cryochrepts	301
CRYODS	441,445
Cryofibrists	272,274
Cryofluvents	242
Cryofolists	278,279
Cryohemists	280,281
Cryopsamments	262
Cryorthents	251,252
Cryosapristis	284,286
Cryumbrepts	328,329

D

Depth of soil	62,66
Diagnostic	
horizons, organic soils (3 tiers)	46
properties, organic soils	43
soil characteristics, mineral soils	23
subsurface horizons, mineral soils	9
surface horizons, mineral soils	3
Diatomaceous earth	45
Differentiae—See	
Family differentiae, Histosols	64
Family differentiae, mineral soils	49
Series differentiae within a family	66
Discontinuities, designations	524
Duraqualfs	80,82
Duraquands	140,141
Duraquerts	492,493
Duraquods	442,443
Duraquolls	339,342
Durargids	177,178
Duricryods	445,446
Durihumods	449
Durinodes	29
Duripan	14
Durixeralfs	129,130
Durixererts	511,512
Durixerolls	394,401
Durochrepts	301,303

Durorthids	205,222
Durorthods	450,451
Durudands	152
Durustalfs	115,117
Durustands	169
Durustolls	373,382
Dysic reaction class	65
Dystraquerts	492,494
Dystrochrepts	301,304
Dystropepts	321
Dystruderts	502,503
Dystrusterts	504,506

E

E horizons	516
Elements of aquatic conditions	26
Endoaqualfs	80,82
Endoaquands	140,141
Endoaquents	235,236
Endoaquepts	290,293
Endoaquerts	492,495
Endoaquods	442,444
Endoaquolls	339,342
Endoaquults	457,458
Endosaturation	26
ENTISOLS	77,233
Epiaqualfs	80,84
Epiaquands	140,142
Epiaquents	235,236
Epiaquepts	290,294
Epiaquerts	492,496
Epiaquods	442,444
Epiaquolls	339,344
Epiaquults	457,458
Epipedon	3
anthropic	4
histic	4
melanic	5
mollic	5
ochric	8
plaggen	8
umbric	9
Episaturation	26
Euic reaction class	65
Eutraquox	414
Eutroboralfs	91,93
Eutrochrepts	301,307
Eutropepts	321,323
Eutroperox	416,417
Eutrotorrox	423,424
Eutrudox	424,426
Eustrustox	432,435

F

Family differentiae	
for Histosols	64
for mineral soils	49
Ferrihumic mineralogy class	64

Ferrudalfs	99,101
Fibers	43
Fibric soil materials	44
FIBRISTS	271,272
Figure 1 (andic soil properties)	25
Fine earth	50
Fluvaquents	235,237
FLUVENTS	234,242
FOLISTS	271,278
Fragiaqualfs	80,86
Fragiaquepts	290,295
Fragiaquods	441,445
Fragiaquults	456,459
Fragiboralfs	91,95
Fragihumods	449
Fragiochrepts	301,310
Fragiorthods	450,451
Fragipan	15
Fragiudalfs	99,101
Fragiudults	468,470
Fragiumbrepts	328,330
Fragixeralfs	129,131
Fraglossudalfs	99,103
Fragmental particle-size class	50,69
Frigid soil temperature regime	38
Fulvicryands	146
Fulvudands	152,153

G

Gelicryands	146,147
Genetic soil horizons	515
Glossaqualfs	80,87
Glossic horizon	16
Glossoboralfs	91,96
Glossudalfs	99,103
Gypsic horizon	17
Gypsiorthids	205,227
Gypsiorrerts	500,501
Gypsiusterts	507

H

Halaquepts	290,296
Haplaquox	414,415
Haplargids	177,182
Haploborolls	346,356
Haplocryands	146,147
Haplocryerts	499
Haplocryods	446
Haplohumods	449
Haplohumults	464
Haploperox	416,419
Haplorthods	450,452
Haplotorrerts	500,501
Haplotorrox	423,424
Haploxeralfs	130,132
Haploxerands	174
Haploxererts	511,513
Haploxerolls	395,403

Haploxerults	489
Hapludalfs	100,105
Hapludands	152,156
Hapluderts	502,503
Hapludolls	365,368
Hapludox	425,428
Hapludults	469,471
Haplumbrepts	329,331
Haplustalfs	117
Haplustands	169,170
Haplusterts	508
Haplustolls	374,382
Haplustox	433,436
Haplustults	482
Hemic soil materials	44
HEMISTS	272,279
Histic epipedon	4
HISTOSOLS (organic soils)	43,72,271
control section of	47
bottom tier	47
subsurface tier	47
surface tier	46
diagnostic horizons and properties	43
family differentiae	64
series control section	67
Horizons	
diagnostic, mineral soils	3
subsurface	9
surface	3
diagnostic, organic soils (3 tiers)	46
genetic (designations for)	515
combination	518
master	515
subordinate distinctions within	518
transitional	518
use of letter suffixes for	522
use of Arabic numerals for	523
use of the prime	525
Humaquepts	290,297
Humicyerts	499
Humicyods	446,447
Humilluvic soil material	45
Humitropepts	320,325
HUMODS	441,448
HUMULTS	455,463
Hydraquents	234,240
Hydrocryands	146,148
Hydrudands	152,160
Hyperthermic soil temperature regime	39

I

INCEPTISOLS	77,289
Interfingering of albic materials	29
Iron depletions	28
Ironstone	31,32
Isofrigid soil temperature regime	39
Isohyperthermic soil temperature regime	39
Isomesic soil temperature regime	39
Isothermic soil temperature regime	39

J-K

Jarosite	41
Kandiaqualfs	80,88
Kandiaquults	456,459
Kandic horizon	17
Kandihumults	463,465
Kandiperox	416,421
Kandiudalfs	99,110
Kandiudox	424,430
Kandiudults	469,472
Kandiustalfs	116,120
Kandiustox	433,438
Kandiustults	482,483
Kanhaplaquults	457,460
Kanhaplohumults	464,466
Kanhapludalfs	100,111
Kanhapludults	469,475
Kanhaplustalfs	116,122
Kanhaplustults	482,486
Keys	
to soil orders	71
how to use	71
Kinds of organic materials	43

L

LE	30
Limnic materials	45
Linear extensibility (LE)	30
Coefficient of (COLE)	29
Lithic contact	30
Litter—See Organic soil material	43
Loamy particle-size class	51,69
Loamy-skeletal particle-size class	50,69
Lower case suffixes (genetic horizons)	518
conventions for using	522
Luvifibrists	272,274
Luvihemists	279,281

M

Marl	46
Master horizons and layers (genetic)	515
Materials	
albic	23
interfingering	29
mineral soil	3
organic soil—See Organic soil materials	43
spodic	39
sulfidic	40
Matrix, reduced	28
Medifibrists	272,275
Medifolists	278,279
Medihemists	280,282
Medisapristis	284,286
Melanaquands	140,143
Melanic epipedon	5
Melanocryands	146,149
Melanoxerands	174,175
Melanudands	152,162

Mesic soil temperature regime	39
Micro soil depth class	66
Mineral soil material	3
Mineralogy classes	59,64
allitic	70
carbonatic	68
chloritic	69
contrasting mineralogy modifiers	59
control section	59
ferritic	68,70
ferruginous	70
gibbsitic	68,70
glaucconitic	68
gypsic	68
halloysitic	69,70
illitic	69
kaolinitic	69,70
key to	59,68
Table 1	68
micaceous	69
mixed	69
montmorillonitic	69
oxidic	68
of Oxisols (Table 2)	70
serpentinitic	68
sesquic	70
siliceous	69
vermiculitic	69
Minerals, weatherable	41
Modifiers that replace names of	
particle-size classes	52
Moisture regimes—See Soil moisture regimes	33
Mollic epipedon	5
MOLLISOLS	76,335
Muck	43

N

<i>n</i> value	30
Nadurargids	177,191
Natralbolls	337,339
Natraqualfs	80,89
Natraquerts	492,498
Natraquolls	339,345
Natrargids	177,193
Natriboralfs	91,97
Natriborolls	346,360
Natric horizon	18
Natrixeralfs	129,135
Natrixerolls	394,409
Natrudalfs	99,112
Natrustalfs	115,123
Natrustolls	373,389
Nonacid reaction class	60
Noncalcareous class	60
Noncemented class	62

O

O horizons or layers	43,515
OCHREPTS	289,301
Ochric epipedon	8
ODOE	39
Organic soil material	43
fibers	43
fibric	44
hemic	44
humilluvic	45
kinds of	43
limnic	45
coprogenous earth	45
diatomaceous earth	45
marl	46
sapric	44
thickness of	46
Organic soils (Histosols)	43,72,271
ORTHENTS	234,251
ORTHIDS	177,205
ORTHODS	441,450
Ortstein	62
Oxic horizon	19
OXISOLS	74,413
key to mineralogy classes	70

P

Paleaquults	457,461
Paleargids	177,200
Paleboralfs	91,97
Paleborolls	346,361
Palehumults	464,467
Paleorthids	205,228
Paleudalfs	100,112
Paleudolls	365,372
Paleudults	469,477
Paleustalfs	117,124
Paleustolls	374,391
Paleustults	482,488
Palexeralfs	130,135
Palexerolls	395,409
Palexerults	489,490
Paralithic contact	31
Particle-size classes	49,64
choice of 7 or 11	58
clayey	51,64
clayey-skeletal	50,64
control section for	54
definition of	50
fragmental	50,64
loamy	51,64
loamy-skeletal	50,64
modifiers that replace names of	52
sandy	50,64
sandy-skeletal	50,64
strongly contrasting	55
Peat	43

Pergelic soil temperature regime	37
Permafrost	31,66,519
Permanent cracks	63
PEROX	413,415
Petrocalcic horizon	20
Petroferric contact	31
Petrogypsic horizon	20
Placaquands	140,144
Placaquepts	290,298
Placaquods	441,445
Placic horizon	20
Placocryods	445,448
Placohumods	448,449
Placorthods	450,454
Placudands	151,166
Plaggen epipedon	8
PLAGGEPTS	289,320
Plinthaqualfs	80,90
Plinthaquepts	290,299
Plinthaquox	414,415
Plinthaquults	456,462
Plinthite	32,521
Plinthohumults	463,468
Plinthoxeralfs	129,138
Plinthudults	468,481
Plinthustalfs	115,128
Plinthustults	481,488
Powdery lime, soft	33
Prime, use of	525
Psammaquents	235,240
PSAMMENTS	234,262
Pumice-like	52

Q-R

Quartzipsamments	262,263
R layers	517
Reaction classes	60,65
Redox	
concentrations	27
depletions	28
Redoximorphic features	27
Reduced matrix	28
Reduction	26
Regimes—See	
Soil moisture regimes	
Soil temperature regimes	
RENDOLLS	337,363
Rhodoxeralfs	129,138
Rhodudalfs	100,115
Rhodudults	469,481
Rhodustalfs	117,128
Rhodustults	482,488
Rock fragments	50

S

Salaquerts	492,498
Salic horizon	21
Salitorrerts	500,502

Salorthids	205,231
Salusterts	504,510
Sandy particle-size class	50,69
Sandy-skeletal particle-size class	50,69
Sapric soil materials	44
SAPRISTS	272,284
Saturation	26
anthric	26
endosaturation	26
episaturation	26
Sequum and bisequum	32
Series	
control section	66
differentiae within a family	66
Shallow depth of soil	62,66
SI unit conversion table	527
Skeletans	28
Slickensides	32,521
Soft powdery lime	33
Soil	1
buried	1
definition of	1
depth classes	62,66
moisture regimes	33
classes of	34-37
control section	34
orders, key to	71
properties, andic	24
temperature regimes (classes)	37,61
that we classify	1
Sombric horizon	21
Sombrihumults	463,468
Sombriperox	415,423
Sombristropepts	320,327
Sombriudox	424,432
Sombriustox	432,440
Sphagnofibrists	272,276
Spodic	
horizon	22
materials	39
definition of	40
SPODOSOLS	73,441
Strongly contrasting particle-size classes	55
Subdivision, vertical (of genetic horizons)	523
Subordinate distinctions	
within master horizons	518
Subsurface	
horizons	9
tier	47
Sulfaquents	234,240
Sulfaquepts	290,299
Sulfidic materials	40
Sulfihemists	279,283
Sulfisaprists	284,287
Sulfochrepts	301,311
Sulfohemists	279,283
Sulfosaprists	284,287
Sulfuric horizon	22

Surface	
horizons	3
tier	46
T	
Table 1.—Key to mineralogy classes	68
Table 2.—Key to mineralogy classes (Oxisols)	70
Temperature regimes—	
See Soil temperature regimes	
Temperature classes—	
See Soil temperature classes	
Textural	
change, abrupt	23
triangle	527
Texture	49
Thermic soil temperature regime	39
Tiers (diagnostic horizons of Histosols)	46
bottom tier	47
subsurface tier	47
surface tier	46
TORRANDS	139,150
TORRERTS	491,500
Torriarents	241
Torric moisture regime	35
Torrifluvents	242,243
Torriorthents	251,253
Torripsamments	262,265
TORROX	413,423
Transitional and combination	
horizons (genetic)	518
Tropaquepts	290,299
TROPEPTS	289,320
Tropofibrists	272,277
Tropofluvents	242,246
Tropofolists	278,279
Tropohemists	280,283
Tropopsamments	262,266
Troporthents	251,256
Troposaprists	284,287
U	
UDALFS	80,99
UDANDS	139,151
Udarents	241
UDERTS	492,502
Udic moisture regime	36
Udifluvents	242,246
Udipsamments	262,267
Udivitrands	172
UDOLLS	337,364
Udorthents	252,257
UDOX	413,424
UDULTS	455,468
ULTISOLS	75,455
Umbraqualfs	80,90
Umbraqualts	457,463
UMBREPTS	290,328
Umbric epipedon	9

Use of the prime	525
USTALFS	79,115
USTANDS	139,169
Ustarents	241,242
USTERTS	492,504
Ustic moisture regime	36
Ustifluvents	242,247
Ustipsamments	262,268
Ustivitrands	172,173
Ustochrepts	301,311
USTOLLS	337,373
Ustorthents	252,258
USTOX	413,432
Ustrophepts	320,327
USTULTS	455,481

V

Vermiborolls	346,363
Vermudolls	365,373
Vermustolls	374,394
Vertical subdivision (of genetic horizons)	523
VERTISOLS	74,491
VITRANDS	139,172
Vitraquands	140,145
Vitricryands	146,149
Vitritorrands	150,151
Vitrixerands	174,176

W-X-Y-Z

Weatherable minerals	41
XERALFS	79,129
XERANDS	139,174
Xerarents	241,242
XERERTS	491,511
Xeric moisture regime	37
Xerochrepts	301,317
Xerofluvents	242,249
XEROLLS	337,394
Xeropsamments	262,268
Xerorthents	251,260
XERULTS	455,489
Xerumbrepts	329,333